# Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests

2009

Cette publication spécialisée n'est disponible qu'en anglais en vertu du Règlement 411/97, qui en exempte l'application de la Loi sur les services en français.

2009, Queen's Printer for Ontario
Printed in Ontario, Canada

Current publications of the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources and price lists are available from this office.

Natural Resources Information Centre:
300 Water Street
P.O. Box 7000
Peterborough, ON K9J 8M5
1-800-667-1940

Telephone inquiries about ministry programs and services should be directed to the Service Ontario Contact Centre:

| | |
|---|---|
| General Inquiry | 1-800-667-1940 |
| Renseignements en Francais | 1-800-667-1840 |
| FAX | (705) 755-1677 |

www.publications.serviceontario.ca

Other government publications are available from:
Publications Ontario, Main Floor, 777 Bay St., Toronto

Visit the Ontario's Forests website at:
http://ontario.ca/forests

Visit the Ontario Ministry of Natural Resources website at:
http://ontario.ca/mnr

How to cite this manual:

OMNR. November 2009. Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests. Toronto: Queen's Printer for Ontario. 447 pp.

ISBN 978-1-4435-1589-4 Print « Imprimer »
ISBN 978-1-4435-1590-0 Portable Document Format (PDF)

# FOREWORD

## The Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests

The overall context for forest management in Ontario is the Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests that was approved by Cabinet in 1994. The framework sets broad direction for forest policy and makes forest sustainability the primary objective of forest management.

## Overview of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act

The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* came into effect on April 1, 1995. The Act is enabling legislation, and provides for the regulation of forest planning, information, operations, licensing, trust funds, processing facilities, remedies and enforcement, and transitional provisions. The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* is designed to allow for the management of all forest-based values, while providing for the sustainability of Crown forests. The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* defines sustainability as long-term Crown forest health.

## A Manual Approach to Implementation of the Crown Forest Sustainability Act

The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* requires the provision of four manuals to guide various aspects of forest management planning in Ontario. These manuals are prepared in accordance with Section (68) of the Act and are regulated in accordance with Section 69(1) 29. The four manuals developed by the Ministry of Natural Resources (MNR), in collaboration with non-government organizations, are:

1. The Forest Management Planning Manual;
2. The Forest Information Manual;
3. The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual; and
4. The Scaling Manual.

The Forest Management Planning Manual is the pivotal document that provides direction for all aspects of forest management planning for Crown lands in Ontario within:

(a) the area of the undertaking for MNR's Forest EA Approval, as defined on page 35 in the Environmental Assessment Board's Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02); and

(b) the Whitefeather Forest, as defined in Figure 1 of Declaration Order regarding Forest Management on Crown Lands in the Whitefeather Forest (MNR-74).

This Forest Management Planning Manual incorporates:

(a) Conditions 1 to 26 of Declaration Order MNR-71 (2003), and amending order MNR-71/2 (2007), regarding MNR's Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario; and

(b) Conditions 5 to 33 of Declaration Order MNR-74 (2009), regarding Forest Management on Crown Lands in the Whitefeather Forest.

In accordance with the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, the sustainability of the forest will be determined in accordance with the approach described in the Forest Management Planning Manual. The approach requires the identification of measurable indicators in order to assess the effectiveness of activities in achieving management objectives and to assess the sustainability of the forest for the management unit. For the forest management plan, the determination of sustainability will be a conclusion that the forest management plan provides for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has had regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values. Management unit annual reports require the monitoring and evaluation of future forest conditions to compare with planned outcomes, which provide a means for continual refinement, redevelopment and improvement of forest management activities.

The Forest Information Manual provides guidance for information management that supports forest management planning and operations.

The Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual is a compendium of guidance and direction for the conduct of operations authorized by approved forest management plans. This manual provides for the qualification of persons engaged in forest operations, as well as measures for assessing the performance of forest operations.

The Scaling Manual provides direction for the measurement of all timber harvested from Crown land in Ontario. It provides the means through which Ontario collects revenue from the disposition of Crown timber.

## Manual Revision

The four manuals will continue to be works in progress. They will be revised, improved and updated based on experiences in using the manuals, and as new information becomes available. Revisions to the Forest Management Planning Manual will be made in accordance with the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* regulation requiring public review and comment.

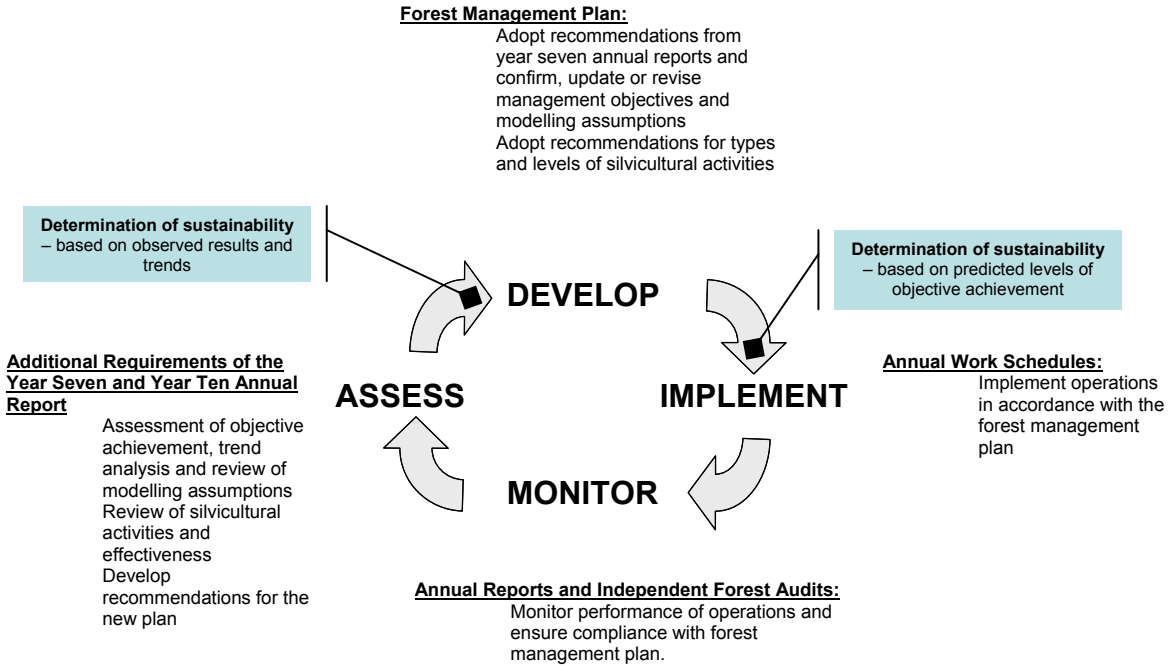
## Forest Management

Forest Management is conducted in an adaptive management cycle. A forest management plan is prepared by a plan author who is a registered professional forester who certifies that the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest. The forest management plan is implemented as scheduled in the annual work schedule and as reported in the annual report. Following year seven, the implementation of the plan to date is assessed and a determination is made whether the implementation of the plan has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest and recommendations for future planning are provided. The new forest management plan is then prepared in consideration of recommendations from the

year seven annual report, changes to the forest condition, updates to science and policy, and specific efforts to confirm, update, or revise management objectives and practices.

Figure 1 provides an overview of the adaptive management cycle as it pertains to the provision of forest sustainability in forest management plans.

Figure 1: Adaptive Management Cycle



# TABLE OF CONTENTS

FOREWORD ..... i

INTRODUCTION ..... vii
Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual ..... x

**PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS**
Table of Contents ..... A-1
Phase-in Provisions ..... A-7
1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN ..... A-9
2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... A-73
3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... A-89
4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING ..... A-124

**PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS**
Table of Contents ..... B-1
Phase-In Provisions ..... B-6
1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... B-14
2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION ..... B-15
3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION ..... B-20
4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ..... B-24
5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY ..... B-38
6.0 DOCUMENTATION ..... B-39
7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY ..... B-41
8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... B-42
9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES ..... B-61

**PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, AND DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS-SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM**
Table of Contents ..... C-1
1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... C-4
Phase-In Provisions ..... C-4
2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS ..... C-6
3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS AND FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS ..... C-17
4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS ..... C-28
5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... C-29
6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... C-30
7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT ..... C-38

**PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS**

Table of Contents ..... D-1
1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... D-4
Phase-in Provisions ..... D-4
2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS ..... D-5
3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE ..... D-8
4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS ..... D-30
5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS ..... D-31
6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS ..... D-33
7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... D-35
8.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT ..... D-43

**PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS**

Table of Contents ..... E-1
1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... E-4
Phase-in Provisions ..... E-4
2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... E-6
3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT ..... E-12
4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND YEAR TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... E-13
5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW ..... E-19
6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES ..... E-21

**PART F – ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE WHITEFEATHER FOREST**

Table of Contents ..... F-1
A - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS ..... F-3
1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN ..... F-3
2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... F-6
4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING ..... F-8
B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS ..... F-9
3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION ..... F-9
4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ..... F-9
6.0 DOCUMENTATION ..... F-10
8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... F-11
E - MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... F-11
1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... F-11
4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... F-12
7.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION ..... F-12

**APPENDICES**

Table of Contents ..... App-1
Appendix I: Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking and the Whitefeather Forest ..... App-2
Appendix II: Analysis Package Contents ..... App-4
Appendix III: Social and Economic Description ..... App-6
Appendix IV: List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps ..... App-9
Appendix V: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form ..... App-11
Appendix VI: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form ..... App-17
Appendix VII: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits……..……...App-23

**GLOSSARY OF TERMS** ..... Glossary-1

# INTRODUCTION

The Forest Management Planning Manual prescribes the requirements for Ontario's forest management planning system including a detailed description of the planning process and the products. The forest management planning cycle, established by the manual, consists of planning, implementation, monitoring and reporting. The reporting component of this planning system includes evaluation of results and recommendations to be incorporated into a subsequent planning process to complete the cycle.

The Forest Management Planning Manual provides direction based on the legislative requirements of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* and the conditions of approvals under the *Environmental Assessment Act,* including:

(a) conditions 1 to 26 of Declaration Order MNR-71 (2003), and amending order MNR-71/2 (2007), regarding MNR's Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario; and

(b) conditions 5 to 33 of Declaration Order MNR-74 (2009) regarding Forest Management on Crown Lands in the Whitefeather Forest.

The Forest Management Planning Manual recognizes that regulations, including ones prescribing the habitat of certain species at risk, will come into force under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*. At the same time, there are flexibility instruments available under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* which, where applicable, can allow for operations that may damage or destroy habitat. Habitat regulations and policy developed under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* will contain additional species-specific direction. When completed, these documents will be available through MNR and must be consulted for the most recent direction. Forestry companies should contact the local MNR office for guidance.

The Forest Management Planning Manual focuses on the delivery of the forest management component of higher-order provincial and regional land use and resource management policies and strategies and its successors including:

- Our Sustainable Future;
- MNR Statement of Environmental Values;
- Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests;
- Forest Resource Assessment Policy;
- Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forests; and
- Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas.

These policies and strategies, along with other local strategies, provide the overall context for the preparation of forest management plans, including the determination of forest sustainability.

The geographic basis for a forest management plan is a management unit. Forest management plans will be prepared for each management unit within the area of the undertaking for MNR's Forest EA Approval, and the Whitefeather Forest management unit, in accordance

with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual. Forest management plans provide the authority to carry out forest management activities including road access, timber harvest, and forest renewal, tending and protection treatments.

On designated management units which are not managed under a sustainable forest licence, the Crown or another designated party is responsible for the preparation and implementation of a forest management plan. For the purpose of this manual, the sustainable forest licensee is referenced as the party responsible for preparing and implementing forest management plans. Where the requirements of this manual refer to the sustainable forest licensee, those requirements will apply to the MNR or the party responsible for the preparation and implementation of a forest management plan.

All approvals reference the MNR Regional Director, MNR District Manager and/or MNR Area Supervisor. In the case of the Algonquin Park Forest, the Park Superintendent will be considered to be the MNR District Manager, and the Operations Leader will be considered to be the MNR Area Supervisor, for the requirements of this manual.

Forest management plans are prepared for a ten-year period with two five-year operational terms. The Forest Management Planning Manual breaks the planning process into two phases. Phase I refers to the initial 36 month planning process that results in a forest management plan that contains the long-term management direction, locations of primary and branch road corridors, and details of operations for the initial five-year operational term. Phase II refers to the 20 month planning process that occurs during the fourth and fifth years of the ten-year plan period and results in the details of operations for the second five-year term.

The Forest Management Planning Manual is divided into five major parts:

**PART A** provides direction for the preparation of forest management plans, and describes requirements for:

- Phase I – preparing the ten-year forest management plan and planning of operations for the first five-year term;
- Phase II – planning of operations for the second five-year term;
- public consultation; and
- Aboriginal involvement.

**PART B** provides the forest management plan content requirements, and describes requirements for:

- title, certification and approval pages;
- section headings and associated documentation;
- supplementary documentation;
- forest management plan summary;
- Phase II documentation; and
- forest management plan tables.

**PART C** provides the planning requirements for plan amendments, contingency plans, and unscheduled and early plan renewals, and describes the requirements for:

- administrative, minor and major amendments;
- contingency plans and plan extensions;
- early plan renewals;
- a delay in approval of operations for the second five-year term;
- public consultation; and
- Aboriginal involvement.

**PART D** provides direction for the scheduling of forest management operations on an annual basis, and describes requirements for:

- forest operations prescriptions;
- annual work schedules;
- prescribed burns;
- aerial herbicide and insecticide projects;
- insect pest management programs;
- public consultation; and
- Aboriginal involvement.

**PART E** provides direction for management unit annual reports and evaluation of forest management operations, as well as the condition of the forest, at regular intervals, and describes:

- requirements for all management unit annual reports;
- additional requirements for the year three annual report;
- additional requirements for the year seven and year ten annual reports;
- submission and review requirements; and
- management unit annual report tables.

**PART F** provides direction for additional planning requirements for the Whitefeather Forest, and describes additional requirements for:

- Pikangikum First Nation involvement in forest management planning;
- development of the long-term management direction;
- planning of operations for the first five-year term;
- plan documentation;
- planning of operations for the second five-year term; and
- management unit annual reports.

In addition to the Parts, the manual contains the following appendices:

I. The Area of the Undertaking and the Whitefeather Forest
II. Analysis Package Contents
III. Social and Economic Description Outline
IV. List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps
V. Road Planning Supplementary Documentation Form
VI. Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form
VII. Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

The manual also contains a glossary of terms.

The Forest Management Planning Manual is intended to be used by those involved in forest management planning including registered professional foresters, other related professionals, stakeholders and the public.

By January 31 of each year, MNR will produce a list of management units as of April 1 of that year. This list identifies forest management plans currently in preparation, all forest management plans expected to be initiated in that year, and all management units where operational planning for the second five-year term is scheduled in that year. This list will be available to the public upon request.

**Phase-in Provisions for the Application of this Forest Management Planning Manual**

The cyclical nature of forest management planning dictates that it will be a number of years before all requirements of this Forest Management Planning Manual can be fully implemented for all management units across the province. The requirements of this Forest Management Planning Manual will apply upon the effective date of this manual, unless otherwise directed by the phase-in provisions included at the beginning of each Part of this manual.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS ..... 7**
Phase-in Provisions ..... 7
**1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN . 9**
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning ..... 11
1.1.1 Introduction ..... 11
1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities ..... 11
1.1.2 Planning Team ..... 11
1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference ..... 12
1.1.2.2 Project Plan ..... 13
1.1.3 Local Citizens Committee ..... 14
1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements ..... 15
1.1.5 Decision Support Systems ..... 15
1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints ..... 16
1.1.7 Analysis Package ..... 17
1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information ..... 17
1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction ..... 18
1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports ..... 19
1.1.8.3 Forest Management Guides ..... 19
1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports ..... 20
1.1.8.5 Planning Inventory ..... 20
1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information ..... 21
1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk ..... 21
1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information ..... 21
1.1.8.9 Values Maps ..... 22
1.1.8.10 Roads Inventory ..... 23
1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description ..... 23
1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition ..... 24
1.1.8.13 Aboriginal Background Information Report ..... 24
1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each Aboriginal Community .. 25
1.1.10 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate ..... 25
1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ..... 25
1.2.1 Introduction ..... 25
1.2.2 Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition ..... 26
1.2.2.1 Forest Units ..... 26
1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information ..... 26
1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes ..... 28
1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications ..... 28
1.2.3 Management Considerations ..... 28
1.2.4 Base Model ..... 29
1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield ..... 29
1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession ..... 30
1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance ..... 30
1.2.4.4 Strategic Silvicultural Options ..... 31
1.2.5 Forest Sustainability ..... 31

1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives ... 33
1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ... 37
Harvest Eligibility Criteria ... 39
Available Harvest Area ... 39
Objective Assessment ... 40
Spatial Assessment ... 41
Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas ... 41
Social and Economic Assessment ... 41
1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability ... 42
1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors ... 42
1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ... 44
1.2.8 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction 44
1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations ... 45
1.3.1 Introduction ... 45
1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction ... 45
1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations ... 46
1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas ... 46
1.3.3.2 Contingency Area ... 47
1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas ... 47
1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan ... 48
1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations ... 48
1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations ... 48
1.3.5 Prescriptions for Operations ... 49
1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ... 49
Operational Prescriptions from a Forest Management Guide ... 50
Operational Prescriptions for Species at Risk ... 50
Operational Prescriptions from Other Planning Exercises ... 51
Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team ... 51
1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas ... 52
Silvicultural Ground Rules ... 52
Conditions on Regular Operations ... 53
Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest ... 53
Planned Clearcuts ... 54
1.3.6 Roads ... 54
1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors ... 55
1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors ... 55
1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads ... 56
1.3.6.4 Operational Roads ... 57
1.3.6.5 Existing Roads ... 59
Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings ... 59
1.3.6.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits ... 60
Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits ... 61
Aggregate Extraction Areas ... 61
Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits ... 61
1.3.6.7 Use Management Strategies ... 61
1.3.7 Expenditures ... 62

1.3.8 Spatial Assessment ... 62
1.3.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction 62
1.3.10 Determination of Sustainability ... 63
1.3.11 Summary Map ... 64
1.3.12 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ... 64
1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan ... 65
1.4.1 Introduction ... 65
1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan ... 65
1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan ... 66
1.4.4 MNR Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan ... 66
1.4.4.1 MNR's Preliminary List of Required Alterations ... 67
1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary ... 67
1.4.6 Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan ... 68
1.4.7 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan ... 68
1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan ... 68
1.5.1 Introduction ... 68
1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations ... 69
1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary ... 69
1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan ... 70
1.5.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan ... 71
1.5.6 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan ... 71
1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan ... 72
**2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ... 73**
2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations ... 73
2.1.1 Introduction ... 73
2.1.2 Planning Team ... 74
2.1.2.1 Terms of Reference and Project Plan ... 74
2.1.3 Local Citizens Committee ... 74
2.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements ... 75
2.1.5 Background Information ... 75
2.1.6 Aboriginal Consultation Approach ... 76
2.1.7 Selection of Areas of Operations ... 76
2.1.8 Prescriptions for Operations ... 77
2.1.8.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ... 77
2.1.8.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas ... 77
Silvicultural Ground Rules ... 77
Conditions on Regular Operations ... 78
Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest ... 78
Planned Clearcuts ... 78
2.1.9 Roads ... 78

2.1.9.1 Primary and Branch Road Corridors ..... 78
2.1.9.2 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads ..... 79
2.1.9.3 Operational Roads ..... 79
2.1.9.4 Existing Roads ..... 79
Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings ..... 80
2.1.9.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 80
2.1.10 Expenditures ..... 80
2.1.11 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values ..... 80
2.1.12 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ..... 81
2.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Planned Operations ..... 81
2.2.1 Introduction ..... 81
2.2.2 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations ..... 81
2.2.3 Submission of the Draft Planned Operations ..... 82
2.2.4 MNR Review of the Draft Planned Operations ..... 82
2.2.4.1 MNR's Preliminary List of Required Alterations ..... 83
2.2.5 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations Summary ..... 83
2.2.6 Availability of the Draft Planned Operations ..... 84
2.2.7 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations ..... 84
2.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Revision and Approval of the Planned Operations ..... 84
2.3.1 Introduction ..... 84
2.3.2 Final List of Required Alterations ..... 84
2.3.3 Preparation of the Planned Operations and Planned Operations Summary ..... 85
2.3.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Planned Operations ..... 86
2.3.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Planned Operations ..... 87
2.3.6 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations ..... 87
2.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations ..... 87
**3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... 89**
3.1 Introduction ..... 89
3.2 Local Citizens Committee ..... 89
3.2.1 Introduction ..... 89
3.2.2 Purpose ..... 90
3.2.3 Membership and Organization ..... 91
3.2.4 Terms of Reference ..... 92
3.2.5 Administration ..... 93
3.2.6 Reports and Records ..... 93
3.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation ..... 94
3.3 Public Consultation Requirements ..... 95
3.3.1 Introduction ..... 95
3.3.2 General Requirements ..... 95
3.3.2.1 Public Notices ..... 95
Additional Information Centres ..... 97
Supplemental Notices ..... 97
3.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee Communication ..... 97
3.3.2.3 Responses to Comments ..... 97
3.3.2.4 French Language Services Act ..... 98

3.3.2.5 Environmental Bill of Rights ..... 99
3.3.3 Phase I Consultation ..... 99
3.3.3.1 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate ..... 99
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 100
Information and Maps Available ..... 100
3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ..... 101
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 102
Information and Maps Available ..... 102
3.3.3.3 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ..... 103
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 104
Information and Maps Available ..... 104
3.3.3.4 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan ..... 106
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 106
Information and Maps Available ..... 107
Final List of Required Alterations ..... 107
3.3.3.5 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan ..... 108
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 108
Information and Maps Available ..... 108
3.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan ..... 108
3.3.4 Phase II Consultation ..... 109
3.3.4.1 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations 109
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 109
Information and Maps Available ..... 110
3.3.4.2 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations ..... 112
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 112
Information and Maps Available ..... 113
Availability of the Draft Planned Operations ..... 113
Final List of Required Alterations ..... 113
3.3.4.3 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations 114
Direct Written Notice Requirements ..... 114
Information and Maps Available ..... 115
3.3.4.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations ..... 115
3.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment ..... 115
3.4.1 Issue Resolution Process ..... 115
3.4.1.1 Plan Author Stage ..... 117
3.4.1.2 MNR District Manager Stage ..... 117
3.4.1.3 MNR Regional Director Stage ..... 120
3.4.2 Process for Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment ..... 122
**4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING ..... 124**
4.1 Introduction ..... 124
4.2 Planning Team ..... 124

4.3 Local Citizens Committee ..... 125
4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning ..... 125
4.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Consultation Approach ..... 127
4.5.1 Forest Management Plans ..... 127
4.5.1.1 Phase I Consultation ..... 127
Stage One – Invitation to Participate ..... 127
Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ..... 128
Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ..... 128
Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan ..... 128
Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan ..... 129
4.5.1.2 Phase II Consultation ..... 129
Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ..... 129
Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations ..... 129
Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations ..... 130
4.6 Documentation ..... 130
4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report ..... 130
4.6.2 Social and Economic Description ..... 131
4.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values ..... 131
4.6.4 Summary of Aboriginal Involvement ..... 133

## LIST OF FIGURES

**Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Phase I Production of a Forest Management Plan ..... 10**
**Figure A-2: Long-Term Management Direction ..... 27**
**Figure A-3: Indicators of Objective Achievement ..... 33**
**Figure A-4: Overview of Schedule for Planning of Operations for the Second Five-year Term ..... 74**
**Figure A-5: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase I Planning ..... 118**
**Figure A-6: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase II Planning ..... 119**

# PART A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

Part A of this manual describes the process for the preparation of a forest management plan. Section 1.0 describes the requirements for preparing the ten-year forest management plan (Phase I). Section 2.0 describes the requirements for preparing the planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II). Section 3.0 describes public consultation requirements for both Phase I and Phase II planning. Section 4.0 describes the opportunities for Aboriginal involvement in forest management planning.

The forest management plan (FMP) tables referenced in Part A are included in Part B, Section 9.0.

## Phase-in Provisions

Forest management plans scheduled for renewal prior to April 1, 2012 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of the FMPM (2004), except as follows:

> For any request for issue resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is received after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 of this Forest Management Planning Manual will apply.
>
> For any draft and MNR-approved forest management plan that is submitted after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.4.6 and 1.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual will apply.
>
> For forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2011, the requirements of the following sections of this Forest Management Planning Manual will apply to the extent reasonably possible:
>
> - Part A, Sections 1.3 through 1.6;
> - Part A, Sections 3.3.3.3 through 3.3.3.6; and
> - Part A, Section 4.5.1.1 Stage Three to Stage Five.

Where the renewal of a forest management plan is rescheduled to April 1, 2012 due to a delay in its preparation, and the proposed long-term management direction for that forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2004) and has been endorsed by the Regional Director prior to April 1, 2011, the forest management plan will continue to be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2004), except as follows:

> The requirements of Part A, Section 3.4 of this Forest Management Planning Manual will apply to any request for issue resolution, or an individual environmental assessment, that is received after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

The requirements of Part A, Section 1.4.6 and 1.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual will apply to the draft and MNR-approved forest management plans.

The requirements of the following sections of this Forest Management Planning Manual will apply to the extent reasonably possible:

- Part A, Sections 1.3 through 1.6;
- Part A, Sections 3.3.3.3 through 3.3.3.6; and
- Part A, Section 4.5.1.1 Stage Three to Stage Five.

Subject to the foregoing phase-in provisions, forest management plans scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2012, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Planned operations for the second five-year term of current plans will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

# 1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

A forest management plan will be prepared in an open and consultative fashion by MNR or by an organization authorized by MNR. Forest management plans will normally be prepared every ten years, for a ten-year period. The preparation of the plan occurs in two phases. The strategic, long-term planning and the planning of the first five-years of operations occur during Phase I. Phase I planning has five stages of consultation. Phase II planning has three stages of consultation and involves the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.0).

Planning efforts from current forest management plans will be considered in the development of the new forest management plan. A forest management plan will be prepared utilizing a review of the current plan, and confirm, update or revise process as appropriate, using the best available information (e.g. science, new forest management guides, annual reports).

The preparation, review and approval of Phase I of the ten-year forest management plan takes about 36 months. The timetable for the production of a forest management plan, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-1. In addition to the 36 months, time is required to assemble background information and update the planning inventory.

Section 1.1 describes the process to be followed and products that will be available for Stage One of consultation.

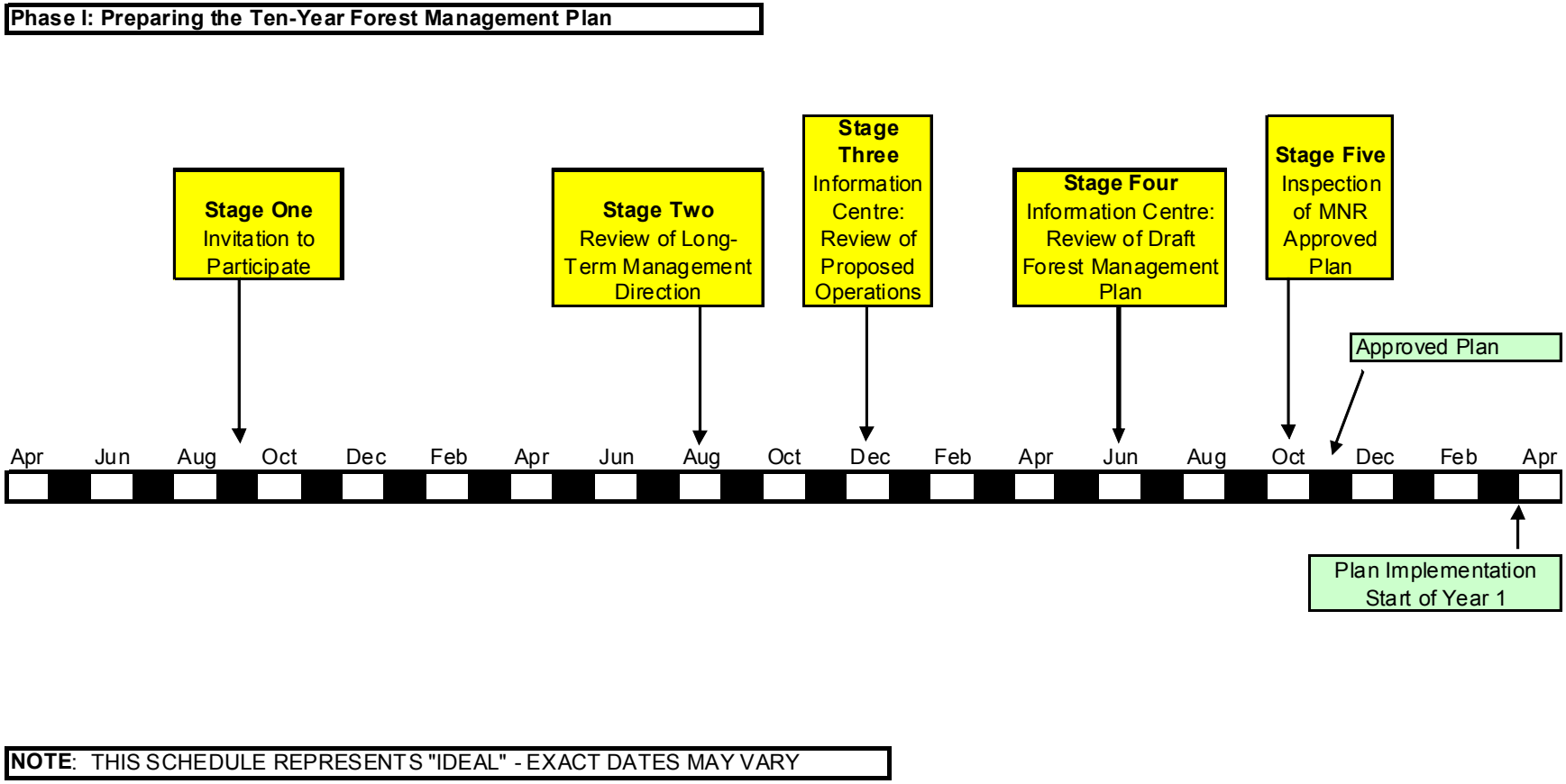
Section 1.2 describes the process to be followed to develop the long-term management direction, including the identification of preferred and optional areas for harvest. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for Stage Two of consultation.

Section 1.3 describes the process to be followed for identifying the areas of operations for harvest, renewal and tending for the ten-year period and the process for the planning of operations for the first five-year term. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for Stage Three of consultation.

Section 1.4 describes the requirements for preparing the draft forest management plan, submitting the draft forest management plan, and the requirements for MNR's review. This section also describes the required documentation and products that will be available for Stage Four of consultation.

Section 1.5 describes the process for plan revision and approval and the products that will be available for Stage Five of consultation.

**Figure A-1: Overview of Schedule for Phase I Production of a Forest Management Plan**



## 1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning

### 1.1.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information, in preparation for Stage One of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.1).

Additional requirements regarding the organization of the planning exercise and the assembly of background information for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (A, Section 1.1) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

#### 1.1.1.1 Description of Management Responsibilities

A description of the management responsibilities for the management unit will be prepared. It will include responsibilities of MNR, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies, if applicable.

### 1.1.2 Planning Team

A forest management plan will be prepared by a plan author, who will be assisted by an interdisciplinary planning team and a local citizens committee (Part A, Section 3.2). In addition, advisors with a specialty in a particular subject area will play a role in providing advice and support during plan production.

The plan author must be a registered professional forester, licensed under the *Professional Foresters Act, 2000*. For plans prepared by an organization such as a sustainable forest licensee, the organization will assign the plan author. If the plan is prepared by MNR, the MNR District Manager will assign the plan author.

The MNR District Manager will appoint an interdisciplinary planning team, which is a working body, with all members participating in plan production. The team will normally include individuals with expertise in forest management, information management, fish and wildlife, species at risk, biology, forest ecology, lands administration, parks and natural heritage, fire management, enforcement, forest modeling and analysis, and Aboriginal involvement. The level of participation of team members will vary depending on their particular area of expertise. Planning team members should be familiar with the management unit. The planning team will include a registered professional forester employed by MNR.

The local citizens committee may nominate one of its members to participate on the planning team. In addition, when applicable and where possible, the MNR District Manager will invite a person(s) who collectively represents overlapping licensees and beneficiaries of MNR wood supply commitments that do not have ownership in the company holding the sustainable forest license on the management unit to participate on the planning team.

The MNR District Manager will offer an opportunity for a representative of each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and implementation of the forest management plan, to participate on the planning team (Part A, Section 4.2).

The MNR District Manager will appoint the chair of the planning team. The chair of the planning team ensures the plan will be prepared in accordance with the terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The MNR District Manager will also appoint a project manager for the production of the forest management plan. The project manager, with direction from the planning team chair, will develop and maintain a project plan for the production of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2). The project manager will regularly report on progress of the forest management plan to the MNR District Manager and planning team chair.

The MNR District Manager may invite representatives from MNR Science and Information Branch, and MNR's regional and main office to act as advisors to the planning team and/or plan reviewers. The MNR District Manager will also consult with other government ministries or agencies to determine whether those organizations have specific interests that should be addressed in the forest management plan. For example, the Ministry of Northern Development, Mines and Forestry, the Ministry of Tourism, the Ministry of Culture, the Ministry of Health Promotion, and, where applicable, local Municipal Economic Development Officers will be contacted. If the ministries or agencies have concerns, they will be invited to participate on the planning team. This advisory role is available to any provincial government ministry or agency, including those agencies responsible for Aboriginal affairs. Representatives from the Ministry of the Environment may attend planning team meetings at their discretion.

The MNR District Manager, in consultation with the sustainable forest licensee, will establish a steering committee for the production of the forest management plan. The steering committee will normally include a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, a representative of the MNR Regional Director, and the MNR District Manager. The steering committee will monitor the production of the forest management plan and will resolve issues and disagreements among planning team members to ensure plan production remains in accordance with the project plan.

#### 1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

The plan author, with assistance from the planning team, will review the previous terms of reference and will update or revise the terms of reference for the production of the forest management plan.

The terms of reference will contain:

(a) the names and affiliations of the plan author, planning team members, steering committee members, the chair, the project manager, MNR advisors, other advisors (e.g., staff from other government ministries, agencies and municipalities) and MNR plan reviewers;
(b) a description of the decision support system that will be used, and a discussion of the manner in which they will be used (Part A, Section 1.1.5);
(c) the process for resolving disagreements between planning team members, including the involvement of the MNR District Manager and/or the steering committee;
(d) key plan production deliverables and identification of issues that may affect plan production; and
(e) a communications plan, which outlines the costs and timing for communications efforts, including French and Aboriginal translation, mailings, information centres and printing.

A senior official from the plan author's organization will sign the draft terms of reference to acknowledge the responsibilities of the plan author and other members of the organization on the planning team. The draft terms of reference will be submitted to the District Manager for review at least 60 days before issuing the first public notice. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director will review and comment on the draft terms of reference within 15 days. If changes are required, the plan author will make the changes, obtain the signatures of the planning team members and the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, and submit the final version to the MNR District Manager. When the changes have been made to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign and approve the terms of reference, and forward it to the MNR Regional Director for approval.

The terms of reference will be approved prior to issuing the first public notice of the formal public consultation process. The terms of reference and any changes will be provided to the MNR Regional Director, District Manager and planning team members.

#### 1.1.2.2 Project Plan

The project manager, with assistance from the plan author and planning team, will develop the project plan for the production of the forest management plan.

The project plan will contain:

(a) a schedule for plan production, including MNR review and approval;
(b) a schedule for progress checkpoints, and identification of who will be responsible for confirmation of satisfactory completion of the required information (Part A, Section 1.1.6);
(c) a schedule for formal public consultation including any additional opportunities;

(d) responsibilities and specific tasks of each planning team member, with deadlines for production. Planning team members will acknowledge their roles and responsibilities with their signatures on the project plan. Key tasks for the production of the plan will be itemized, including identification of:
  (i) who will be the liaison with Aboriginal communities;
  (ii) who will be the liaison with licensed resource-based tourist operators;
  (iii) who will be the contact for the local citizens committee;
  (iv) who is responsible for notification of plan advisors;
  (v) who will be responsible for updating MNR's mailing list, the preparation of public notices and the summary of public consultation;
  (vi) who will be required to attend information centres;
  (vii) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific products (e.g., the social and economic description, maps) in the production of the forest management plan;
  (viii) who will participate in the development of the long-term management direction, and which tasks they will be responsible for;
  (ix) who will be responsible for the preparation of specific sections of the forest management plan; and
  (x) who will be responsible for preparing the *Statement of Environmental Values* consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0);

(e) identification of a forest analysis and modeling task team, which will normally include staff from the sustainable forest licensee, MNR district and regional offices, and their associated responsibilities;

(f) identification of other task teams, if required, and associated responsibilities;

(g) identification of the responsibility for issuing the public notice for each stage of the formal public consultation process; and

(h) the roles and responsibilities of MNR plan reviewers, including designation of a coordinator for the lists of required alterations.

Throughout plan preparation, the project plan will be updated to reflect changes to the production schedule, and changes in planning team membership and responsibilities. The project plan and any changes to the production schedule will be provided to the MNR District Manager and planning team members.

### 1.1.3 Local Citizens Committee

A local citizens committee will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team during the production of the forest management plan. Normally, the committee will already be in place. The committee may be established for one forest management plan, or it may be an MNR district committee established to assist in the production of forest management plans for all management units in the district. The MNR District Manager may establish multiple local citizens committees or sub-committees for a management unit. The role of the local citizens committee in the production and implementation of the forest management plan is described in detail in Part A, Section 3.2.

Prior to commencing the production of a new forest management plan, the MNR District Manager will review the membership of the local citizens committee and fill any vacancies. The review of the membership will ensure that a range and balance of interests is represented on the committee. New members will be appointed by the MNR District Manager, normally drawing from nominations provided by local interest groups. When the membership of the local citizens committee has been confirmed, the MNR District Manager will ensure that training material regarding roles and responsibilities and general forest management planning matters is available to the local citizens committee.

The committee may nominate a representative to serve as a member of the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2). The local citizens committee, with assistance from MNR, will prepare the terms of reference for the committee, as described in Part A, Section 3.2.4.

### 1.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements

The *Tourism and Forestry Industry Memorandum of Understanding* is an agreement between the government, the tourism industry and the forest industry on the development of resource stewardship agreements and related matters.

To initiate the development of a resource stewardship agreement, the sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each licensed resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the production and implementation of this or previous forest management plans. An updated list of licensed resource-based tourism operators with facilities on the management unit, and licensed resource-based tourism operators without facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to the sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry of Tourism.

MNR's forest management guide relating to the protection of resource-based tourism values provides guidance for the development of specific proposals and prescriptions related to forest management activities in a resource stewardship agreement. The prescriptions developed in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review by the public and Aboriginal communities during the production of the forest management plan.

MNR will ensure that the parties are aware of the opportunities for the public and Aboriginal communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship agreement related to forest management activities.

### 1.1.5 Decision Support Systems

Decision support systems used in forest management planning are information systems that utilize strategic models, analysis tools, and databases in an interactive, analytical process, to support decision making. In forest management planning, the planning team uses decision

support systems to facilitate the strategic analysis in the development of the long-term management direction and the planning of operations.

Components (e.g., models or analysis tools) of the decision support system to be used for any of the following tasks will be approved by the Director of MNR's Forest Management Branch prior to inclusion in the terms of reference:

(a) projection of forest conditions through time;
(b) determination of the required types and levels of access, harvest, renewal, and tending activities;
(c) determination of the available harvest area; and
(d) assessment of sustainability.

The decision support system used in the development of the long-term management direction will be able to produce the required products and analysis, and:

(a) be capable of tracking the entire forested and non-forested landbase of a management unit through time;
(b) evaluate all forested areas, whether managed or other (FMP-1), for their contribution to forest diversity, and wildlife habitat;
(c) evaluate all managed forested areas (FMP-1), for their contribution to timber production;
(d) produce projections of forest structure and composition for a minimum of 160 years;
(e) account for expected rates of natural disturbance agents, such as forest fire, windthrow and insects;
(f) incorporate current and potential levels of silvicultural investments;
(g) be capable of representing shelterwood and uneven-aged silvicultural systems (if applicable to the management unit); and
(h) be capable of representing alternative long-term management directions.

The choice of decision support system used in planning may influence the requirements of specific progress checkpoints. The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints to accommodate specific decision support system needs.

### 1.1.6 Progress Checkpoints

Progress checkpoints are key steps in the development and preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction of a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2). The appropriate planning team members and advisors, as identified in the project plan, must confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for each progress checkpoint and document their support, prior to receiving the confirmation of the satisfactory completion the next check point. The MNR District Manager will resolve any disagreements regarding the satisfactory completion of the required information.

The progress checkpoints are:

(a) Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.8.5);
(b) Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2);
(c) Base Model Inventory and Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4);
(d) Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1);
(e) Support for the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction, Determination of Sustainability and Primary Road Corridors(Part A, Section 1.2.7); and
(f) Preliminary Endorsement of Long-term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

The satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoints (a) through (e) will be documented in the analysis package (Part A, Section 1.1.7). The MNR Regional Director's preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction will confirm the satisfactory completion of the required information for progress checkpoint (f).

The planning team may identify additional progress checkpoints in the planning team terms of reference.

During the development of the long-term management direction, previous steps and progress checkpoints in the planning process may be required to be revisited if new, changed or corrected information is available, which will significantly alter the long-term management direction.

### 1.1.7 Analysis Package

The analysis package summarizes the collaborative analysis conducted by the forest analysis and modeling task team in the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2). It also documents task team support of progress checkpoints (a) through (e) (Part A, Section 1.1.6).

The analysis package will be updated throughout the development of the long-term management direction. Appendix II outlines the required contents of the analysis package.

### 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

The planning team will review and confirm, update or revise the background information in the current forest management plan for use in the preparation of the new forest management plan. The background information that will be available may vary across the province, depending on the relevancy for the management unit.

The background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation includes:

(a) sources of direction;
(b) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for MNR;
(c) forest management guides, including new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation;
(d) management unit annual reports, and previous reports of past forest operations;
(e) forest resource inventory;
(f) fish and wildlife inventory information;
(g) inventories and information for species at risk;
(h) other resource inventories and information, including information on cultural heritage resource values, and mineral resource assessment maps;
(i) updated values maps and a resource-based tourism values map;
(j) roads inventory;
(k) a social and economic description;
(l) information on the historic forest condition; and
(m) the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report(s) (Part A, Section 4.6.1).

1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

*The Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, the decision of the Environmental Assessment Board on MNR's *Class EA for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario*, as amended and extended by *Declaration Order Regarding the Ministry of Natural Resources Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario* (MNR-71), as amended, its conditions under the *Environmental Assessment Act*, and the *Declaration Order regarding Forest Management on Crown Lands in the Whitefeather Forest* (MNR-74), provide legal direction for the management of Ontario's Crown forests.

The MNR District Manager, with the assistance of MNR regional staff, will ensure that documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making are available to the planning team and the local citizens committee at the outset of planning. Those sources of direction include:

(a) MNR's provincial goals, objectives and policies for natural resource management, particularly those relevant to forest management, such as the Statement of Environmental Values for the Ministry of Natural Resources, MNR’s corporate long-term strategic policy (e.g., Our Sustainable Future 2005), Policy Framework for Sustainable Forests, Forest Resource Assessment Policy, and MNR resource management policies (e.g., Ontario Provincial Parks: Management Statements, MNR’s strategy on climate change, Old Growth Policy for Ontario’s Crown Forests or its successors);

(b) Crown land use direction contained in Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, or its successor;
(c) the existing approved forest management plan for the management unit, with particular emphasis on the section that addresses management objectives;
(d) all other approved or draft resource management plans (e.g., district fisheries management plans, park management plans, statements of conservation interest) that are relevant to the management unit;
(e) statements that summarize the actions that the Government of Ontario intends to take in response to the recovery strategies for endangered or threatened species or the management plans for species of special concern, all applicable habitat regulations made under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007,* and any relevant *Endangered Species Act, 2007* policy direction;
(f) independent forest audits, action plans and related status reports for the management unit;
(g) approaches for dealing with wood supply issues from wood supply strategy documents developed for each MNR administrative region;
(h) where available, strategic business direction for forest-based businesses dependent on the management unit, in particular the forest industry;
(i) the results of the negotiations between MNR and Aboriginal communities; and
(j) other relevant information (e.g., legal agreements or licenses regarding resource use on the management unit).

#### 1.1.8.2 Provincial Audits and Reports

Audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest Management, State of the Forest Report) are available on the MNR internet site.

#### 1.1.8.3 Forest Management Guides

Forest management guides are described in the Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual. MNR's current, approved forest management guides will be used in the development of forest management strategies and prescriptions, and implementation of forest management activities.

A list of guides that are applicable to the management unit, as determined by the MNR District Manager, will be prepared. The list will contain the titles, the specific editions of the guides, and the MNR internet site where the guides can be accessed.

#### 1.1.8.4 Management Unit Annual Reports

The most recent management unit annual reports for the management unit will be available for use in the preparation of the forest management plan. The year seven management unit annual report for the current forest management plan and the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan, or reports of past forest operations for the previous 15 years, will also be available. In particular, the review of renewal and tending activities, conclusions and recommendations in the year seven management unit annual report will provide information for confirming or changing the long-term management direction.

#### 1.1.8.5 Planning Inventory

The planning inventory for the management unit provides information required for forest management planning, including forest modeling, habitat modeling and forest diversity analyses. The planning inventory contains updated Forest Resource Inventory information as a result of forest management activities and natural disturbances. The planning inventory also contains expected changes, based on anticipated harvest for the remainder of the term of the current forest management plan. The detailed technical requirements, responsibility and timing for production and submission of the planning inventory are described in the Forest Information Manual. Development of the planning inventory will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix II).

The Crown forest portion of the management unit is the landbase used for decision-making in the forest management plan. For forest management planning purposes, the Crown forest is categorized as areas managed for timber production and other areas. Other areas include national and provincial parks and conservation reserves, and areas that have been designated through legal or policy means, or a land use decision, as unavailable for timber production. The areas managed for timber production include all remaining Crown forest lands.

The total area of Crown forest on the management unit can contribute to the achievement of non-timber objectives in the forest management plan. For the planning team to consider provincial parks and conservation reserves on the management unit in the achievement of management objectives, forest inventory information for these areas must be available.

**CHECKPOINT: PLANNING INVENTORY**
This progress checkpoint will include information and products associated with the planning inventory.

### 1.1.8.6 Fish and Wildlife Inventory Information

Fish and wildlife inventory information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. The values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), is the source of site-specific information for the fish and wildlife species present on the management unit.

Fish and wildlife inventory information which will be available includes:

(a) known fish and wildlife species on the management unit;
(b) fish and wildlife species of local concern; and
(c) the slope of shoreland areas.

Sources for fish inventory information include lake, stream and other aquatic habitat surveys. Sources for wildlife inventory information include population, range and habitat surveys.

### 1.1.8.7 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk

Inventories and information for species at risk on the management unit will be available for use in planning. MNR's Natural Heritage Information Centre is the source of information on species of flora, fish and wildlife listed as endangered or threatened, and species of special concern. The values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), is the source of site-specific information for the flora, fish and wildlife species present on the management unit. This information will contribute to the development of management objectives and the preparation of operational prescriptions for areas of concern.

The species inventories and information which will be available include:

(a) known sites of occurrence of habitat for flora, fish and wildlife species listed as endangered;
(b) known sites of occurrence of habitat for flora, fish and wildlife species listed as threatened; and
(c) known sites of occurrence of flora, fish and wildlife species of special concern.

Publication of information on some natural resource features, land uses and values may be detrimental to their conservation, in which case the information will not normally be publicly available.

### 1.1.8.8 Other Resource Inventories and Information

Other resource inventories and information for the management unit will be available for use in planning. This information will contribute to the update of values maps, and the development of management objectives for the forest.

The other resource inventories and information which will be available include:

(a) information on each park and protected area, including the name, designation (e.g. provincial park, conservation reserve), class (e.g. wilderness, recreation) and area (in hectares);
(b) cultural heritage resource values inventory information, including:
    (i) known archaeology sites and cultural heritage landscapes;
    (ii) Aboriginal values information; and
    (iii) areas of archaeological potential; and
(c) mineral resource assessment maps.

Mineral resource assessment maps are available from the Ministry of Northern Development, Mines and Forestry.

1.1.8.9 Values Maps

MNR will produce a values map, or series of maps, for the management unit, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The values maps provide a summary of the geographic locations of known natural resource features, land uses and values for the management unit, including provincial parks and conservation reserves on the management unit, which will be considered in forest management planning, and about which further inventory information is available. The values maps are intended to be used primarily as background information for planning, and will also be used for display purposes and to solicit additional information about natural resource features, land uses and values. The types of information normally portrayed on the values maps are listed in Appendix IV and the Forest Information Manual. No listing of values can be definitive. For the purposes of forest management planning, it can be any feature, entity or forest condition that could be impacted by forest operations. Base features can be considered values; lakes are an example. The list of values considered in forest management planning varies by forest management unit, landscape features, and stakeholders involved. The lists provided in Appendix IV and the Forest Information Manual technical specifications are not all inclusive; they are a guide to the types of values considered.

Values information will be updated as information is assembled during the production and implementation of the forest management plan. MNR will update and provide the most current, relevant information available on natural resource features, land uses and values, including cultural heritage resource values, at each stage of public consultation. Information on natural resource features, land uses and values will be generally available to the public. When publication of the location of particular natural resource features, land uses and values may be detrimental to their conservation, they will not be portrayed on the values maps.

The values maps will be accompanied by text that includes:

(a) a list of references to the sources of information on the values maps or otherwise available in the database;
(b) identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and

(c) identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.

With regard to old growth forest values, all sites which contain old growth red and white pine forest communities, as defined in the Old Growth Forest Definitions for Ontario (technical report), will be identified on the values maps for the management unit.
A separate values map for resource-based tourism values will be produced by MNR to support the development of resource stewardship agreements (Part A, Section 1.1.4) and development of operational prescriptions to protect tourism values.

The most up-to-date versions of the values maps will be maintained at the appropriate MNR area or district office and will be available for public viewing.

### 1.1.8.10 Roads Inventory

The planning team will confirm and update the existing roads inventory for the management unit, using the most up-to-date information available. For each road or road network, the planning team will confirm the:

(a) road or road network identifier;
(b) road class;
(c) geographic location;
(d) responsibility assignment for the road and water crossings; and
(e) use management strategy.

Existing roads, approved primary road corridors and access restrictions on roads will be portrayed. Roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee will be differentiated.

### 1.1.8.11 Social and Economic Description

A social and economic description will be prepared for the management unit, using available information, in accordance with the requirements of Appendix III. The social and economic description will describe the social and economic characteristics of:

(a) communities that receive substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest resources from the management unit, and communities that have substantial employment related to the forest industry;
(b) forest resource-processing facilities; and
(c) the primary uses and users of the forest.

The description will be considered in the development of the long-term management direction, and the planning of forest operations.

Planning team advisors, in particular the Municipal Economic Development Officers and Northern Development Officers from the Ministry of Northern Development, Mines and Forestry, may provide, verify or update information for the social and economic description. Forest users may also provide some of the information.

#### 1.1.8.12 Historic Forest Condition

The description of the historic forest condition will be used in the development of the long-term management direction for the forest (Part A, Section 1.2). The historic forest condition will provide insight into the natural dynamics of the forest, the effects of past forest management, and the current forest composition. Historical management unit information will also be useful in understanding trends and changes in forest composition, and past use of forest resources from the management unit.

The planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise the summary of the historic forest condition. A revised summary of the history of the forest will be prepared if required. The summary will include a discussion of how the historic forest condition, past human activities, developments and natural processes relate to the current forest condition, and the associated management implications.

A summary of the history of the forest on the management unit will address:

- (a) historical use of forest resources;
- (b) historical development of access;
- (c) historical natural disturbances, including size and frequency information; and
- (d) changes to the forest, including:
  - (i) forest type, structure and composition;
  - (ii) forest landscape pattern;
  - (iii) forest productivity;
  - (iv) populations of flora and fauna;
  - (v) wildlife habitat; and
  - (vi) forest biodiversity.

#### 1.1.8.13 Aboriginal Background Information Report

The District Manager will seek involvement from each Aboriginal community to review and update the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report(s) (Part A, Section 4.6.1), including the Aboriginal values map. MNR will seek advice from each Aboriginal community on the public availability of Aboriginal values information.

#### 1.1.9 Development of a Consultation Approach with Each Aboriginal Community

At least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community, in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and implementation of a forest management plan, to discuss the development of a consultation approach for forest management planning with the community. A follow-up letter will be sent to each Aboriginal community, and copies will be provided to the Aboriginal organization(s) and/or Tribal Council(s) associated with each community.
Within 30 days of the MNR District Manager's contact, the MNR planning team representative who is the liaison with Aboriginal communities, will follow-up with each Aboriginal community to discuss the community's interest in developing an approach.

Part A, Section 4.4 describes the requirements for the development of the consultation approach.

#### 1.1.10 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate

After the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.1.1 to 1.1.9 have been completed, the planning team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.1, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and/or 4.5.

## 1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

### 1.2.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the development of the long-term management direction for the management unit, in preparation for Stage Two of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.2). Figure A-2 provides an overview of the process involved in the development of the long-term management direction.

The long-term management direction will be consistent with legislation and policy; consider direction in forest management guides; balance social, economic and environmental considerations; and provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

The planning team will review the long-term management direction in the current forest management plan, and confirm, update or revise, forest classifications, forest model assumptions, and/or management objectives. This approach will facilitate stability and consistency in long-term management direction in successive forest management plans.

In the development of the long-term management direction, the current forest condition is described to provide context for the identification of desired forest and benefits, and the

establishment of management objectives and indicators. Through strategic analysis, the long-term management direction will identify the levels of access, harvest, renewal and tending activities that will balance the achievement of management objectives. A preliminary determination of sustainability will examine whether the long-term management direction provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit.

Additional requirements regarding the development of the long-term management direction for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (A, Section 1.2) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

### 1.2.2 Forest Classification and Current Forest Condition

The planning inventory products are combined and updated with forest classification information to produce the base model inventory, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The base model inventory and landscape level information are used to describe the current forest condition.

The base model inventory and current forest condition provide context for the identification of desired forest and benefits and management objectives.

The development of the forest classifications will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix II)

A management unit land summary will be documented in FMP-1.

#### 1.2.2.1 Forest Units

Forest units are developed for the entire Crown forest on the management unit and will be consistent with regional forest units. At the management unit level, regional forest units may be adapted (i.e., aggregated or split) to address local forest conditions.

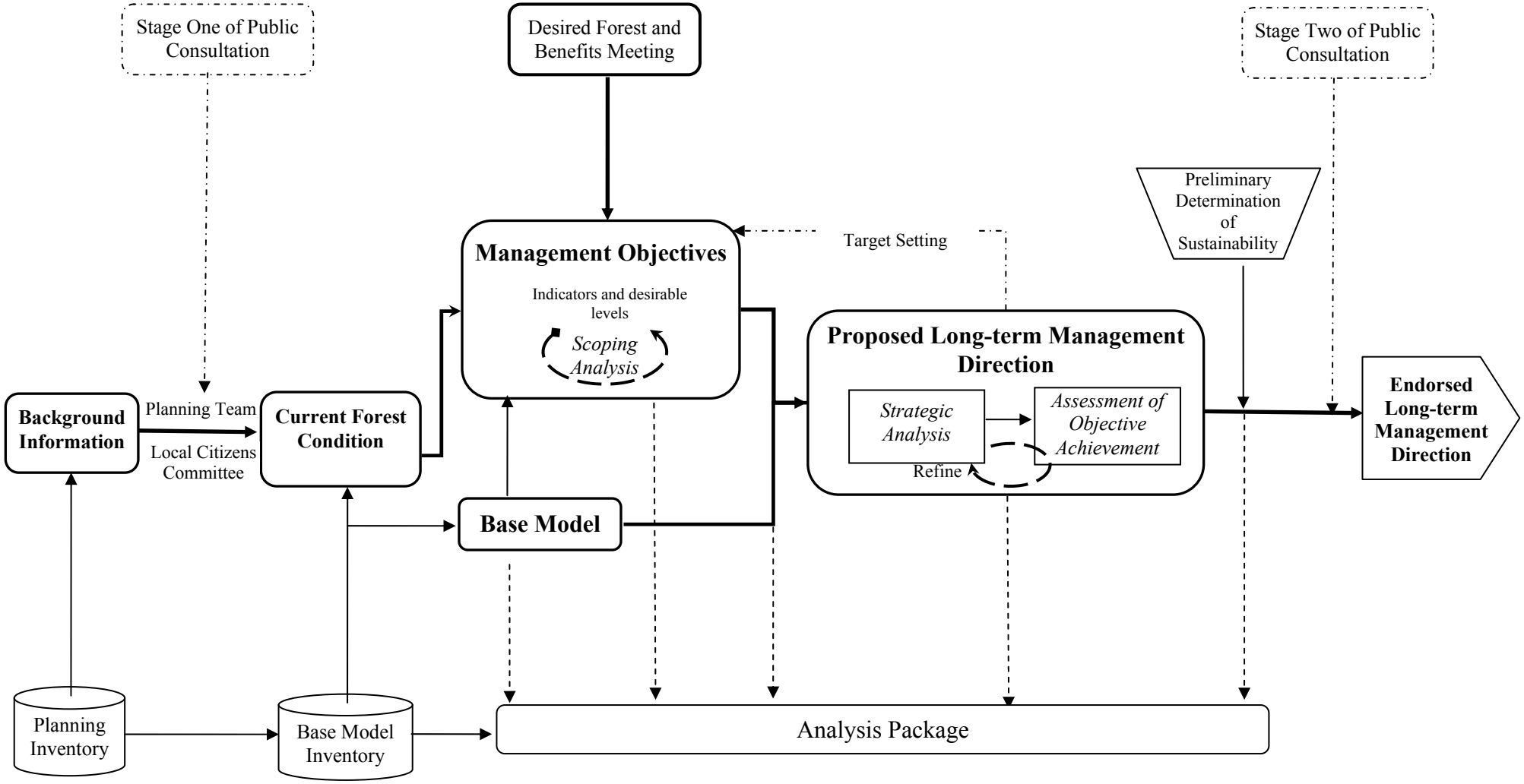
The forest unit provides the primary classification for assumptions regarding how the forest develops, through time and in response to treatment.

Forest units are described in FMP-2 and provided in the base model inventory. The summary of managed crown productive forest by forest unit is summarized in FMP-3.

#### 1.2.2.2 Management Decision Information

Forest stands will be classified based on management decision information, such as silvicultural intensity, stage of management, and age. Management decision information is provided in the base model inventory.

**Figure A-2: Long-Term Management Direction**



#### 1.2.2.3 Forest Landscape Classes

Forest landscape classes are used to describe the current forest composition, structure and pattern at the landscape level. Landscape classes that are used to describe the current forest condition are defined in MNR's approved forest management guide(s) relating to landscape pattern and structure.

The forest landscape classes will be described (e.g. maps, figures and/or graphs) for use in the development of management objectives.

#### 1.2.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

There may be other forest classifications to describe the current forest condition based on forest cover (e.g. habitat for wildlife species). Habitat for forest-related species at risk will be classified and described. The requirement for other forest classifications will be determined by the planning team. The forest classifications will be described (e.g. maps, figures and/or graphs) for use in the development of management objectives.

**CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE CURRENT FOREST CONDITION**
This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the forest classification in the base model inventory and the current forest condition (Part A Section 1.2.2).

### 1.2.3 Management Considerations

Management considerations are changes to the forest condition (e.g. large natural disturbance) or social, economic or environmental concerns that will be considered in the development of the long-term management direction. Management considerations will also be considered in the planning and implementation of operations.

Management considerations that may influence the development of the long-term management direction include:

(a) major changes in landbase;
(b) recent, large natural disturbances;
(c) access to remote tourism areas;
(d) species at risk;
(e) Aboriginal interests;
(f) shifts in markets or utilization;
(g) other planning initiatives;
(h) funding for silviculture; and

(i) climate change.

Management considerations are often identified through the implementation of the current forest management plan. Other sources of information about management considerations include new science, new policy direction (e.g. *Endangered Species Act, 2007* policy direction), independent forest audits and the associated action plans for the management unit, the Aboriginal Background Information Report(s), and submissions from the local citizens committee and the general public.

### 1.2.4 Base Model

The base model serves as the common starting point for the development of the long-term management direction. The base model will include assumptions related to the land base, forest dynamics (forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team. The planning team will review, and confirm, update or revise model assumptions from the current forest management plan. The existing model assumptions will be reviewed in consideration of the best available science and information, new legislation, regulation and policy, and changes to forest condition and landbase.

A sensitivity analysis will be undertaken. Sensitivity analysis involves the modification of model inputs and examination of model outputs to develop and confirm model assumptions. This analysis provides insight on the sensitivity of key assumptions as to how the forest develops naturally and in response to forest management. The results of the sensitivity analysis supports the assumptions used in the base model.

The development of the base model will be documented in the analysis package (see Appendix II).

#### 1.2.4.1 Forest Dynamics – Growth and Yield

Yield curves or growth projections will be developed for each forest unit to predict the development of the forest through time. Growth and yield information from the provincially coordinated growth and yield program, that is applicable to the management unit, will be used in the development of the yield curves or growth projections.

The yield curves and growth projections will:

(a) be consistent with growth and yield models developed through Ontario's growth and yield program;
(b) be developed using relevant data, collected to approved data collection standards and accepted modelling principles;
(c) be validated with independent local data, when available;
(d) be developed to represent forest units and silvicultural intensities;

(e) be developed to represent current utilization standards, and will provide separate estimates for yield in addition to current utilization standards (e.g. undersized and defect);
(f) be consistent with natural forest succession inputs and other assumptions (e.g., harvest eligibility); and
(g) provide resolution of information required to support the analytical tools used in planning.

Growth and yield models not consistent with those developed through Ontario's growth and yield program will be subject to review and approval prior to use in the base model. The review of growth and yield models for statistical and sampling considerations will be coordinated by the MNR growth and yield program. When data to support the development of growth and yield curves is limited, sensitivity analysis is required.

#### 1.2.4.2 Forest Dynamics–Natural Forest Succession

Natural forest succession includes the changes in stand composition that occur through time as a result of aging, break-up, recruitment, and non-stand replacing natural disturbances. Natural forest succession also represents the natural succession of non-forested land types to forest. Natural forest succession can be represented in analysis tools as a transition from one forest unit to another (e.g. succession rule), and/or a change in species composition over time (e.g. yield curve).

To predict future forest conditions, succession assumptions will be developed for each forest unit and silvicultural intensity combination.

#### 1.2.4.3 Forest Dynamics – Forest Disturbance

Forest disturbance information for the managed forest includes the expected rate of stand replacing natural disturbances under fire suppression and post-disturbance succession. The expected rate of stand replacing natural disturbances (e.g. fire and insects) and post-disturbance natural succession assumptions will be accounted for in the model. Sources of disturbance information include: local and regional fire history data, related literature, other historic accounts, forest insect and disease survey reports and provincial annual reports. Normally, only disturbances that are of a recurring nature are reflected in the disturbance assumptions. Disturbances that are single-event or infrequent are reflected as they occur through inventory updates (e.g. windthrow).

To predict future forest conditions, disturbance assumptions will be developed for each forest unit.

#### 1.2.4.4 Strategic Silvicultural Options

Strategic silvicultural options represent the broad, silvicultural options appropriate for the forest. Strategic silvicultural options represent silvicultural ground rule(s) (FMP-4) that exhibit the following characteristics:

(a) they apply to the same initial forest conditions (e.g., forest unit);
(b) they achieve the same future forest conditions (e.g., forest unit, silvicultural intensity); and
(c) they use the same growth projections and/or yield curves.

Each strategic silvicultural option will identify the forest unit to which it applies and will have assumptions about the future forest condition, treatment costs, and success rates in response to treatments (e.g., post-harvest renewal succession rule). The strategic silvicultural options of the base model will reflect the most commonly used silvicultural ground rule(s).

A registered professional forester will have undertaken and documented an analysis of renewal and tending in the year seven management unit annual report (Part E, Section 4.3). The analysis will provide input to assist in determining the necessary levels of renewal and tending activities, and associated expenditures required. The annual report also provides recommendations that will be used in the development of silvicultural assumptions.

Strategic silvicultural options will also specify the biological limit to which the option can be applied on the management unit (e.g. only ten percent of jack pine sites are suitable for seeding).

Sensitivity analysis of the treatments, costs and responses is required for proposed strategic silvicultural options:

(a) which reflect silvicultural practices not recommended in silvicultural guides;
(b) where the outcome is uncertain; or
(c) where the amount of area to which the strategy applies is uncertain.

**CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR BASE MODEL INVENTORY AND BASE MODEL**
This progress checkpoint will confirm support for the information and products associated with the base model and base model inventory (Part A, Section 1.2.4).

### 1.2.5 Forest Sustainability

The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* (s. 2 (2)) requires sustainability of a Crown forest to be determined in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. Sustainability is defined in the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* as “long term Crown forest health [which is]

the condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem's complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario".

The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* presents two guiding principles for the determination of sustainability in Ontario:

(a) Large, healthy, diverse and productive Crown forests and their associated ecological processes and biological diversity should be conserved.
(b) The long term health and vigour of Crown forests should be provided for by using forest practices that, within the limits of silvicultural requirements, emulate natural disturbances and landscape patterns while minimizing adverse effects on plant life, animal life, water, soil, air and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values.

The forest management plan must provide for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit. Determinations of the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit will be made during the preparation of the forest management plan and following the implementation of forest operations.

The preliminary determination of sustainability during the preparation of the forest management plan is conducted during the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3) and updated, if necessary, after operations are planned for the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.10). The determination is based on the assessment of objective achievement.

In the preparation of a forest management plan, the determination of sustainability involves:

(a) development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) that address:
    (i) *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective categories and required indicators (Figure A-3); and
    (ii) other desired forest and benefits identified by the public, planning team and local citizens committee;
(b) assessment of the achievement of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
(c) development of a proposed long-term management direction that balances the achievement of the management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2);
(d) concluding that the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit (Part A, Sections 1.2.5.3 and 1.3.10).

The conclusion is a determination that the forest management plan provides for the long-term Crown forest health on the management unit, and has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (e.g., through the application of forest management guides to protect natural resource features, land uses and values).

1.2.5.1 Developing Management Objectives

The *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* requires management objectives in a forest management plan to be compatible with the sustainability of the Crown forest (s.68(3)(c)); and indicators of objective achievement to be identified (s.68 (3)(d)). Also, the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* (s.68 (5)(b)) requires each forest management plan to contain management objectives relating to:

(a) Crown forest diversity objectives, including consideration for the conservation of natural landscape patterns, forest structure and composition, habitat for animal life and the abundance and distribution of forest ecosystems,
(b) social and economic objectives, including harvest levels and a recognition that healthy forest ecosystems are vital to the well-being of Ontario communities,
(c) objectives relating to the provision of forest cover for those values that are dependent on the Crown forest,
(d) silviculture objectives for the harvest, renewal and maintenance of the Crown forest.

Management objectives will be developed for forest-related species at risk on the management unit. Management objectives will consider the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction.

Figure A-3 identifies objective categories from the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, indicators and timing of assessment.

**Figure A-3: Indicators of Objective Achievement**

| CFSA Objective Category | Indicator(s) | Timing of Assessment |
|---|---|---|
| **Indicators assessed during plan preparation** | | |
| Social and Economic<br>• Long-term harvest levels | Long-term projected available harvest area<br><br>Long-term projected available harvest volume by species group | - During development of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-7, FMP-8, FMP-9) |
| Social and Economic<br>• Involvement in forest management planning | Opportunities for involvement of Aboriginal communities in plan development<br><br>Local citizens committee's self-evaluation of its effectiveness in plan development | - Draft Plan (FMP-9) |

1

| CFSA Objective Category | Indicator(s) | Timing of Assessment |
|---|---|---|
| **Indicators assessed during plan preparation and plan implementation** | | |
| Forest Diversity<br><br>• Natural Landscape Patterns<br><br>• Forest Structure and Composition<br><br>• Distribution and abundance of forest ecosystems | Landscape pattern<br><br>Area by forest unit and development stage<br><br>Amount and distribution of old growth forest<br><br>(refer to forest management guides for indicators) | - During development of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-9)<br>- Upon completion of Phase I operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.10, FMP-9)<br>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.0) |
| Forest Diversity and Provision of forest cover<br><br>• Habitat for animal life | Habitat for forest-related species<br><br>• Habitat for species at risk | - During development of proposed Long-Term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3, FMP-9)<br>- Upon completion of Phase I operational planning (Part A, Section 1.3.10, FMP-9)<br>- Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.0) |

2

1

| CFSA Objective Category | Indicator(s) | Timing of Assessment |
|---|---|---|
| **Indicators assessed during plan implementation** | | |
| Social and Economic<br>Planned harvest levels<br>Community well-being | Actual harvest area, by forest unit.<br>(% of planned harvest area)<br><br>Actual harvest volume, by species group.<br>(% of planned harvest volume) | - Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.0) |
| Social and Economic<br>Community well-being | Kilometres of SFL roads per square kilometre of Crown forest. | - Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.0) |
| Silviculture | Percent of harvested forest area assessed as free-growing by forest unit<br><br>Planned and actual percent of harvest area treated by silvicultural intensity<br><br>Planned and actual percent of area successfully regenerated to the projected forest unit by forest unit | - Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.0) |
| Ecological Sustainability<br><br>• Healthy forest ecosystems | Percent of forest operation inspections in non-compliance, by activity and remedy type<br><br>Compliance with management practices that prevent, minimize or mitigate site damage (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type)<br><br>Compliance with management practices that protect water quality and fish habitat (% of inspections in non-compliance, by remedy type) | - Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.0) |
| Social and Economic<br><br>• Harvest levels, community well-being | Managed Crown forest available for timber production | - Year 7 and Year 10 Annual Reports (Part E, Section 4.0) |

The long-term management direction and the determination of sustainability require the development of management objectives and associated indicators, desirable levels and targets. Summary information associated with the development of management objectives will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix II).

A management objective is a statement of a quantitative or qualitative desired future forest benefit or condition developed specifically for the management unit to be achieved through forest management planning and/or the manipulation of forest cover. A management objective may have an implementation time frame greater than the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

Each management objective will have an indicator(s). An indicator is a systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are used to assess the effectiveness of forest management planning and/or activities in achieving management objectives, and the sustainability of the forest.

The indicators will be assessed at various times during the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan. Figure A-3 identifies which indicators that will be assessed during plan preparation; during plan implementation; or the indicators may be assessed both during preparation and again during implementation.

A desirable level will be established for each indicator. A desirable level is a measurable amount (i.e., specific number, range or trend) for an indicator to be achieved and maintained over time. Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction will be established locally by the planning team with input from the local citizens committee. Achievement of desirable levels may require a longer time frame than the modelling horizon.

The MNR District Manager will organize a desired forest and benefits meeting between the planning team, plan advisors and the local citizens committee. The MNR District Manager may also invite interested members of the public. The purpose of the meeting is to inform participants of the background information and to provide a forum for participants to share their respective interests in the management of the forest. The meeting will provide input for the development of objectives, indicators and desirable levels by:

(a) identifying local desired forest and benefits;
(b) reviewing management objectives, indicators, desirable levels, targets and desirable levels in the current forest management plan;
(c) reviewing indicators and target achievement from the year seven management unit annual report for the current forest management plan; and
(d) reviewing management objectives and indicators from the Forest Management Planning Manual and forest management guides.

A summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting will be prepared.

Management objectives will be developed to address required indicators from Figure A-3. Management objectives may also be developed to address desired forest and benefits identified by the planning team and local citizens committee with input from the public (e.g. selected wildlife species). The planning team will review and confirm, update or revise management objectives from the current forest management plan. The development of management objectives will also consider the background information (Part A, Section 1.1.8), in particular, forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), and recommendations from the year seven management unit annual report (Part E, Section 4.0).

Desirable levels that are not provided directly by guides or other sources of direction are refined through scoping analysis. Scoping analysis is an iterative process that involves a series of investigations to provide insight to what the forest is capable of producing in order to develop realistic and feasible desirable levels for objective indicators. Scoping investigations will consider implications on wood supply, forest conditions, habitat, and other non-timber resources for the short-term, medium-term, and long-term.

The following investigations will be considered in the development of desirable levels:

(a) An investigation into the ability of the forest to meet forest diversity and forest cover desirable levels (based on current forest condition and forest dynamics); and

(b) An investigation and assessment of the ability of the forest to continue to supply forest benefit levels associated with the current forest management plan.

The management objectives, indicators and the timing of assessment for each indicator will be documented in FMP-9.

CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVES
This progress checkpoint will confirm support for information and products associated with the development of management objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1).

#### 1.2.5.2 Development of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

The base model (Part A, Section 1.2.4) will be used as the starting point for the development of the proposed long-term management direction.

The decision support system will be used to conduct strategic analysis. Strategic analysis is an iterative process used to determine the types and levels of access, harvest, renewal, and tending activities required to balance the achievement of management objectives associated with the management of forest cover, and to develop achievable targets in the proposed long-term management direction.

A target will be established for each indicator. A target is a measurable amount (i.e., specific number, range, or trend), for an indicator to be achieved within a specific timeframe. The target will be consistent with the desirable level of the indicator, or the target will be established to encourage movement towards the desirable level. If the target is moving away from the desirable level in the short term, it must be demonstrated that there is movement towards the desirable level in the medium or long term. At a minimum, a target will be established for each indicator that is assessed during plan implementation for the first ten-year period of the forest management plan.

The establishment of targets for each indicator will consider:

(a) the current forest condition;
(b) a balance of social, economic and environmental considerations;
(c) the associated indicator and the desirable level;
(d) the potential achievement for the short term (10 years), medium term and long term; and
(e) projections from past forest management plans and historical levels of objective achievement.

In addition, for harvest level indicators, the targets will also consider:

(a) historic wood utilization;
(b) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified in the *Regional Wood Supply Strategies*; and
(c) maximum even-flow harvest volume by major species group.

The concepts of medium-term and long-term are indicator specific. The actual timeframes for medium-term and long-term are indicator specific and will be identified in FMP-9.

Strategic modelling projects how the forest develops over time, in terms of its structure and composition in response to different types and levels of forest management activities. Strategic modelling will include 160-year projections. Strategic modelling will be used to demonstrate that the effects of projected forest management activities in the proposed long-term management direction for the period of the forest management plan provide acceptable projections of forest management activities in the future.

In the development of the long-term management direction, the planning team may choose to partition the management unit into management zones. A management zone is a geographical area within a management unit that provides spatial context to the long-term management direction, and may influence strategic analysis, and operational planning. Two types of management zones, strategic and operational, may be used to represent spatial considerations. The degree to which management zones may be represented in the model depends on the strategic models used in the decision support system (i.e. spatial versus non-spatial). Strategic management zones represent areas with distinct ecological characteristics, landscape biodiversity requirements or forest-level harvest and retention considerations.

Operational management zones represent areas with distinct operational constraints (e.g. accessibility, wildlife or other constraints on forest operations). Operational management zones may be used on management units with significant variation in forest-level operational characteristics.

Strategic management zones, if used, will be included in the final planning inventory and represented in the model used to determine the long-term management direction. If applicable, operational management zones will be included in the final planning inventory.

The development of the proposed long-term management direction will be documented in the analysis package (Appendix II).

Harvest Eligibility Criteria

Criteria will be developed to identify areas that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period of the forest management plan. The criteria will be consistent with strategic modelling and the direction and standards in MNR's applicable forest management guide(s) relating to landscape pattern.

Considerations for the development of the criteria include:

(a) the maturity of forest stands (age classes);
(b) operability of an area (e.g., physical, topographical, and economic constraints);
(c) species at risk requirements;
(d) strategic and operational management zones;
(e) wildlife habitat requirements;
(f) industrial wood requirements;
(g) opportunities for harvesting fuelwood;
(h) visual aesthetics;
(i) previous commitments to harvest areas;
(j) provision for continuity of operations; and
(k) the need for insect pest management and salvage operations.

Available Harvest Area

The harvest area by forest unit from the strategic analysis for the first ten-year period is the available harvest area for this forest management plan. Areas selected for harvest for the ten-year period will not exceed the available harvest area by forest unit.

Adjustments to the available harvest area during operational planning will be supported by analysis demonstrating the achievement of management objectives (spatial and non-spatial) beyond the ten-year plan period.

If applicable, management zones will be used to address the spatial distribution of harvest areas through time.

Documentation of modelling outputs will include:

(a) projected forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-5);
(b) projected habitat for species at risk, and, if identified by the planning team, selected wildlife species (FMP-6);
(c) projected available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-7); and
(d) projected available harvest volume by species group (FMP-8).

Objective Assessment

The achievement of applicable management objectives will be assessed using the results of decision support systems. Objectives will be assessed individually, in relation to, indicators, desirable levels, and targets (FMP-9), and in consideration of other objectives to balance the achievement of management objectives. The management objective information and an assessment of objective achievement will be documented in FMP-9. The achievement of management objectives that do not require decision support systems will also be documented in FMP-9.

Assessment of objectives directly affected by spatial aspects of forest operations are described in Part A, Sections 1.2.5.2. and 1.3.8. Following spatial assessments, it may be necessary to re-examine the preferred harvest areas and/or targets to balance the achievement of management objectives. Any adjustments to targets will consider the desirable levels for the indicators and will have rationale provided.

The assessment of objective achievement will consider:

(a) if the desirable level is achieved and/or maintained during the plan period or in the future?
(b) if the desirable level is not achieved and/or maintained during the plan period:
    (i) Is the difference between the desirable level and the target substantial?
    (ii) Will progress be made towards achievement of the desirable level?
    (iii) Rationale for the difference.
(c) if there are trends in objective achievement which raise concerns?

Assessment of objectives directly associated with forest-related species at risk must consider the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction.

Spatial Assessment

Management objectives and indicators affected by the location of harvest areas will be assessed for achievement of spatial objectives following identification of preferred harvest areas.

Preferred and Optional Harvest Areas

The available harvest area serves as the upper limit for the selection of the preferred areas for harvest for the ten-year period. The preferred areas for harvest for the ten-year period will be selected from the eligible harvest area. In the identification of the preferred areas, the retained areas (i.e., reserves and areas retained from harvest to meet objectives or guide requirements) accounted for in the strategic analysis will be considered. The preferred harvest areas will match, as closely as practical, the projections of forest harvest in the strategic model, in terms of age class and/or stage of management, and management zone.

The preferred areas for harvest for the ten-year period will be identified for each five-year term and portrayed separately. All eligible areas that are not identified as preferred areas for harvest are considered to be optional harvest areas for the ten-year period. The optional harvest areas will be identified and portrayed, and may be ranked in order of preference.

The landscape pattern will be assessed to determine whether the identified preferred harvest areas provide for the achievement of landscape pattern objectives. Changes to the preferred harvest areas may be required as a result of these assessments. The preferred harvest areas will be incorporated into the decision support system to re-assess the achievement of management objectives affected by the locations of harvest areas.

The assessment of management objectives and indicators affected by the locations of harvest areas will be documented in FMP-9.

If there are significant changes to the areas of operations during operational planning, the assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.3.8).

Social and Economic Assessment

A social and economic assessment will be prepared for the proposed long-term management direction. The assessment will identify the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the long-term management direction. The assessment will examine how the quantity of timber supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities, forest resource processing facilities, and the primary users of the forest identified in the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11).

#### 1.2.5.3 Preliminary Determination of Sustainability

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives (using the assessment of objective achievement), the spatial assessments, and the social and economic assessment and whether the proposed long-term management direction provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit. The preliminary determination of sustainability will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The preliminary determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) The collective achievement of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2)
(b) The preliminary spatial assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2)
(c) The social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2)

The preliminary determination of sustainability will be documented in the summary of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.7). The documentation of the preliminary determination of sustainability will:

(a) describe how the long-term management direction provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit;
    (i) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
    (ii) discuss the preliminary spatial assessment;
    (iii) discuss the social and economic assessment; and
(b) provide a conclusion that the long-term management direction has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

The planning team will present the proposed long-term management direction and the preliminary determination of sustainability to the local citizens committee.

### 1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

Primary roads provide principal access for the management unit, and are constructed, maintained and used as the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads, although there may be significant periods of time when specific primary roads are not required for forest management purposes. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to corridors for new primary roads which are required for forest management purposes for a 20-year horizon, including extensions to existing primary roads. The planning requirements involve the consideration and

environmental analysis of a reasonable range of practical alternative one kilometre wide corridors

Primary road corridors in the previous forest management plan within which a road has not yet been constructed will be reviewed. If the corridor is confirmed, no further corridor planning will be required. If changes to the use management strategy for the road are required, the planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 and Appendix V will apply.

If changes to a corridor, or extensions to a confirmed corridor are required, the planning requirements in this section will apply.

In identifying a reasonable range of alternative corridors for analysis, there will be consideration of:

- (a) the degree to which physical conditions, non-timber values (i.e., natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the management unit), and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;
- (b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, management statement of conservation interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship agreements); and
- (c) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations.

The environmental analysis of the alternative corridors will consist of:

- (a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of:
  - (i) providing access to areas eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
  - (ii) potential effects on non-timber values; and
  - (iii) providing access to any remote Aboriginal communities which were previously inaccessible by road;
- (b) consideration of reasonable use management strategies (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7), which include public access provisions or restrictions, maintenance provisions, and where appropriate, transfer provisions; and
- (c) a consideration of relative costs related to road construction and use management, including maintenance, transfer and decommissioning costs.

Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix V.

If a new primary road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act* (2006) and

applicable MNR policy will apply. The requirements of the A Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves (2004) will also apply.

The confirmed corridors from the previous forest management plan and the alternative corridors for each new primary road, for the next 20 years will be identified and portrayed.

### 1.2.7 Summary of the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

To facilitate the public review, a summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest will be produced. The summary will include:

- (a) text to describe:
  - (i) the assessment of objective achievement with rationale for indicators that are not moving towards the desirable level; and
  - (ii) the preliminary determination of sustainability;
- (b) forest management plan tables for:
  - (i) objectives and assessment of objective achievement (FMP -9);
  - (ii) available harvest area and volume ( FMP-7 and FMP -8) and
- (c) a summary map that portrays:
  - (i) preferred and optional harvest areas for each five-year term;
  - (ii) confirmed primary road corridors; and
  - (iii) new alternative primary road corridors.

The summary will be written in a clear and concise manner to facilitate the public review of the proposed long-term management direction. The summary of the proposed long-term management direction will be available for public distribution, upon request. For designated areas under the *French Language Services Act*, the French language version of the summary of the proposed long-term management direction will be available for public distribution, upon request.

**CHECKPOINT – SUPPORT FOR THE PROPOSED LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION, DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY AND PRIMARY ROAD CORRIDORS**

This progress checkpoint will confirm support by the MNR district and regional staff for the information and products associated with the long-term management direction, the preliminary determination of sustainability and the primary road corridors developed in Part A, Section 1.2. to 1.2.7.

### 1.2.8 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

After the requirements in Sections 1.2 to 1.2.7 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.2,

and the Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and/or 4.5.

## 1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations

### 1.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Three of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.3). The information and products which are required to be available at the Stage Three information centre for the review of proposed operations are described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.3.

Planning efforts from current forest management plans should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of operational prescriptions for area of concern, silvicultural ground rules and road use management strategies.

The selection and confirmation of areas of operations is an iterative process. There will be adjustments to the areas of operations until submission of the final plan for MNR approval. Areas of operations will be adjusted as a result of the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern, the availability of new or better information and in response to public comments.

Additional requirements regarding the planning of operations for the first five-year term of a forest management plan for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (A, Section 1.3) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

### 1.3.2 Preliminary Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

Upon completion of the public review of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest (Part A, Section 3.3.3.2), prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2, appropriate MNR district and regional staff will review any comments received as a result of the public review. A list of required modifications, and the rationale for those modifications, will be prepared, and will be signed and certified by an MNR registered professional forester. The MNR District Manager will provide the list of required modifications, and the accompanying rationale, to the plan author within 15 days of completion of the public review of the proposed long-term management direction.

The plan author will address MNR's list of required modifications, which may result in further analysis and modeling being required. The MNR Regional Director will provide preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction after the required modifications have been satisfactorily addressed.

The MNR Regional Director's preliminary endorsement is intended to enable planning of operations to proceed with some certainty, and to minimize alterations to the long-term management direction in the draft forest management plan. However, circumstances may arise which require re-examination of the long-term management direction (e.g., major changes in information and assumptions used in modeling).

A summary of the long-term management direction, for which the MNR Regional Director has provided preliminary endorsement, will be prepared. The summary will be an updated version of the summary of the proposed long-term management direction that was previously prepared (Part A, Section 1.2.7).

**CHECKPOINT: PRELIMINARY ENDORSEMENT OF LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

### 1.3.3 Selection of Areas of Operations

Harvest, renewal and tending areas will be identified.

#### 1.3.3.1 Harvest Areas

Based on public comments on the preferred and optional harvest areas at Stage Two, the preferred harvest areas will be selected for the ten-year period. Areas selected as preferred for the ten-year period will become the planned harvest areas. Areas not selected as preferred harvest areas are optional harvest areas. The planned harvest areas and the optional harvest areas will be portrayed on map(s).

The planned harvest areas for the ten-year period will normally be equally balanced between the two five-year terms, and will not exceed the available harvest area for each forest unit. If the planned harvest area by forest unit is not closely balanced between the two five-year terms, the rationale will be provided. The planned harvest areas will match, as closely as possible, the projections of forest operations in the long-term management direction, in terms of management zone and age class and/or stage of management. The rationale for the planned harvest areas for the ten-year period, and for each five-year term, will be documented.

The planned harvest areas for each five-year term will be portrayed separately on maps. The planned harvest areas in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit will be clearly identified and mapped as surplus areas.

In the selection of areas for harvest, the direction and standards in MNR's approved forest management guides relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns will be considered. Each clearcut which exceeds 260 hectares will be recorded in FMP-12, with the

accompanying silvicultural or biological rationale. A rationale may apply to one or more clearcuts.

If salvage operations are planned during preparation of the FMP, salvage harvest areas will be identified and mapped. Salvage area is additional to the planned harvest area and does not count against the available harvest area.

The planned harvest area for the ten year period and the first five-year term will be summarized in FMP-11.

The volume associated with the available harvest area and planned harvest area will be summarized in FMP-13. The area and volume associated with the planned harvest area will be summarized in FMP-14. The planned wood utilization by mill will be summarized in FMP-15.

#### 1.3.3.2 Contingency Area

During the ten-year period of the forest management plan, circumstances (e.g., wildfire, blowdown) may cause some of the planned harvest area to be unavailable for harvest. In order to accommodate such circumstances, contingency area for harvest operations will be identified and planned. The contingency area will serve to replace area for harvest during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and will only be used if required.

Sufficient contingency area will be selected from the optional harvest areas, to support a minimum of one year, and a maximum of two years, of harvest operations.

The area and volume of the contingency area will be summarized in FMP-16.

An amendment to the forest management plan will be required to permit forest operations to proceed in the contingency area (Part C, Section 2.0).

#### 1.3.3.3 Renewal and Tending Areas

Areas for renewal and tending operations will be identified and mapped for the ten-year period. Those areas will include: all of the areas selected for harvest; areas previously harvested during the term of the current or previous forest management plan(s) and not yet renewed; areas of natural disturbances which require renewal; and areas which require tending.

The analysis of renewal and tending requirements (Part E, Section 4.3), will be used in the planning of renewal and tending operations. The types and levels of renewal and tending operations planned for the ten-year period, and the proposed levels for the first five-year term, will be summarized in FMP-17. The levels of renewal and tending operations will be

consistent with the projected levels of the proposed long-term management direction and the results of the renewal and tending analysis.

### 1.3.4 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

There may be situations where harvest operations from the current approved forest management plan are not completed before expiry of the plan. Provisions for bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations allow for harvest of these areas in the new forest management plan.

#### 1.3.4.1 Bridging Operations

Areas of bridging operations will be identified to allow for the completion of harvest operations from the current approved forest management plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be identified from areas scheduled to be accessed and harvested in the last annual work schedule of the current approved plan. Candidate areas for bridging operations will be portrayed on the operations maps, and will be updated during the preparation of the forest management plan.

Bridging operations will be eligible for scheduling in the first year of the forest management plan. Bridging operations will be limited to three months harvest area from the current forest management plan and harvest of bridging area must be completed by March 31, of the first year of the forest management plan. The bridging harvest areas contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area in the current forest management plan, but not the new forest management plan.

#### 1.3.4.2 Second-Pass Harvest Operations

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may have been planned in two passes, but only the first pass may have been completed before the expiry of the current approved forest management plan. Areas planned for second-pass harvest, where only the first pass has occurred by the expiry of the current forest management plan, will be identified to allow for completion of harvest operations. Areas planned for second-pass harvest operations will be identified and mapped, and will be updated during the preparation of the forest management plan. The second-pass harvest areas do not contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area.

An estimate of the volume associated with second-pass harvest areas will be prepared.

### 1.3.5 Prescriptions for Operations

For the areas of operations for the first five-year term, including any surplus harvest areas, and contingency areas, prescriptions will be developed. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be developed for all harvest, renewal and tending, and protection areas. Preliminary prescriptions for areas of operations for the second five-year term may also be developed. In Phase II planning, the preliminary prescriptions will be reviewed, confirmed and updated or revised if necessary.

#### 1.3.5.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

An area of concern is a defined geographic area associated with an identified natural resource feature, land use or value that may be affected by forest management activities. These natural resource features, land uses and values are portrayed on the values map(s) for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and include provincial parks, conservation reserves and all lakes and streams. An operational prescription for harvest, renewal and tending, and protection activities is developed for an area of concern to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on the natural resource feature, land use or value.

Operational prescriptions for areas of concern may be reserves (i.e., prohibition of operations), modified operations (i.e., specific conditions or restrictions on operations) or regular operations (i.e., in accordance with the silvicultural ground rules), individually or in combination. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions that are developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values.

The proposed operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be documented in FMP-10. All areas of concern will be clearly identified on the operations maps, and where practical, the proposed operational prescriptions for areas of concern will also be portrayed on the maps. All operational prescriptions for areas of concern documented in FMP-10 will be cross-referenced to the operations maps, and if applicable, the supplementary documentation forms (Appendix VI).

For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions for areas of concern from the current approved forest management plan will be documented in FMP-10. The operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be identified on the maps, and where practical, the operational prescriptions for areas of concern will also be portrayed on the maps.

Planning efforts from current forest management plans should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of operational prescriptions for areas of concern. Operational prescriptions will be developed for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern with a common natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s), using the forest management guides identified by MNR as applicable to the management unit. An operational

prescription for an area of concern may also be proposed from another planning exercise for inclusion in the forest management plan. In some situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription for an area of concern.

Operational Prescriptions from a Forest Management Guide

If a forest management guide provides specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) as to the appropriate prescription to be used for a particular natural resource feature, land use or value, that specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) will be the operational prescription. Documentation of the operational prescription, and the applicable section of the forest management guide, will be provided in FMP-10 and no supplementary documentation is required.

If a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide is desired, the planning team will develop an operational prescription, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions developed by the planning team. In such situations, the operational prescription will be recorded in FMP-10 as an exception. The rationale for that exception will be provided in the supplementary documentation, and the monitoring program for the forest management plan will describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that exception (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

Operational Prescriptions for Species at Risk

If specific policy direction is provided under the *Endangered Species Act*, *2007*, regarding the habitat of a species at risk, that direction must be used in the development of the operational prescription and may only be modified if provided for under the *Endangered Species Act*, *2007* (e.g., by an authorization issued under that Act). Documentation of the operational prescription, and the source of direction will be provided in FMP-10 and no supplementary documentation is required.

If no specific policy direction is provided under the *Endangered Species Act*, *2007* regarding the habitat of a species at risk, specific direction in an existing forest management guide must be used in the development of the operational prescription and may only be modified if provided for under the *Endangered Species Act*, *2007* (e.g., by an authorization issued under that Act). The operational prescription for a species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of the Species at Risk Biologist. Documentation of the operational prescription, and the source of direction will be provided in FMP-10 and no supplementary documentation is required.

If no specific policy direction is provided under the *Endangered Species Act*, *2007* regarding the habitat of a species at risk and no specific direction is available in an existing forest management guide, the planning team will develop an operational prescription, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions developed by the planning team. The

operational prescription for a species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of the Species at Risk Biologist. Documentation of the operational prescription will be provided in FMP-10 and in the supplementary documentation as required.

Operational Prescriptions from Other Planning Exercises

An operational prescription that directly relates to forest management activities may have been previously developed for an area of concern through another planning exercise (e.g., development of a resource stewardship agreement).

The proposed operational prescription will be made available for public review. If the public review supports the proposed operational prescription, no further planning will be required. The proposed operational prescription, and its source, will be documented in FMP-10. The consideration of the comments received from interested and affected persons and organizations at Stage Three, and the rationale for the operational prescription, will be documented in the form prescribed in Appendix VI.

If the public review at Stage Three does not support the proposed operational prescription, the planning team will develop an operational prescription, in accordance with the requirements for operational prescriptions developed by the planning team.

Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team

For some natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s), an existing forest management guide may not provide specific direction or recommendations, no forest management guide exists, or a proposed operational prescription may not have been developed in another planning exercise. In addition, as described in the requirements for operational prescriptions from a forest management guide, a change from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in a forest management guide (i.e., an exception) may be desired. In these situations, the planning team will develop an operational prescription.

In the development of the operational prescription, there will be consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, and participation of interested and affected persons and organizations. For an operational prescription that is developed for an area of concern that involves a cultural heritage resource, tourism or recreational value, there will be consideration of visual aesthetics, which may include the use of viewscape analysis techniques, in the development of the operational prescription.

The environmental analysis of each alternative operational prescription will include:

(a) the identification of the potential environmental effects of specific forest management operations on the natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s) in the area of concern; and

(b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the alternative operational prescription in preventing, minimizing or mitigating those potential effects.

The selection of the proposed operational prescription will be based on a comparison of the environmental analyses of the alternative operational prescriptions.

The proposed operational prescription will be documented in FMP-10. Documentation of the consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, the participation of interested and affected persons and organizations, and the rationale for the proposed operational prescription, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan, in the form prescribed in Appendix VI.

### 1.3.5.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

For harvest, renewal and tending areas, silvicultural ground rules will be developed; the locations for silvicultural treatments of special public interest will be identified; conditions on regular operations; and any requirements for planned clearcuts will apply.

#### Silvicultural Ground Rules

A silvicultural ground rule identifies the current forest condition, silvicultural system, future forest condition (i.e. at maturity), development information, management standards, regeneration standards, and acceptable alternative harvest, renewal and tending treatments for a specific forest unit – ecosite combination. Silvicultural ground rules will be developed for all forest unit – ecosite combinations on the management unit using the approved silvicultural guides. The silvicultural ground rules will serve as the prescriptions for regular operations within areas of operations for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and naturally disturbed areas that are harvested.

Preliminary silvicultural ground rules for areas of operations for the second five-year term may also be developed. In Phase II planning, the preliminary silvicultural ground rules will be reviewed, and confirmed, updated or revised if necessary.

The silvicultural ground rules will be prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, under the direction of the plan author, using the silvicultural guides identified by MNR as applicable to the management unit. Planning efforts from current forest management plans should be reviewed and confirmed, updated or revised in the development of silvicultural ground rules. Local knowledge and the experience gained by the planning team from past management practices will also be considered.

For each silvicultural ground rule, the most common silvicultural treatment package that is used on the management unit will be identified, as well as acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments for each of the harvest, renewal and tending activities. If a silvicultural ground rule

includes a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide, the treatment will be recorded as an exception. The rationale for that exception will be provided, and the monitoring program in the forest management plan will describe the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

The silvicultural ground rules will be documented in FMP-4. For the planned areas of operations for the first five-year term, the applicable silvicultural ground rules will be identified. For candidate areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the applicable silvicultural ground rules from the current approved forest management plan will be identified.

The information on the operations maps represents the best estimate of the site conditions that are likely to be encountered, based on the available information at the time of the planning of operations. At the time of implementation of operations, in the event that the actual site conditions encountered are found to be different than those previously identified in the forest management plan, other relevant approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules can be selected.

The planning team will identify the planned levels of renewal and tending activities and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the forest management plan.

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two passes. The planning team will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will achieve the silvicultural objectives in the long-term management direction.

Conditions on Regular Operations

Conditions applied in areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, conducted in accordance with the SGRs, to maintain or protect features that are not addressed by operational prescriptions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests, wildlife trees) or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines (e.g., rutting) will be identified. Conditions on regular operations may be identified for the entire management unit or for specific strategic or operational management zones.

Conditions on regular operations described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest

In the planning of operations for the first five-year term, locations where the following silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely to occur will be portrayed on maps:

(a) candidate high complexity prescribed burns;

(b) areas proposed for aerial application of herbicides;
(c) if applicable, areas which have been identified as eligible for insect pest management, and areas proposed for aerial application of insecticides, as a result of the application of the planning procedure for insect pest management programs; and
(d) areas available for personal use fuelwood.

This information will represent the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of operational planning, and will not limit the selection of any other approved alternative silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules at the time of implementation of operations.

Planned Clearcuts

As described in Part A, Section 1.2.5.2, areas for harvest operations using the clearcut silviculture system will be selected using the direction and standards in MNR's applicable forest management guide.

Each planned clearcut that exceeds 260 hectares will be identified in FMP-12. The silvicultural or biological rationale will be provided. A rationale may apply to one or more clearcuts.

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silviculture system, the required area of stand-level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNR's applicable forest management guide. The area of stand-level residual will be identified and mapped in accordance with the direction in the applicable forest management guide.

### 1.3.6 Roads

The planning requirements for new primary, branch, and operational roads that are required to access harvest areas, including surplus and contingency area that will be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan are described in this section. Planning requirements for new primary and branch road crossings of areas of concern within the corridors, and new operational roads within operational road boundaries, for the first five-year term, including any surplus areas and contingency areas are also described. Planning requirements for existing roads are also described. The planning of roads will be completed by a registered professional forester.

For candidate areas for bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1), the road corridor planning and planning of operational roads from the current approved forest management plan will apply. Each proposed new primary, branch and operational road and associated use management strategy will be identified in FMP-18, and portrayed.

The planning of roads must be informed in part by the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction. Each species at risk may trigger different and unique concerns under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007,* and will be considered on a case by case basis.

#### 1.3.6.1 Primary Road Corridors

Based on the environmental analysis of alternative corridors and public comments at Stage Two, the proposed one kilometre wide corridor for each new primary road that is required for the 20-year horizon and the associated use management strategy will be finalized. The rationale for the proposed corridor and the associated use management strategy will be documented. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will be provided. The format for the documentation is prescribed in Appendix V.

Based on the public comments at Stage Two, any changes to the use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7) for a confirmed primary road corridor from a previous forest management plan will be documented in FMP-18. Documentation of the rationale for the revised use management strategy for the road will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix V.

Each planned new primary road will be identified, and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded, in FMP-18. The planned corridor for each primary road will be portrayed. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and the portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the first five-year term of the forest management plan, will be identified.

#### 1.3.6.2 Branch Road Corridors

Branch roads are roads, other than primary roads, that branch off existing or new primary or branch roads, providing access to and through areas of operations on a management unit. Whenever a new road, other than a primary or operational road, is required to provide access to, through, or between, separate areas of operations, the road will be classified as a branch road.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to any corridors for new branch roads which are required for forest management purposes for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, including extensions to existing branch roads.

For each new branch road, a one kilometre wide corridor will be identified, based on consideration of:

(a) the degree to which the physical conditions, non-timber values (i.e., natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the

management unit), and significant engineering or safety factors in the area, act as constraints or provide opportunities, including possibilities for development of other resources;

(b) any other planning initiatives that deal with access in the area (e.g., Ontario's Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, statements of conservation interest, park management plans, lake management plans, resource stewardship agreements); and

(c) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations.

The consideration of items (a) to (c) will provide the rationale for the proposed corridor for each new branch road. Each proposed new branch road will be identified in FMP-18. For each new branch road, a use management strategy will also be developed, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7. Documentation of the rationale for the proposed corridor, and associated use management strategy for the road, will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix V. The road use management strategy will be recorded in FMP-18.

A common rationale may apply to the proposed corridors for a number of new branch roads. If so, the rationale can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary documentation form (Appendix V) for each new branch road to which it applies. A common use management strategy may also apply to a number of new branch roads. If so, the use management strategy can be documented once and referenced in the supplementary documentation form (Appendix V) for each new branch road to which it applies.

The proposed corridor for each new branch road for the ten-year period will be identified. The portion of the corridor within which a road will be constructed during the first five-year term of the forest management plan will be identified.

#### 1.3.6.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

The planning requirements in this section will apply to each crossing of an area of concern by a proposed corridor for a new primary or branch road. In the preparation of the forest management plan, these crossings will be planned for the portion of the road that will be constructed during the first five-year term. Preliminary crossings of areas of concern for the second five-year term may be developed and mapped. In Phase II planning, the preliminary crossings of areas of concern will be reviewed, confirmed and updated or revised if necessary.

For each crossing of an area of concern, there will be a determination and documentation of:

(a) a 100 metre wide location for the road;

(b) conditions on the construction of the crossing (e.g., crossing structure, construction methods, mitigative measures, etc.); and

(c) acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location (e.g. identification of location where crossings can not be constructed) within the corridor, and the

conditions on the construction (e.g. optional water crossing structures, alternative construction methods and alternative mitigative measures), of the crossing.

The determination of the crossing location, construction conditions (Appendix VI, D) and acceptable variations will involve consideration and documentation of:

(a) natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the management unit;
(b) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations; and
(c) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

The 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the acceptable variations described in the forest management plan.

The proposed 100 metre wide location, and where practical, acceptable variations on the location, for each new primary and branch road crossing of an area of concern in a proposed corridor will be identified on maps. FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on new primary or branch road crossings of an area of concern or landing within an area of concern. The conditions on construction, and acceptable variations to the locations and conditions on crossing an area of concern will be documented in FMP-19. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-19.

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the primary road, branch road or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act* (2006) and applicable MNR policy will apply. The requirements of the A Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves (2004) will also apply.

#### 1.3.6.4 Operational Roads

Operational roads are roads within operational road boundaries, other than primary or branch roads, that provide short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and regenerated.

The planning requirements in this section will apply to:

(a) identification of operational road boundaries, within which new operational roads may be constructed;
(b) conditions on new operational road crossings of areas of concern; and
(c) the development of a use management strategy for the new operational roads or network of operational roads within each operational road boundary.

The areas within which new operational roads are to be constructed for the first five-year term will be identified by operational road boundaries. An operational road boundary identifies the perimeter of the harvest area and the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the harvest area. Operational road boundaries for the second five-year term may also be identified. In Phase II planning, the operational road boundaries will be reviewed, confirmed and updated or revised if necessary.

For new operational road crossings of areas of concern, any necessary conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the crossings will be identified for individual areas of concern or groups of areas of concern. The determination of the conditions will involve consideration and documentation of:

(a) natural resource features, land uses and values, as identified on the values map for the management unit;
(b) the results of consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations; and
(c) potential preventive and mitigative measures.

Conditions may include: specified water crossing structures and methods of construction; timing restrictions on crossing construction; marking or flagging of crossing locations prior to construction; and notification to directly affected persons in advance of crossing construction.

FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on new operational road crossings of an area of concern or landings within an area of concern. The conditions on the locations and/or construction of new operational road crossings of areas of concern or landing within an area of concern will be documented in FMP-19, and where practical, portrayed on the operations maps. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of comments will be noted in FMP-19 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix VI, Part C).

Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in the forest management plan.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes must traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act* (2006) and applicable MNR policy will apply. The requirements of the A Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves (2004) will also apply.

Use management strategies will be developed for new operational roads or networks of operational roads within operational road boundaries, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 and documented in the format prescribed in Appendix V. A common use management strategy may apply to multiple new operational roads or networks of operational roads. The use management strategy will be documented in FMP-18 for the new operational road or network of operational roads to which it applies.

### 1.3.6.5 Existing Roads

As described in Part A, Section 1.1.8.10, existing roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee will be portrayed. Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, and the associated use management strategy, will be documented in FMP-18.

Each existing road or road network documented in FMP-18 will be portrayed (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10).

If a use management strategy does not exist for an existing road or road network, or an existing use management strategy will be changed, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 will apply. Documentation of the proposed use management strategy for the road or road network will be produced in the format prescribed in Appendix V. Each proposed or changed use management strategy will be documented in FMP-18.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes which traverses a provincial park or conservation reserve will be upgraded, the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act* (2006) and applicable MNR policy will apply. The additional requirements of the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act* (2006) will not apply in the recreation zone of Algonquin Park. The requirements of the A Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves (2004) will also apply.

#### Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the forest management plan, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern, FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on the road and/or landing. The appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in FMP-19.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the forest management plan, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

The conditions on the use and maintenance of existing roads and landings must be informed in part by the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction. Each species at risk may trigger different and unique concerns under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007,* and will be considered on a case by case basis.

1.3.6.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits

By regulations under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, a person engaged in forest operations on Crown land is exempt from subsection 34(1) of that Act, as amended from time to time (i.e., the requirement for an aggregate permit to operate a pit), if the criteria set out in this Forest Management Planning Manual are satisfied. Those criteria are the following:

- A Forest Management Plan (FMP) for the management unit has been approved;

- The aggregate is required for a forest access road in a management unit;

- Aggregate is extracted:
  - (a) no closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table; or
  - (b) closer than 1.5 metres above the established groundwater table if:
    - (i) the proposed site is remote or isolated; and
    - (ii) the excavation limit of the site is not within:
      - 500 metres of a coldwater stream;
      - 1000 metres of a waterwell, whether dug or drilled; and
      - 5000 metres of a receptor;

- Aggregate extraction will be completed within 10 years from the commencement of the pit; and

- The pit is or has been established within:

  (a) An approved new primary or branch road corridor in the Forest Management Plan and the Annual Work Schedule;

  (b) An approved area of operations in the Forest Management Plan and in the Annual Work Schedule;

  (c) An approved operational road boundary in the Forest Management Plan and in the Annual Work Schedule; or

  (d) An approved aggregate extraction area in the Forest Management Plan and in the Annual Work Schedule that is located within 500 metres of an existing forest access road.

Aggregate pits that satisfy these criteria are hereafter referred to as “Forestry Aggregate Pits”.

Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

Forestry Aggregate Pits must be operated in accordance with the operational standards set out in Appendix VII.

Operational standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits as set out in Appendix VII will be documented in the forest management plan.

Aggregate Extraction Areas

Aggregate extraction areas are areas within which a Forestry Aggregate Pit will be established, and must be within 500 metres of an existing forest access road. Aggregate extraction areas will be identified for the first five-year term.

Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits

The appropriate conditions on operations for Forestry Aggregate Pits, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in the forest management plan. Conditions on operations for Forestry Aggregate Pits must be informed in part by the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction. Each species at risk may trigger different and unique concerns under the *Endangered Species Act 2007,* and will be considered on a case by case basis.

If a Forestry Aggregate Pit intersects an area of concern, FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on operations. The appropriate conditions on operations, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in FMP-19.

1.3.6.7 Use Management Strategies

For each existing and new road or road network on Crown land that is the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, a use management strategy is required. A use management strategy includes:

(a) maintenance provisions;
(b) monitoring provisions;
(c) access provisions or restrictions which apply to the public and commercial resource users, with the rationale for the restrictions;
(d) a statement if the intent of the sustainable forest licensee is to transfer the responsibility for the road or road network to MNR in the next 20 years, and the operating year or 5-year term in which the transfer is intended to occur;

(e) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility, MNR will provide a preliminary indication of the management intent for the road or road network; and

(f) where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated an intent to transfer responsibility during the five-year term and MNR's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, the activities required prior to transfer, including potential removal of water crossings will be documented (e.g. decommissioning, signs).

Road use management strategies must be informed in part by the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction. Each species at risk may trigger different and unique concerns under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* and will be considered on a case by case basis.

For each new or existing road or road network, the use management strategy will be described in FMP-18. If a change is proposed to the future use management for an existing road, the road will be identified and portrayed.

### 1.3.7 Expenditures

The projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, will be identified. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations will be described. The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in FMP-20.

### 1.3.8 Spatial Assessment

If there are significant changes to the areas of operations during operational planning, the assessment of landscape pattern objectives and indicators will be updated after the planning of operations has been completed (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

### 1.3.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

An assessment of the expected effect of proposed types and levels of harvest, renewal and tending operations on the achievement of progress towards the long-term management direction will be prepared. The assessment will:

(a) compare the proposed harvest, renewal and tending operations to the projections in the long-term management direction;

(b) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the selected harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;

(c) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest volume of the selected harvest area, on the achievement of the long-term management direction; and
(d) examine the effect of the amount of surplus harvest area on the achievement of the long-term management direction.

The assessment will be supported by modeling similar to the forest modeling for the development of the long-term management direction. The proposed operations for the ten-year period will be incorporated into the analysis tools for this assessment.

If proposed types and levels of operations deviate from the projections in the long-term management direction, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be provided. If there are significant effects on objective achievement and/or sustainability, it may be necessary to adjust the areas of operations for the ten-year period, and complete the required planning and assessment of operations.

### 1.3.10 Determination of Sustainability

In the preparation of a forest management plan, the last step in the determination of sustainability involves updating the preliminary determination of sustainability (Part A, Section 1.2.5.3), based on the results of the planning of operations, and concluding that the forest management plan provides for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit.

The assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be updated to reflect changes as a result of the planning of operations, using the updated spatial assessments if applicable (Part A, Section 1.3.8).

The determination of sustainability will consider the collective achievement of objectives and the comparison of proposed operations to the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.3.9), and will conclude that on balance, objectives are being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) the collective achievement of objectives;
(b) the spatial assessment; and
(c) the social and economic assessment.

If the determination of sustainability indicates that the desirable level of an indicator is not achieved within the plan period, rationale will be required. The rationale will examine whether there is movement towards the desirable levels, and the timeframe in which the desirable levels will be achieved.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

(a) describe how the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit, and discuss:
  (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved;
  (ii) the preliminary spatial assessment; and
  (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
(b) provide a conclusion that the forest management plan has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

### 1.3.11 Summary Map

A summary map(s) will be prepared and available at Stage Three. The summary map(s) will include:

(a) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan;
(b) the preferred areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term of the plan;
(c) the optional areas for harvest operations;
(d) the proposed one kilometre wide corridors for new primary roads which are required for the next 20 years;
(e) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
(f) past and approved harvest operations for the current forest management plan, and the previous ten years.

### 1.3.12 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

After the requirements in Sections 1.3.1 to 1.3.11 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.3, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and/or 4.5.

## 1.4 Preparing for Stage Four – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

### 1.4.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNR review of the draft forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Four of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.4).

In the preparation of the draft forest management plan, the monitoring and assessment programs will be developed (Part B, Section 4.7) for forest operation inspections, exceptions monitoring, assessment of regeneration success (FMP-22), and monitoring of roads and water crossings that will be conducted during the period of the forest management plan. The fire prevention and preparedness measures will be prepared (Part B, Section 4.8) and included in the forest management plan.

### 1.4.2 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan

Following the public review of planned operations for first five-year term, the planning team will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5. The planning team will review the comments, consider if changes to the planned operations are required, make the necessary changes, and produce the draft forest management plan in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the draft forest management plan. The approval page will note the Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted forest management plans. For those components of the draft forest management plan that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director do not sign the title, certification and approval page for the draft forest management plan.

A List of Exceptions will be produced, in the format described in Part B, Figure B-2. The List of Exceptions includes all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides. The

List of Exceptions will accompany the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page.

Prior to submission of the draft forest management plan to MNR, the plan author will ensure that:

(a) the plan is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the Forest Management Planning Manual;
(b) all calculations are correct;
(c) the plan is edited for ease of understanding; and
(d) the plan contains page numbers and line numbers.

### 1.4.3 Submission of the Draft Forest Management Plan

The plan author will submit the draft forest management plan for MNR Regional and District staff review on or before the scheduled date for draft plan submission.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft forest management plan to the local citizens committee. At the request of the local citizens committee, an electronic copy of the draft forest management plan, or paper copies of specified sections of the draft plan, will be provided to the local citizens committee for review. After that review, the local citizens committee will prepare a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the draft forest management plan. The statement will be provided to the MNR District Manager for inclusion in the draft forest management plan that is available for public review.

### 1.4.4 MNR Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

The MNR District Manager will confirm that the draft forest management plan is complete before the commencement of the MNR review.

A period of 60 days is provided for MNR staff, as identified in the project plan to review the draft forest management plan and provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the sustainable forest licensee. In most situations, MNR reviewers will be familiar with the plan, having participated on, or provided advice to, the planning team. Some sections of the plan will have had a preliminary review, or will have received preliminary MNR support at a progress checkpoint during the preparation of the plan (Part A, Section 1.1.6). MNR district and regional staff will also have reviewed the long-term management direction, as part of the MNR Regional Director's preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction, prior to the planning of operations for the first five-year term (Part A, Section 1.3.2).

The purpose of the MNR review of the draft forest management plan is to confirm that the plan meets the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The review will

also confirm that relevant policies and obligations have been considered; that forest management guides have been properly used; and that identified exceptions are acceptable. The review by the MNR district will confirm that planning team decisions and the consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft forest management plan. MNR district reviewers will confirm that the plan is complete; that all calculations are correct; and that the plan is understandable by those who must refer to, implement and monitor the implementation of the plan.

The review by the MNR region will focus on matters that have cross-district or broad regional implications, and consistency in the application of forest management guides. Regional reviewers will assess how advice provided by regional staff has been reflected in the draft forest management plan.

#### 1.4.4.1 MNR's Preliminary List of Required Alterations

The product of the MNR review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNR district and regional reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the local citizens committee.

The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2) will coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required alterations. The required alterations from MNR reviewers will be compiled and forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10 days before the completion of the 60-day MNR review period. The coordinator will collate the regional and district required alterations, edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the plan author and plan reviewers to clarify required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will resolve any disagreements among MNR reviewers. The MNR District Manager will provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the plan author before the public review of the draft forest management plan. The plan author will submit the preliminary list of required alterations for inclusion with the draft forest management plan that is available for public review.

### 1.4.5 Preparation of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary

A draft forest management plan summary will be prepared by the planning team member assigned the responsibility in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2). The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public review of the draft forest management plan, by having a summary of the plan available for reviewers to keep for their own use. The content requirements of the forest management plan summary are prescribed in Part B, Section 7.0.

The summary will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least 30 days before the information centre to review the draft forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.3.4). A French version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French versions of the Draft Forest Management Plan Summary. The Draft Forest Management Plan Summary will be available with the draft forest management plan that is available for public review.

#### 1.4.6 Availability of the Draft Forest Management Plan

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, the draft forest management plan, the preliminary list of required alterations, and the draft forest management plan summary, will be available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access.

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the draft forest management plan.

The English and French versions of the draft forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

#### 1.4.7 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of the Draft Forest Management Plan

After the requirements in Sections 1.4.1 to 1.4.6 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and/or 4.5.

## 1.5 Preparing for Stage Five – Revision and Approval of the Forest Management Plan

#### 1.5.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft forest management plan, and MNR review and approval of the forest management plan, in preparation for Stage Five of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.5).

During the public review of the draft forest management plan, the plan author may discuss the preliminary list of required alterations with MNR reviewers to determine how required alterations will be addressed in the revision of the forest management plan.

### 1.5.2 Final List of Required Alterations

Following the public review of the draft forest management plan and MNR's preliminary list of required alterations, the plan author and the MNR staff person designated as coordinator of the list of required alterations in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2) will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5.

Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft forest management plan, the plan author and planning team will review the comments from the public and Aboriginal communities, and determine if any changes or additions are required to the preliminary list of required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether to incorporate comments from the public and Aboriginal communities in the final list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will decide. An issue resolution decision (Part A, Section 3.4.1) that is made during the public review of the draft forest management plan will be reflected in the final list of required alterations. The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the project plan (Part A, Section 1.1.2.2) will make the necessary changes to the list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author; and
(c) the local citizens committee.

The MNR District Manager will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address changes requested during the public review of the draft forest management plan to:

(a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
(b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response that is provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 9 to 11 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

### 1.5.3 Preparation of the Forest Management Plan and Forest Management Plan Summary

The forest management plan will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the forest

management plan to facilitate the MNR review. A list of major changes to the draft forest management plan will be prepared and will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the forest management plan to the local citizens committee. After that presentation, the local citizens committee will confirm or update the brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan. The statement will be provided to the MNR District Manager for inclusion with the approved forest management plan that is available for public inspection.

If requested by the MNR Regional Director, prior to submission of the forest management plan to MNR for review and approval, the plan author and representatives of the planning team, including the representative of the local citizens committee, will make a presentation of the forest management plan to the MNR Regional Director. The MNR District Manager and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

The draft forest management plan summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the forest management plan. A French version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French versions of forest management plan summary. The forest management plan summary will be available with the MNR-approved forest management plan that is available for public inspection.

### 1.5.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A) of the forest management plan. The approval page will note the Forest Information Portal Submission Identification. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted forest management plans. For those components of the revised forest management plan that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the plan, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page.

The plan author will submit the revised forest management plan for MNR Regional and District staff review. The plan author will also submit documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revised forest management plan, to facilitate the MNR review. A period of approximately 15 days is provided for MNR review and approval of the forest management plan.

After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign the Forest Management Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-1A), and recommend the forest management plan for approval by the MNR Regional Director. The Forest Information

Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted forest management plans.

The MNR District Manager's signature on the title, certification and approval page certifies that:

(a) the forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples); and has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides;
(b) all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides have been identified; and
(c) all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides have been identified.

If the MNR Regional Director agrees with the MNR District Manager's recommendation, the MNR Regional Director will approve the forest management plan. The approval of the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director confirms that the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit. The MNR Regional Director will identify the forest information portal submission that is being approved on the Title Certification and Approval Page. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted forest management plans. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

### 1.5.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.5, the MNR-approved forest management plan, and the forest management plan summary will be available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the forest management plan.

The English and French versions of the forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

### 1.5.6 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of the MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

After the requirements in Sections 1.5.1 to 1.5.5 have been completed, the planning team will conduct public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.3.5,

and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and/or 4.5.

## 1.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

The approved forest management plan will be available for public viewing for the ten-year period of the forest management plan at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the forest management plan.

The English and French versions of the approved forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

# 2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

If the MNR Regional Director's decision on endorsement of the year three management unit annual report supports the continuation of the long-term management direction for the management unit, the planning of operations for the second five-year term will proceed. If the MNR Regional Director's decision on endorsement of the year three management unit annual report supports that the long-term management direction remains substantially valid, but requires minor adjustments, and planning of operations for the second five-year term proceeds, with appropriate modifications. Part B, Section 8.0 describes the documentation requirements for the planned operations for the second five-year term. After the operations have been approved for implementation, the operations will be part of the forest management plan.

Any approved access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan, that were not completed during the first five-year term, remain approved for implementation during the second five-year term, with no further planning requirements.

The preparation, review and approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term take about 20 months. The timetable, based on an ideal situation, is outlined in Figure A-4.

## 2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations

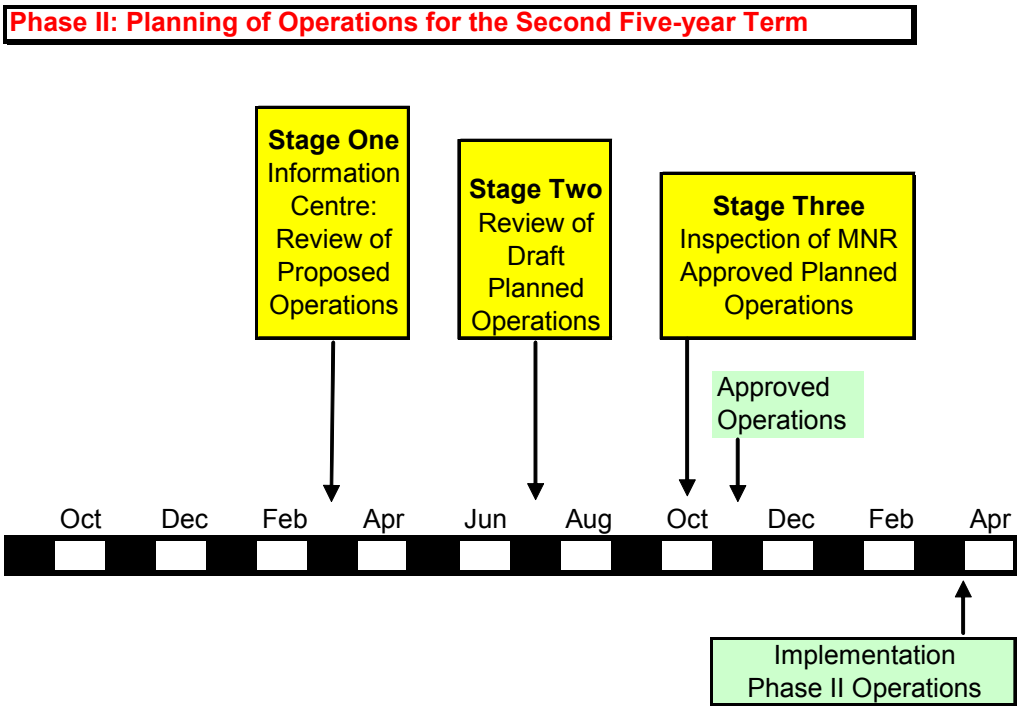
### 2.1.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the planning of operations for the second five-year term, in preparation for Stage One of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.1). The planning team will review and confirm, update or revise the background information, and prescriptions for operations used to plan the first five-year term, for use in planning of operations in the second five-year term. The selected areas of operations will also be reviewed.

The updated background information will be made available to the local citizens committee prior to beginning formal consultation.

Additional requirements regarding the planning of operations for the second five-year term of a forest management plan for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (A, Section 2.1) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

**Figure A-4: Overview of Schedule for Planning of Operations for the Second Five-year Term**




**NOTE**: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

### 2.1.2 Planning Team

The membership of the planning team will be reviewed and updated. In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author.

#### 2.1.2.1 Terms of Reference and Project Plan

The plan author, in conjunction with the MNR District Manager and planning team, will review and update the terms of reference and project plan to reflect changes in membership, to assign team member responsibilities, and to define the planning schedule for the preparation, review and approval of operations for the second five-year term. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director will approve the updated terms of reference.

### 2.1.3 Local Citizens Committee

The membership of the local citizens committee and local citizens committee terms of reference (Part A, Section 3.2) will also be reviewed and updated.

### 2.1.4 Resource Stewardship Agreements

One year before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each licensed resource-based tourism operator in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or uses may be affected by the production and implementation of the forest management plan. For operators with an existing resource stewardship agreement, the letter will invite the operator to review and update the agreement, and provide a reminder of the opportunities for the public and Aboriginal communities to review specific proposals and prescriptions in the agreement related to forest management activities. For operators without a resource stewardship agreement, the letter will invite the operator to discuss the development of a resource stewardship agreement. Specific proposals and prescriptions in a resource stewardship agreement will be available for review at Phase II: Stage One of public consultation.

The resource-based tourism values map produced by MNR for the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), will be updated to support the review and/or development of resource stewardship agreements.

An up-to-date list of licensed resource-based tourism operators with facilities on the management unit, and licensed resource-based tourism operators without facilities who use the natural resources of the management unit, will be provided to the sustainable forest licensee by the Ministry of Tourism.

### 2.1.5 Background Information

The planning team will review and confirm, update or revise the background information used in the production of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.8).

The background information that will be reviewed includes:

(a) sources of direction;
(b) provincial audits and reports prepared by or for MNR;
(c) new forest management guides that are scheduled for implementation;
(d) the year three management unit annual report for the current forest management plan;
(e) the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan;
(f) fish and wildlife inventories;
(g) inventories and information for species at risk;
(h) other resource inventories and information, including information on cultural heritage resource values, and mineral resource assessment maps;
(i) updated values maps;
(j) roads inventory; and
(k) the Aboriginal Background Information Report(s) for the current forest management plan.

### 2.1.6 Aboriginal Consultation Approach

At least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit, whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities. The purpose of this contact is to confirm the continued use of the consultation approach developed with the community for the forest management plan (Part A, Section 4.4).

In those circumstances where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been developed, prior to the commencement of the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to invite the community to discuss the development of a consultation approach suitable to the community.

Any changes to an existing consultation approach, or any new consultation approach, will be developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4.

### 2.1.7 Selection of Areas of Operations

Planned or preferred harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations, which were identified and portrayed on the operations maps in the forest management plan (Part A, Sections 1.3.3.1 and 1.3.3.3), will be confirmed or changed if necessary.

If there are changes to the planned harvest areas, new areas will be selected from the optional harvest areas identified in the forest management plan, and the rationale for new areas will be documented. The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1 will apply. The rationale will consider the effect of the changes on landscape pattern objectives and indicators (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The planned harvest areas in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit will be clearly identified and mapped as surplus areas.

A revised FMP-13 will be prepared to identify undersized and defect volume if it was not provided in the forest management plan. The area and volume associated with the planned harvest area will be summarized in FMP-14. The planned wood utilization by mill will be summarized in FMP-15.

If salvage operations are planned during preparation of the planned operations, salvage harvest areas will be identified and mapped. Salvage area is additional to the planned harvest area and does not count against the available harvest area.

If additional contingency area is required, any new contingency area will be selected from the optional harvest areas identified in the forest management plan. The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2 will apply.

The requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.3 will apply to the selection of areas for renewal and tending.

If there are changes to the planned renewal and tending areas, the rationale for new areas will be documented. The rationale will consider the affect of the changes on objectives and indicators (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2).

Planned harvest areas and areas for renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term will be portrayed.

### 2.1.8 Prescriptions for Operations

For the areas of operations for the second five-year term, including any surplus harvest areas and new contingency areas, prescriptions will be developed. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be developed for all harvest, renewal and tending, and protection areas.

#### 2.1.8.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

The planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern will include:

(a) reviewing existing operational prescription for areas of concern;
(b) ensuring the operational prescriptions for areas of concern are consistent with the direction in current forest management guides or other direction; and
(c) updating existing operational prescription for areas of concern or developing new operational prescriptions for areas of concern, where necessary.

If new operational prescriptions or changes to the existing operational prescriptions are required, the planning requirements for the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern within the selected areas for operations in the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, will apply.

#### 2.1.8.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

The analysis of renewal and tending activities in the year ten management unit annual report will be considered in the planning of renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term.

<u>Silvicultural Ground Rules</u>

The silvicultural ground rules that were developed in the production of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) will be confirmed, or changed if necessary. If new silvicultural ground rules or changes to the existing silvicultural ground rules are required, the same

planning requirements which applied to the development of silvicultural ground rules in the production of the forest management plan, as described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2, will apply.

Conditions on Regular Operations

Conditions applied in areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, conducted in accordance with the SGRs, to maintain or protect features that are not addressed by operational prescriptions for areas of concern (e.g., grouse nests, wildlife trees) or to implement specific operational standards and guidelines (e.g., rutting) will be identified. Conditions on regular operations may be identified for the entire management unit or for specific strategic or operational management zone.

Conditions on regular operations described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest

Locations where silvicultural treatments of special public interest are likely to occur will be identified in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.2.

Planned Clearcuts

For planned clearcuts for the second five-year term, the requirements identified in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2, will apply.

### 2.1.9 Roads

#### 2.1.9.1 Primary and Branch Road Corridors

Each primary road corridor within which a road will be constructed during the second five-year term and associated use management strategy will be confirmed, or changed if necessary.

Each branch road corridor within which a road will be constructed during the second five-year term and associated use management strategy will be confirmed, or changed if necessary.

If new branch road corridors or changes to previously planned primary and branch road corridors are required, the same planning requirements as described in Part A, Sections 1.3.6.1, and 1.3.6.2 will apply for the second five-year term.

If new use management strategies are required for new branch roads or changes to a use management strategy for planned corridors are required, the planning requirements as described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, will apply.

If there are changes to the previously planned primary and branch road corridors, or the use management strategy, identified in the forest management plan, the changes will be identified and portrayed and the rationale will be documented.

#### 2.1.9.2 Area of Concern Crossings – Primary and Branch Roads

The planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.3 will apply to each crossing of an area of concern by a new primary road, branch road, or landing during the second five-year term.

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern, any conditions on the primary road, branch road or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

#### 2.1.9.3 Operational Roads

The planning requirements in this section will apply to:

(a) identification of operational road boundaries, within which new operational roads may be constructed;
(b) conditions on new operational road crossings of areas of concern; and
(c) the development of a use management strategy for the new operational roads or network of operational roads within each operational road boundary.

The planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.4 will apply to the planning of operational roads and landings for the second five-year term.

A use management strategy will be developed for the new networks of operational roads, in accordance with the requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.7.

If there are changes to the operational road boundaries, or the use management strategies, identified in the forest management plan, the changes will be identified and the rationale will be documented.

#### 2.1.9.4 Existing Roads

FMP-18 will be updated to reflect changes of road responsibility (e.g. transfer of responsibility to/from the sustainable forest licensee) and use management strategies. If a use management strategy will be developed or changed for an existing road or road network, the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.7 will apply.

If there are changes to the use management strategies for existing roads identified in the forest management plan, the changes will be identified and the rationale will be documented.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes which traverses a provincial park or conservation reserve will be upgraded, the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act* (2006) and applicable MNR policy will apply. The requirements of the A Class Environmental Assessment for Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves (2004) will also apply.

Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the second five-year term, and the road and/or landing intersects an areas of concern for a value, FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on the road and/or landing. The appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in FMP-19.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the second five-year term, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern, conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

#### 2.1.9.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits

The planning requirements in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 will apply to the planning of each Forestry Aggregate Pit for the second five-year term.

### 2.1.10 Expenditures

The projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, will be identified. The assumptions and ratios used to estimate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations will be described. The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in FMP-20.

### 2.1.11 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values

The Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be reviewed and updated, as described in Part A, Section 4.6.3, to address the proposed operations for the second five-year term.

#### 2.1.12 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

After the requirements described in Part A, Sections 2.1.1 to 2.1.11 have been completed, the planning team will commence public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.1, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and/or 4.5.

## 2.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Preparation, Submission and Review of the Draft Planned Operations

### 2.2.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the preparation, submission and MNR review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, in preparation for Stage Two of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2).

### 2.2.2 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations

Following the public review of proposed operations for second five-year term, the planning team will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5. The planning team will review the comments, consider if changes to the proposed operations are required, make the necessary changes to the proposed operations, and produce the draft planned operations in accordance with the documentation requirements prescribed in Part B, Sections 8.0 and 9.0.

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-5A) of the draft planned operations. The approval page will note the Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted planned operations. For those components of the draft planned operations that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-5B. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the draft planned operations, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The MNR District Manager and MNR Regional Director do not sign the title, certification and approval page for the draft planned operations.

A List of Exceptions, as described in Part A, Section 1.4.2, will be produced, in the format described in Part B, Figure B-6. The List of Exceptions will accompany the Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page.

Prior to submission of the draft planned operations to MNR, the plan author will ensure that:

(a) the planned operations is complete and meets the content requirements of Part B of the Forest Management Planning Manual;
(b) all calculations are correct;
(c) the planned operations is edited for ease of understanding; and
(d) the planned operations contain page numbers and line numbers.

### 2.2.3 Submission of the Draft Planned Operations

The plan author will submit the draft planned operations for MNR Regional and District staff review on or before the scheduled date for draft planned operations submission.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the draft planned operations to the local citizens committee. At the request of the local citizens committee, an electronic copy of the draft planned operations, or paper copies of specified sections of the draft planned operations, will be provided to the committee for review. After that review, the local citizens committee will prepare a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the draft planned operations. The statement will be provided to the MNR District Manager for inclusion in the draft planned operations that is available for public review.

### 2.2.4 MNR Review of the Draft Planned Operations

The MNR District Manager will confirm that the draft planned operations is complete before the commencement of the MNR review.

A period of 30 days is provided for MNR staff, as identified in the project plan, to review the draft planned operations and provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the sustainable forest licensee. In most situations, MNR reviewers will be familiar with the draft planned operations, having participated on, or provided advice to, the planning team.

The purpose of the MNR review of the draft planned operations is to confirm that the planned operations meet the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual. The review will also confirm that relevant policies and obligations have been considered; that the planned operations are consistent with the approved forest management plan; that forest management guides have been properly used; and that identified exceptions are acceptable

The review by the MNR district will confirm that planning team decisions and the consideration of public comments are reflected in the draft planned operations. MNR District reviewers will confirm that the draft planned operations is complete; that all calculations are correct; and that the draft planned operations is understandable by those who must refer to, implement and monitor the implementation of the planned operations.

The review by the MNR region will focus on matters that have cross-district or broad regional implications, and consistency in the application of forest management guides. Regional reviewers will assess how advice provided by regional staff has been reflected in the draft planned operations.

#### 2.2.4.1 MNR's Preliminary List of Required Alterations

The product of the MNR review is a preliminary list of required alterations, with the reasons for the required alterations. The list is a compilation of required alterations from MNR district and regional reviewers, and includes the consideration of comments from the local citizens committee.

The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the updated project plan (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will coordinate and prepare the preliminary list of required alterations. The required alterations from MNR regional reviewers will be compiled and forwarded to the coordinator approximately 10 days before the completion of the 30-day MNR review period. The coordinator will collate the regional and district required alterations, edit the list, and, if necessary, consult with the plan author and plan reviewers to clarify required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

In the preparation of the preliminary list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will resolve any disagreements among MNR reviewers. The MNR District Manager will provide the preliminary list of required alterations to the plan author before the public review of the draft planned operations. The plan author will submit the preliminary list of required alterations for inclusion with the draft planned operations that are available for public review.

### 2.2.5 Preparation of the Draft Planned Operations Summary

A draft planned operations summary will be prepared by the planning team member assigned the responsibility in the updated project plan (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1). The purpose of the summary is to facilitate public review of the draft planned operations, by having a summary of the planned operations available for reviewers to keep for their own use. The content requirements of the planned operations summary are prescribed in Part B, Section 8.11.

The summary will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least 20 days before the public review of the draft planned operations (Part A, Section 3.3.4.2). A French version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the English and French versions of draft planned operations summary. The draft forest operations summary will be available with the draft forest operations that are available for public review.

### 2.2.6 Availability of the Draft Planned Operations

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, the draft planned operations, the preliminary list of required alterations, and the draft planned operations summary, will be available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access.

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the draft planned operations.

The English and French versions of the draft planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

### 2.2.7 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

After the requirements described in Part A, Sections 2.2.2 to 2.2.6 have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and/or 4.5.

## 2.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Revision and Approval of the Planned Operations

### 2.3.1 Introduction

This section describes the requirements for the revision of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, and MNR review and approval of the planned operations, in preparation for Stage Three of public consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.4.3).

During the public review of the draft planned operations, the plan author may discuss the preliminary list of required alterations with MNR reviewers to determine how required alterations will be addressed in the revision of the planned operations.

### 2.3.2 Final List of Required Alterations

Following the public review of the draft planned operations and MNR's preliminary list of required alterations, the plan author and the MNR staff person designated as coordinator of the list of required alterations in the updated project plan (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will compile comments that were received from the public. MNR will also compile comments that were received from each Aboriginal community, through the agreed upon consultation approach with the Aboriginal community (Part A, Section 4.4), or the consultation efforts described in Part A, Section 4.5.

Within 15 days of the completion of the public review of the draft planned operations, the plan author and planning team will review the comments from the public and Aboriginal communities and determine if any changes or additions are required to the preliminary list of required alterations. If the plan author and planning team cannot decide on whether to incorporate comments from the public and Aboriginal communities in the final list of required alterations, the MNR District Manager will decide. An issue resolution decision (Part A, Section 3.4.1) that is made during the public review of the draft planned operations will be reflected in the final list of required alterations. The MNR staff person designated as coordinator in the updated project plan (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1) will make the necessary changes to the list of required alterations. Required alterations relating to manipulation of forest cover will be certified by an MNR registered professional forester.

The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author;
(c) the local citizens committee;

The MNR District Manager will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address changes requested during the public review of the draft planned operations to:

(a) any person who has requested a change to the draft planned operations, and
(b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed

The final list of required alterations or written response that is provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the planned operations by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 9 to 11 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

### 2.3.3 Preparation of the Planned Operations and Planned Operations Summary

The planned operations will be revised within a period of approximately 30 days based on the final list of required alterations. The plan author will prepare documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revision of the planned operations to facilitate the MNR review.

The plan author and planning team will make a presentation of the planned operations to the local citizens committee. After that presentation, the local citizens committee will confirm or update the brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the planned operations. The statement will be provided to the MNR District Manager for inclusion with the planned operations that is available for public inspection.

If requested by the MNR Regional Director, prior to submission of the planned operations to MNR for review and approval, the plan author and representatives of the planning team,

including the representative of the local citizens committee, will make a presentation of the planned operations to the MNR Regional Director. The MNR District Manager and a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee may attend the presentation.

A list of major changes to the draft planned operations will be prepared. The draft planned operations summary will be updated to reflect the revisions to the planned operations. A French version of the summary will be prepared. The plan author will submit the list of major changes and the English and French versions of the planned operations summary. The list of major changes and the English and French versions of the planned operations summary will be available with the MNR-approved planned operations that are available for public inspection.

### 2.3.4 Submission, Review and Approval of the Planned Operations

The plan author will complete, sign and seal the Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-5A). The approval page will note the Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically planned operations. For those components of the revised planned operations that require proficiency beyond the expertise of the plan author, the person responsible for those components will also complete and sign the title, certification and approval page, in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-5B. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the planned operations, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page.

The plan author will submit the revised planned operations for MNR Regional and District staff review. The plan author will also submit documentation that summarizes how the required alterations have been addressed in the revised planned operations, to facilitate the MNR review. A period of approximately 15 days is provided for MNR review and approval of the forest management plan.

After the required alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the MNR District Manager will sign the Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Part B, Figure B-5A), and recommend the planned operations for approval by the MNR Regional Director. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted planned operations.

The MNR District Manager's signature on the title, certification and approval page certifies that:

(a) the planned operations has been prepared in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples); and has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides;

(b) the planned operations are consistent with the approved forest management plan;

(c) all silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides have been identified; and

(d) all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides have been identified.

If the MNR Regional Director agrees with the MNR District Manager's recommendation, the MNR Regional Director will approve the planned operations, and the approved operations will be added to the approved forest management plan. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted planned operations. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

### 2.3.5 Distribution of the MNR-Approved Planned Operations

As described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.3, the MNR-approved planned operations, the planned operations summary, and the list of major changes to the planned operations will be available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the planned operations.

The English and French versions of the planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

### 2.3.6 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

After the requirements in Part A, Sections 2.3.1 to 2.3.5 have been completed, the planning team will continue public consultation in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 3.3.4.3, and Aboriginal involvement in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4 and /or 4.5.

## 2.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations

The approved planned operations will be available for public viewing for the second five-year term of the forest management plan at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the planned operations.

The English and French versions of the approved planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

# 3.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

## 3.1 Introduction

The forest management plan will be prepared in an open consultative fashion. A local citizens committee will assist the plan author and the interdisciplinary planning team in the preparation of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.2).

Opportunities for ongoing participation in the preparation of the forest management plan by interested and affected persons and organizations, and the general public, of Ontario are provided through a formal public consultation process (Part A, Section 3.3). As described in Part A, Section 1.0, there are two planning phases in the forest management planning process. Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning and three stages in Phase II planning. In addition, members of the public are encouraged to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the local citizens committee during the preparation of the forest management plan.

A formal process is provided for the resolution of issues that may arise during the preparation of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.4.1). As well, a formal process is provided for any person(s) to make a request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.4.2).

By January 31st of each year, MNR's Forest Management Branch will produce a list of all management units. This list will identify all forest management plans currently in preparation, all forest management plans expected to be initiated in that year, and all management units where operational planning for the second five-year term is scheduled in that year. The list will be available on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. MNR’s Forest Management Branch will notify the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, and the Regional Director of the appropriate Ministry of the Environment regional office that the list is available on the MNR website.

## 3.2 Local Citizens Committee

### 3.2.1 Introduction

A local citizens committee, comprised of local citizens representing a range and balance of interests, will be established by the MNR District Manager, in accordance with the requirements of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act,* for the applicable MNR district or management unit. The local citizens committee will assist the plan author, the interdisciplinary planning team and the MNR District Manager in the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan.

### 3.2.2 Purpose

The local citizens committee will participate as an integral part of the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan by:

- (a) nominating a representative of the committee to serve as a member of the planning team, if desired by the committee. Other committee members may attend planning team meetings as observers;
- (b) attending joint meetings with the planning team, to be held at agreed-upon stages of the planning process;
- (c) ensuring that all local interests are effectively communicated to all others involved in forest management planning;
- (d) increasing the effectiveness of the public consultation process by:
  - (i) participating in its implementation;
  - (ii) providing advice to the planning team on the content and presentation of information and maps at information centres;
  - (iii) having representatives attend and participate at information centres; and
  - (iv) providing advice on any additional public consultation opportunities that would be useful in the context of local circumstances and needs;
- (e) participating in a meeting with the planning team to discuss the desired forest and benefits;
- (f) participating in the development, identification and description of management objectives, strategies, problems and issues;
- (g) participating in the development of values maps;
- (h) promoting integration of all interests by participating in the evaluation of trade-offs which must be made during the planning process, and the resolution of problems, differences and conflicts as early as possible in the planning process;
- (i) providing opportunities to participate in the formal issue resolution process;
- (j) providing advice to the MNR District Manager when discretionary decisions must be made (e.g., categorization of amendments, and responses to requests for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management operations in the forest management plan);
- (k) producing regular reports of the committee's activities;
- (l) assisting in the monitoring of performance of plan implementation;
- (m) participating in the independent forest audit process by having the opportunity:
  - (i) to provide comments on the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan;
  - (ii) to identify concerns and issues;
  - (iii) to provide a representative to participate in field visits; and
  - (iv) to provide any other relevant information; and
- (n) providing input to the development of district insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0) by having representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s) invited to serve on the interdisciplinary team which produces a district insect pest management program.

### 3.2.3 Membership and Organization

The local citizens committee will be a standing committee with members appointed by the MNR District Manager. Where a management unit crosses MNR administrative boundaries, the MNR District Manager from the lead district will establish the local citizens committee in consultation with the other MNR District Manager(s).

Normally, there will be a single local citizens committee for a management unit. However, the MNR District Manager may establish additional local citizens committees or sub-committees, where a management unit encompasses a large geographic area with many communities.

The MNR District Manager and the local citizens committee(s) will develop a protocol which describes how multiple local citizens committees or sub-committees will function. The protocol will address the roles and inter-relationships of the multiple committees or sub-committees in public consultation, development of the long-term management direction, planning of operations, preparation of local citizen's committee reports and independent forest audits. In the development of the protocol, identification of a lead committee will be considered. The protocol will be included in the terms of reference for the local citizens committee(s) (Part A, Section 3.2.4).

The membership of the local citizens committee will include local citizens representing a range and balance of interests from the communities within or adjacent to the management unit. The majority of appointments will be drawn from nominations provided by local interest groups. Persons directly employed by the sustainable forest licensee preparing the forest management plan are eligible to be members, but will not make up the majority of the committee.

Where they exist at the local level, the main interests represented on the local citizens committee should include:

(a) local business;
(b) tourism industry;
(c) anglers and hunters;
(d) Aboriginal communities;
(e) forest industry;
(f) naturalists;
(g) municipalities;
(h) trappers and other resource users;
(i) other Crown land recreationalists;
(j) forest industry trade unions;
(k) woodsworkers;
(l) small independent loggers;
(m) mineral sector;
(n) waterpower sector;
(o) Chamber of Commerce member or Economic Development Officer;
(p) local environmental groups;

(q) local heritage groups or organizations;
(r) other interest groups; and
(s) the general public.

### 3.2.4 Terms of Reference

Terms of reference for the local citizens committee will be reviewed and updated at the beginning of Phase I planning, and will also be reviewed and updated at the beginning of Phase II planning. For each management unit, the local citizens committee(s) will develop a single terms of reference, with assistance from MNR district staff. The terms of reference will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The terms of reference will contain:

(a) the name of each committee member and his/her affiliation;
(b) the date of each member's appointment to the committee;
(c) the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and individual committee members, including how each committee member will report back to and/or obtain input from the constituency he or she represents;
(d) the process for selecting members, the term of service, and a description of how a range and balance of interests will be maintained on the committee;
(e) key dates for the committee in the preparation of the forest management plan, (e.g., meetings prior to information centres and submission of draft and final plans, dates for committee reports, etc.);
(f) responsibility for minutes of committee meetings;
(g) required funding;
(h) rules, developed by and for the committee, with respect to any procedural matters required to meet its responsibilities in forest management planning and plan implementation, including:
    (i) how the chair of the committee will be selected;
    (ii) frequency of, and attendance at, committee meetings;
    (iii) development of agendas for committee meetings;
    (iv) attendance at information centres by committee members;
    (v) circulation of information among committee members;
    (vi) selection of the committee representative who will serve as a member of the planning team;
    (vii) selection of alternates for the chair of the committee, and for the representative to the planning team;
    (viii) procedures regarding the declaration of conflicts of interest by individual committee members, and how the committee will address those declarations; and
    (ix) preparation of committee reports; and
(i) when applicable, a protocol which describes how multiple committees or sub-committees will function (Part A, Section 3.2.3).

### 3.2.5 Administration

Members of the local citizens committee will be reimbursed by MNR for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses in connection with their participation in the preparation and implementation of the forest management plan. The committee representative who serves as a member of the planning team will be provided a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings.

MNR will provide the necessary office support to the committee (e.g., secretarial support and typing of committee reports), in order to assist the committee in the efficient and effective conduct of its affairs. MNR will ensure that training material on the roles and responsibilities of the committee, and forest management planning matters, is available.

The MNR District Manager will provide any available information reasonably required by the committee to the committee. This information will be provided as it becomes available, in order to ensure achievement of the committee purposes.

### 3.2.6 Reports and Records

During the preparation of the forest management plan, the local citizens committee will produce reports of its activities. These reports will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning. Responsibilities for the preparation of these reports will be set out in the terms of reference for the local citizens committee. In situations where multiple local citizens committees or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single committee report will be prepared.

The local citizens committee report for each of Phase I and Phase II planning will include:

- (a) a list of all members of the local citizens committee, and their affiliations, if any;
- (b) the committee's activities during the preparation of the forest management plan, such as:
  - (i) the number and dates of committee meetings which were held during the planning process;
  - (ii) the number and dates for joint meetings with the planning team;
  - (iii) summary of training opportunities provided for committee members and recommendations for improvements;
  - (iv) participation in the development of the values maps and the long-term management direction;
  - (v) participation in public consultation efforts (e.g. information centres); and
  - (vi) participation in the issue resolution process;
- (c) a discussion of the problems and issues addressed by the committee;
- (d) an assessment of the co-operation provided to the committee by MNR and the plan author;

(e) an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee(s) structure and any recommendations for change; and
(f) a discussion of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan.

For Phase I planning, the committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:

(a) Stage Two – a report of committee activities to date;
(b) Stage Three – an updated report of committee activities to date;
(c) Stage Four
  (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft forest management plan; and
  (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft forest management plan summary; and
(d) Stage Five
  (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved forest management plan; and
  (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the forest management plan summary.

For Phase II planning, the committee will report on its activities at the following stages of public consultation:

(a) Stage One – a report of committee activities to date;
(b) Stage Two
  (i) an updated report of committee activities to date, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft planned operations; and
  (ii) a summary of the report, to be included in the draft summary of planned operations; and
(c) Stage Three
  (i) a final report of committee activities, to be included in the supplementary documentation of the planned operations; and
  (ii) a summary of the final report, to be included in the summary of planned operations.

The reports and all other documentation produced by the committee will be available for public review. The final reports of the committee for each of Phase I and Phase II planning will form part of the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

### 3.2.7 Forest Management Plan Documentation

Each forest management plan and forest management plan summary will contain a list of all members of the local citizens committee, and their affiliations, if any.

Each forest management plan will contain a brief statement at the beginning of the plan that reports on the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan. A separate statement will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning, and included as part of Part B, Figure B-3 and B-7 respectively. The statement will indicate that the committee's report is included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan. In situations where multiple local citizens committees or sub-committees exist for the management unit, a single statement that represents the agreement or disagreement of all committees will be prepared for each of Phase I and Phase II planning.

## 3.3 Public Consultation Requirements

### 3.3.1 Introduction

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning (Figure A-1) and three stages in Phase II planning (Figure A-4). The requirements for Aboriginal involvement in Phase I and Phase II planning are described in Part A, Sections 4.4 and 4.5.

### 3.3.2 General Requirements

This section describes general requirements of public consultation which apply in Phase I and Phase II planning. These general requirements address public notices, communications with the planning team and local citizens committee, MNR's obligations to respond to public comments and submissions, the *French Language Services Act* and the *Environmental Bill of Rights*.

#### 3.3.2.1 Public Notices

Public notices will be issued at each stage of public consultation. The timing and contents of each public notice are outlined in Part A, Sections 3.3.3 and 3.3.4, which also describe the information that will be available at each stage of public consultation. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations on MNR's mailing list. At a minimum, the mailing list will include:

(a) local and regional offices of relevant government ministries and agencies, and their successors, and in particular:
  (i) local school boards;
  (ii) local medical officers of health;

(iii) each municipality and planning board, and where appropriate, local services board and Chamber of Commerce;
(iv) Manager, Operational Services, Regional Office, Ministry of Transportation;
(v) Provincial Programs Engineer, Hydro One;
(vi) Regional Office, Ministry of the Environment;
(vii) Manager, Culture Services Unit, Ministry of Culture;
(viii) Regional Office, Ministry of Tourism;
(ix) Regional Office, Ministry of Northern Development, Mines and Forestry;
(x) Department of Indian Affairs (Canada);
(xi) Department of Fisheries and Oceans (Canada) – Central and Arctic Region;
(xii) Environment Canada – Ontario Region; and
(xiii) Canadian Environmental Assessment Agency – Ontario Region;

(b) each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and implementation of the forest management plan;
(c) appropriate Aboriginal treaty organizations and tribal councils;
(d) known local, regional and provincial organizations and associations with an interest in forest management planning for the management unit;
(e) members of the local citizens committee; and
(f) individual members of the public with a known interest in forest management planning for the management unit, including those people who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, such as private land owners, tourist operators and trappers. MNR will make all reasonable efforts to identify individuals who may be directly affected, by means such as direct contact and consulting records of registered trapline areas and mining lands.

As additional interested and affected persons and organizations are identified, MNR will update the mailing list.

Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media. Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

Each media and direct written notice will contain:

(a) an explanation of the purpose of the stage of consultation, and its relationship to other stages;
(b) a map of the management unit;
(c) a description of the information available;
(d) identification of the forum (e.g., information centre) for consultation, where applicable, including the location(s), date(s) and time(s);
(e) a request for contributions to the background information;
(f) a request for comments on material available for review;

(g) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*; and

(h) the names of MNR, sustainable forest licensee, and local citizens committee contacts and information concerning how to contact.

Additional content requirements of the direct written notice for each stage of public consultation are described in Part A, Sections 3.3.3 and 3.3.4.

Additional Information Centres

The planning team, with advice from the local citizens committee, may choose to hold information centres in addition to the required information centres at Phase I, Stages Three and Four, and Phase II, Stage One. If an additional information centre(s) will be held, a public notice will be required, and will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

Supplemental Notices

For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and Aboriginal communities of the information centre.

3.3.2.2 Planning Team and Local Citizens Committee Communication

The planning team will make reasonable efforts to communicate with interested and affected persons and organizations to seek their input into the planning process and to facilitate contact between them and the local citizens committee. For example, the planning team will consult with affected trappers and recreationalists in order to identify recreational trails and trails used for accessing working traplines.

Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange for meetings with representatives of the planning team and the local citizens committee at any time during the planning process. Reasonable opportunities to meet planning team members during non-business hours will be provided.

3.3.2.3 Responses to Comments

MNR, in conjunction with the plan author, will respond in writing, in a timely way, to all written comments and submissions received from any person or organization during the preparation of a forest management plan. MNR will respond to form letters received from multiple persons or organizations with a single response to the person or organization that

initiated the letter. The requirement to respond in writing, in a timely way, will also apply to all verbal comments if a written response has been requested. All responses will explain how the comments and submissions have been considered. All comments, submissions and responses will be summarized in the public consultation summary that forms part of the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan (Part B, Section 6.1).

#### 3.3.2.4 French Language Services Act

The *French Language Services Act* will govern the public consultation requirements for forest management planning.

At a minimum, the following requirements will apply in designated areas under the act:

(a) all public notices in the English language will include a sentence, in French, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the French language;
(b) public notices in the French language are required if there are French language media; these notices will include a sentence, in English, which indicates where information on the subject matter of the notices can be obtained in the English language;
(c) French-speaking staff will be available to assist the French-speaking public at all information centres or other consultation forums;
(d) comment forms will be available in both the English and French languages;
(e) written French language responses will be provided to all written French language comments and submissions; and
(f) the summary of the proposed long-term management direction available at Stages Two and Three of public consultation (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.2 and 3.3.3.3) will be prepared in both the English and French languages, and will be available simultaneously for public distribution, upon request.

For all management units:

(a) the forest management plan summary available at Phase I, Stages Four and Five of public consultation (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.4 and 3.3.3.5) will be available on the MNR website in both the English and French languages; and
(b) the planned operations summary available at Phase II, Stages Two and Three of public consultation (Part A, Sections 3.3.4.2 and 3.3.4.3) will be available on the MNR website in both the English and French languages.

#### 3.3.2.5 Environmental Bill of Rights

Under the provisions of the *Environmental Bill of Rights* (EBR), MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation in Phase I and Phase II planning.

For each of Phase I and Phase II planning, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at Stage One of public consultation. At each successive stage of public consultation, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the Environmental Registry.

MNR's guide for the preparation of Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.

### 3.3.3 Phase I Consultation

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at five stages in Phase I planning.

#### 3.3.3.1 Phase I: Stage One – Invitation to Participate

Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to participate in the development of the forest management plan. This notice will be issued after the planning team has completed the necessary preparatory work, to enable the commencement of formal public consultation (Part A, Section 1.1).

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) to advise the public that the preparation of the forest management plan for the management unit is beginning;
(b) to provide the public access to information to be used in the forest management planning process;
(c) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning;
(d) to request the public's views on the desired forest for the management unit, and desired benefits from the forest which can be achieved through the management of forest cover; and
(e) to invite members of the public to meet and discuss their interests with the planning team, plan author and local citizens committee.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a brief description of each stage of public consultation in the preparation of the forest management plan;
(b) a statement that encourages public involvement as early as possible in the planning process;
(c) a statement that further information about the forest management planning process, and background information to be used in the preparation of the plan, is available for the period of plan preparation;
(d) a statement that requests the public to provide additional background information, or to identify concerns which need to be addressed during the planning process, to the plan author, the MNR District Manager and/or the local citizens committee; and
(e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available to the public at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:

(a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies (if any), and MNR (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is supplied from the management unit;
(b) the current version of the values maps for the management unit, including the resource-based tourism values map;
(c) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the values maps or otherwise available in the database; identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects for which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;
(d) a request for the public to provide any additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values maps;
(e) a list of the sources of the information used to update the Planning Inventory;
(f) a landscape pattern map of current forest condition;
(g) a map of existing roads, and for each road or road network, the responsibility assignment and existing information on the use management strategy;

(h) information regarding the historic forest condition for the management unit;
(i) the year seven management unit annual report for the current forest management plan and the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan, or reports of past forest operations for the previous 15 years;
(j) the current forest management plan for the management unit;
(k) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to the management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and information on how the public may access these documents;
(l) audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest Management and State of the Forest Report) and information on how the public may access these documents;
(m) sources of direction (Part A, Section 1.1.8.1), and information on how the public may access these documents;
(n) a list of MNR's forest management guides which are applicable to the management unit, and information on how the public may access these documents;
(o) if Aboriginal communities agree, the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report for the current approved forest management plan;
(p) copies of MNR's brochure on forest management planning; and
(q) a comment form.

3.3.3.2 Phase I: Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to review the proposed long-term management direction for the forest. Information and maps will be available for public review and comment at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee. Members of the planning team will be available to discuss the material. A summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest will be available for public distribution, upon request.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on:
  (i) the proposed long-term management direction for the forest;
  (ii) the areas which could reasonably be harvested, and the preferred areas for harvest operations, during the ten-year period of the plan;
  (iii) the analysis of alternative one kilometre wide corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years; and
(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at this stage of public consultation (i.e., the long-term management direction for the forest);
(b) a statement that the following information may be obtained from the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee:
    (i) a summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest; and
    (ii) a summary map(s) of:
        - the preferred and optional harvest areas for the ten-year period of the plan; and
        - the confirmed primary road corridors and alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
(c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the local citizens committee; and
(e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at Stage One of public consultation, the following information and maps will also be available at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, when the public notice is issued:

(a) if Aboriginal communities agree, the draft Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
(b) a summary of public comments and submissions which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;
(c) a summary report of the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting;
(d) a summary of the proposed long-term management direction for the forest, including the summary map (Part A, Section 1.2.7);
(e) the analysis package;
(f) FMP-1 through FMP-9;

(g) criteria for use in the identification of areas that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period of the plan;
(h) maps which portray:
  (i) the preferred and optional harvest areas for the ten-year period of the plan;
  (ii) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest management plan and the previous ten years;
  (iii) confirmed primary road corridors; and
  (iv) alternative corridors for each new primary road which is required for the next 20 years;
(i) the environmental analysis, including use management strategies, of the alternative corridors for each new primary road;
(j) a request for the public to provide additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values maps;
(k) a summary report of the activities of the local citizens committee to date; and
(l) a comment form.

3.3.3.3 Phase I: Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage Three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on:
  (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan;
  (ii) the proposed harvest areas for the second five-year term of the plan;
  (iii) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
  (iv) the proposed operational road locations/conditions, for the first five-year term of the plan; and
(b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each public notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre (i.e., the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term; and the proposed harvest areas for the second five-year term);
(b) a statement that the following information may be obtained at the information centre:
  (i) a summary of the MNR Regional Director endorsed long-term management direction; and
  (ii) a summary map(s) of:
    - the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan;
    - the proposed harvest areas for the second five-year term of the plan; and
    - the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads which are required for the ten-year period of the plan;
(c) a statement that the information and maps available at the information centre will also be available for review, for a 60-day period after the information centre;
(d) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(e) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the local citizens committee;
(f) the projected date for draft plan submission; and
(g) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at Stage Two of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) if Aboriginal communities agree, the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
(b) a summary of comments and submissions which have been received to date, and any responses to those comments and submissions;

(c) the list of required modifications resulting from the public review of the long-term management direction;
(d) a summary of the MNR Regional Director endorsed long-term management direction;
(e) the proposed silvicultural ground rules;
(f) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan; the proposed harvest areas for the second five-year term of the plan; the optional areas for harvest operations; the surplus harvest areas (if any); areas of bridging operations (if any); areas of second-pass harvest operations (if any); and the proposed contingency areas;
(g) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads, which are required for the ten-year period of the plan and planned operational road boundaries for the first five-year term;
(h) for the proposed areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan:
    (i) the proposed 100 metre wide location for each area of concern crossing by a new primary or branch road;
    (ii) the proposed aggregate extraction areas;
    (iii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of operational road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;
    (iv) the proposed areas where silvicultural treatments of special public interest (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) are likely to occur; and
    (v) the proposed operational prescriptions for individual, or groups of, areas of concern, and where required (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), the environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;
(i) the proposed use management strategies for individual roads or networks of roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee;
(j) FMP-10 through FMP-21;
(k) if Aboriginal communities agree, the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3); and
(l) a summary map(s) of:
    (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the plan;
    (ii) the proposed areas for harvest operations for the second five-year term of the plan;
    (iii) the optional areas for harvest
    (iv) the proposed corridors for primary roads which are required for the next 20 years;
    (v) the proposed corridors for new primary and branch roads for the ten-year period of the plan; and
(m) a comment form.

At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon request. In the material available at the information centre, MNR will include a request for the public to provide additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and

values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values map(s).

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

3.3.3.4 Phase I: Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

Stage Four of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held after the MNR review of the draft forest management plan. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment on the draft forest management plan and MNR's preliminary list of required alterations. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft forest management plan.

<u>Direct Written Notice Requirements</u>

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the draft forest management plan and draft forest management plan summary are available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website during the 60-day public review period;
(b) a statement that the draft forest management plan summary may be obtained at the information centre;
(c) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 60-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(d) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the local citizens committee;
(e) the projected date for MNR approval of the plan; and
(f) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director, and identifies the last date to request issue resolution (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at Stage Three of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) the draft forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the draft forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.4.5);
(c) MNR's preliminary list of required alterations;
(d) if Aboriginal communities agree, the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3); and
(e) a comment form.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

The information and maps will also be available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website during the 60-day public review period. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the draft forest management plan.

Final List of Required Alterations

As described in Part A, Section 1.5.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft forest management plan, the MNR District Manager will consider the comments that were received and produce a final list of required alterations.

The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author; and
(c) the local citizens committee.

The MNR District Manager will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address the requested change to:

(a) any person who has requested a change to the draft plan; and
(b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response that is provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 9 to 11 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

### 3.3.3.5 Phase I: Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

Stage Five of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which advises the public that the MNR-approved forest management plan is available for inspection. This notice will be issued upon approval of the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the forest management plan has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved forest management plan.

Direct Written Notice Requirements

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the MNR-approved forest management plan and forest management plan summary are available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website; and
(b) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any person to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the forest management plan, and that a response to the request will normally be provided by the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment after the completion of the 30-day inspection period (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.2).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website:

(a) the MNR-approved forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the forest management plan summary (Part A, Section 1.5.3); and
(c) a list of the major changes to the draft forest management plan.

### 3.3.3.6 Availability of the Approved Forest Management Plan

After public inspection, the approved forest management plan will be available for public viewing for the ten-year period of the forest management plan at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an

appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the forest management plan.

The English and French versions of the forest management plan summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

### 3.3.4 Phase II Consultation

Formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at three stages in Phase II planning.

#### 3.3.4.1 Phase II: Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the second five-year term. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

- (a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the second five-year term, including:
  - (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
  - (ii) the planned corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term; and
  - (iii) the planned operational road boundaries and conditions; and
- (b) to request contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

<u>Direct Written Notice Requirements</u>

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

- (a) an outline of the subject matter for public review at the information centre (i.e., the details of access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term);
- (b) a statement that a summary map may be obtained at the information centre, which portrays:
  - (i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term; and
  - (ii) the proposed corridors for each new primary and branch roads which are required for the second five-year term;
- (c) a statement that the information and maps available at the information centre will also be available for review for a 30-day period after the information centre;

(d) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);

(e) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the local citizens committee;

(f) the projected date for submission of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term; and

(g) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the plan author, the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) the current version of the following information for the management unit:
  - (i) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of the sustainable forest licensee, other forest companies (if any), and MNR (if any)), and a description of the forest industry which is supplied from the management unit;
  - (ii) the values maps for the management unit, including the resource-based tourism values maps;
  - (iii) a list of the sources of the information which is summarized on the values maps or otherwise available in the database; identification of the methodologies used for data collection; and identification of those subjects for which data are recognized as being incomplete or missing;
  - (iv) a list of the sources of the information used to update the Planning Inventory;
  - (v) a map of existing roads, and for each road or road network, the responsibility assignment and existing information on the use management strategy;
  - (vi) if Aboriginal communities agree, the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
  - (vii) a list of MNR's forest management guides which are applicable to the management unit, and information on how the public may access these documents; and
  - (viii) a list of current audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to the management unit (e.g., independent forest audits) and information on how the public may access these documents;

(b) the current forest management plan for the management unit;

(c) the year ten management unit annual report for the previous forest management plan;

(d) the year three management unit annual report for the current approved forest management plan;

(e) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term; the optional areas for harvest operations; the surplus harvest areas (if any); and the contingency areas. For the planned areas of operations, any changes to the areas which were previously proposed for the second five-year term in Phase I planning will be clearly identified;

(f) the planned corridors for new primary and branch roads and operating road boundaries which are required for the second five-year term;

(g) for the planned areas for access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term:

- (i) the proposed 100 metre wide location for each area of concern crossing by a new primary or branch road;
- (ii) proposed conditions on the locations and/or construction of operational road crossings of individual, or groups of, areas of concern;
- (iii) the planned aggregate extraction areas;
- (iv) the planned areas where silvicultural treatments of special public interest (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) are likely to occur; and
- (v) the planned operational prescriptions for individual, or groups of, areas of concern, and where required, the environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions;

(h) the planned use management strategies for individual roads or networks of roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee;

(i) changes to the use management strategies for existing roads will be identified and the rationale will be provided:

(j) updated versions of FMP-4, and FMP-10 through 12 and 14 through FMP-20;

(k) if Aboriginal communities agree, the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3);

(l) a summary map(s) of:

- (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term;
- (ii) the optional areas for harvest;
- (iii) the proposed corridors for primary roads which are required for the next 15 years;
- (iv) the planned corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term; and
- (v) past and approved areas of harvest operations for the current forest management plan and the previous ten years;

(m) audits or reports prepared by or for MNR pertaining to forest management generally in the province (e.g., Provincial Annual Report on Forest Management and State of the Forest Report) and information on how the public may access these documents;

(n) copies of MNR's brochure on forest management planning; and

(o) a comment form.

At the information centre, the summary map(s) will be available for public distribution, upon request. In the material available at the information centre, MNR will include a request for the public to provide additional information relating to natural resource features, land uses and values that potentially could be affected by forest management activities, where such information is not displayed on the values map(s).

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

### 3.3.4.2 Phase II: Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to review the draft planned operations for the second five-year term. This public review is for a period of 30 days, following the MNR review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is for the public to review and comment on the draft planned operations for the second five-year term and MNR's preliminary list of required alterations. Comments from the public will be considered in the finalization of the list of required alterations to the draft planned operations.

<u>Direct Written Notice Requirements</u>

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, the draft planned operations summary and MNR's preliminary list of required alterations are available for public review at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website during the 30-day public review period;
(b) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 30-day public review period (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(c) a brief description of future public consultation opportunities and details of any further public consultation that may be scheduled as a result of recommendations from the local citizens committee;
(d) the projected date for MNR approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term; and
(e) a statement that there is an opportunity during the forest management planning process to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager or the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1).

Information and Maps Available

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps which were available at Stage One of public consultation, the following information and maps will be available at office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website during the 30-day public review period:

(a) the current forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, including the supplementary documentation;
(c) the draft planned operations summary for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.3.3), which includes a summary map(s) of:
    (i) the planned areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term, and the optional areas for harvest operations; and
    (ii) the planned corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term;
(d) MNR's preliminary list of required alterations;
(e) if Aboriginal communities agree, the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3); and
(f) a comment form.

Availability of the Draft Planned Operations

After public inspection, the draft planned operations will be available for public viewing for the second five-year term of the forest management plan at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the draft planned operations.

The English and French versions of the draft planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

Final List of Required Alterations

As described in Part A, Section 2.3.2, after the completion of the public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will consider the comments that were received and produce a final list of required alterations.

The MNR District Manager will provide the final list of required alterations to:

(a) the sustainable forest licensee;
(b) the plan author; and
(c) the local citizens committee.

The MNR District Manager will provide a written response to describe actions (if any) taken to address the requested change to:

(a) any person who has requested a change to the draft planned operations; and
(b) any other person known to be directly affected by the manner in which a requested change has been addressed.

The final list of required alterations or written response that is provided will be accompanied by a notification which specifies that any person may request a formal review of a specific decision in the forest management plan by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with Steps 9 to 11 of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.

### 3.3.4.3 Phase II: Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

Stage Three of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which advises the public that the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term are available for inspection. This notice will be issued upon approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term by the MNR Regional Director.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the operations for the second five-year term have been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved planned operations.

<u>Direct Written Notice Requirements</u>

In addition to the content requirements for each notice, as described in Part A, Section 3.3.2.1, the direct written notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term and the planned operations summary are available for inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website; and
(b) a statement that there is a 30-day period following the public notice for any person to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific planned forest management activities in the planned operations for the second five-year term, and that a response to the request will normally be provided by the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment after the completion of

the 30-day inspection period (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.2).

Information and Maps Available

The following information and maps will be available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website:

(a) the current forest management plan, including the supplementary documentation;
(b) the MNR-approved planned operations for the second five-year term, including the supplementary documentation; and
(c) the planned operations summary for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.3.3), which includes a summary map(s) of:
  (i) the areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the second five-year term; and
  (ii) the corridors for new primary and branch roads for the second five-year term.

3.3.4.4 Availability of the Approved Planned Operations

After public inspection, the approved planned operations will be available for public viewing for the second five-year term of the forest management plan at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in Toronto and the appropriate communities of the MNR region, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the planned operations.

The English and French versions of the approved planned operations summary will be available for public distribution, upon request.

## 3.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

### 3.4.1 Issue Resolution Process

There are times when a person(s) may identify a concern with a specific activity proposed in the preparation of a forest management plan, contingency plan, minor or major amendment, or an insect pest management program. When informal discussions do not result in a resolution of the concern, the plan author will advise the concerned person(s) of the opportunity to make a written submission requesting the formal issue resolution process.

There may be situations where numerous individuals identify the same issue(s) in their request for formal issue resolution (e.g. cottage association, municipality, etc.). When this occurs, the District Manager and/or the Regional Director may determine that all or some of the requests be heard together in an issue resolution meeting(s) and may specify the time, date and location of such meeting(s). The District Manager and/or the Regional Director will provide an opportunity for the concerned requestors to nominate a representative(s) to bring forward the issue(s) on their behalf.

During the preparation and review of a forest management plan for the ten-year period (Phase I), if a request for issue resolution is received prior to the draft forest management plan being available for public review, the request will progress through a series of stages, if required, starting with the plan author. If there is no satisfactory resolution of the issue with the plan author, the process will proceed to the MNR District Manager, and if required, the MNR Regional Director. If a request is received during the period for public review of the draft forest management plan, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNR District Manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft forest management plan, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNR Regional Director. The last date to request the issue resolution process will be 30 days after the completion of the period for public review of the draft forest management plan.

During the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), if a request for issue resolution is received prior to the draft planned operations being available for public review, the request will progress through a series of stages, if required, starting with the plan author. If there is no satisfactory resolution of the issue with the plan author, the process will proceed to the MNR District Manager, and if required, the MNR Regional Director. If a request is received during the period for public review of the draft planned operations, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNR District Manager. If a request is received after the completion of the 30-day period for public review of the draft planned operations, the concerned person(s) will make the request for issue resolution to the MNR Regional Director. The last date to request the issue resolution process will be 30 days after the completion of the period for public review of the draft planned operations.

If a person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process, there is an opportunity to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities, as described in Part A, Section 3.4.2.

Each stage of the formal issue resolution process involves interaction among the concerned person(s), the plan author, and where applicable, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director, with opportunities for the involvement of the local citizens committee. For each issue, a written response will be provided to the concerned person(s) following each stage of issue resolution which provides the rationale for the decision. The issue resolution documentation will be summarized and included in the summary of public consultation of the forest management plan.

Figure A-5 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment for Phase I.

Figure A-6 provides an overview of the stages of the issue resolution process, and the opportunity to request an individual environmental assessment for Phase II.

### 3.4.1.1 Plan Author Stage

The plan author stage applies to a request that is received:

(a) prior to the public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I); and
(b) prior to the public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).

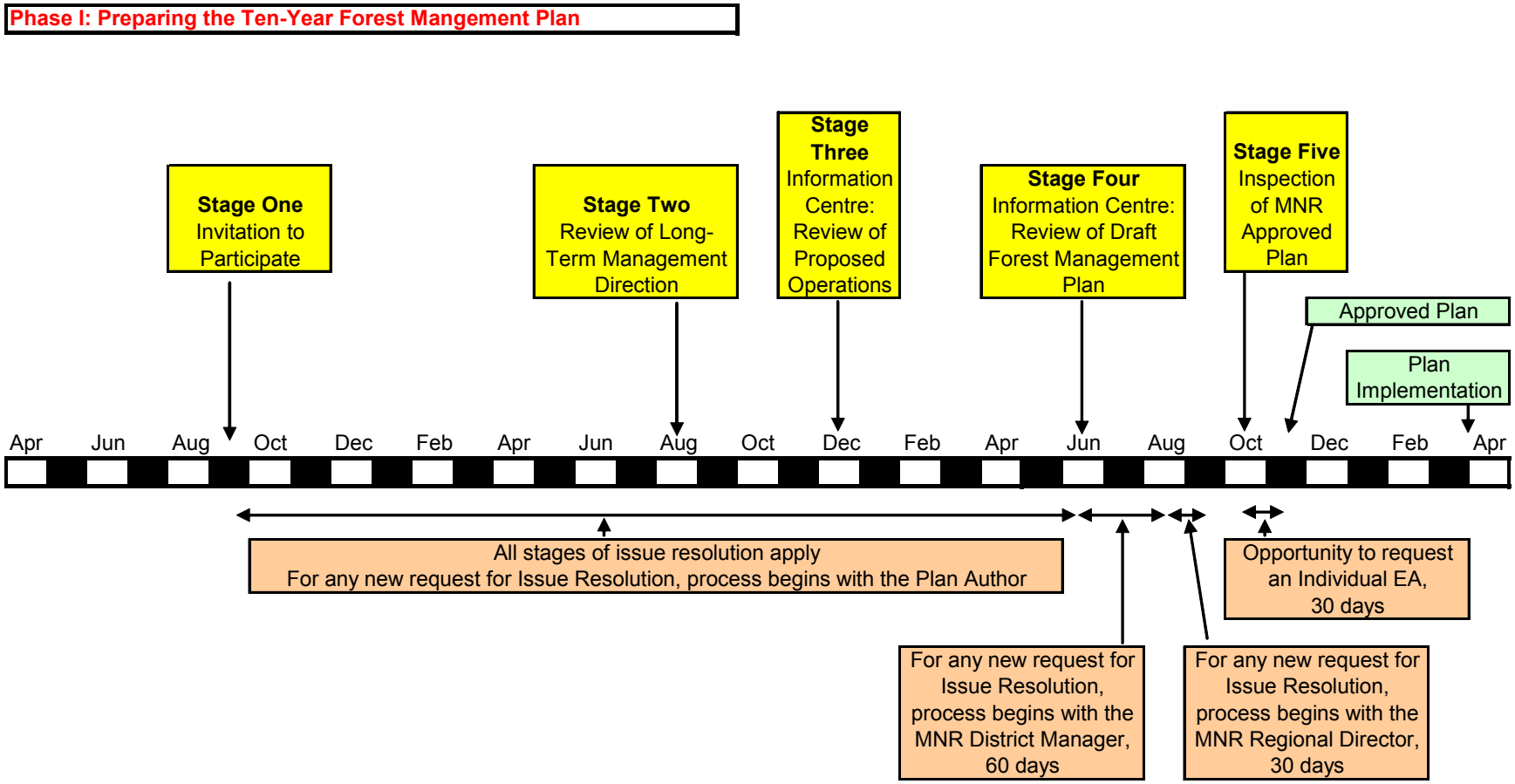
| | |
|---|---|
| **Step 1** Request | The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the plan author, and include a description of the issue and preferably, a proposed solution. To facilitate scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting. |
| **Step 2** Meeting | The plan author will contact the concerned person(s), to confirm the date and location of the meeting to discuss, and attempt to resolve, the issue. |
| **Step 3** Issue resolved | If discussions produce a resolution, the plan author will seek the agreement of the planning team, and provide a written response to the concerned person(s) which documents resolution of the issue. The resolution of the issue will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan |
| **Step 4** Issue not resolved | If discussions do not produce a resolution, the plan author will communicate the issue in writing to the MNR District Manager and the local citizens committee. [Go to **Step 5.**] |

### 3.4.1.2 MNR District Manager Stage

The MNR District Manager stage applies to:

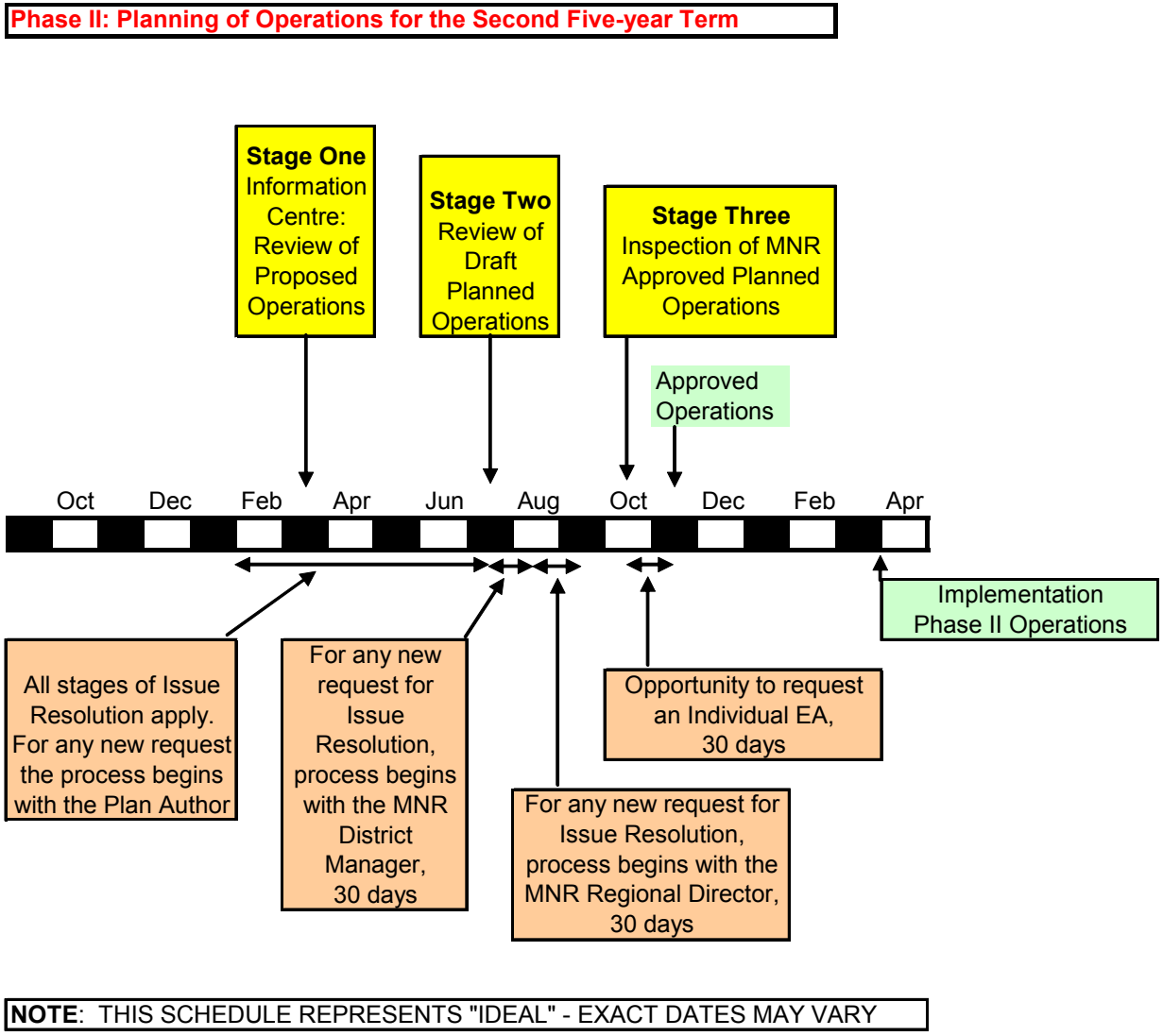
(a) an issue that is not resolved during the plan author stage;
(b) a new request that is received during the 60-day period for public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I); or
(c) a new request that is received during the 30-day period for public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).

**Figure A-5: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase I Planning**




**NOTE**: THIS SCHEDULE REPRESENTS "IDEAL" - EXACT DATES MAY VARY

**Figure A-6: Overview of Issue Resolution Stages for Phase II Planning**



| | |
|---|---|
| **Step 5** Request | For an issue that is not resolved during the plan author stage, the MNR District Manager will receive notification of the issue in writing from the plan author.<br><br>For a new issue received during the public review of the draft forest management plan or planned operations for the second five-year term, the concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNR District Manager, and include a description of the issue and preferably, a proposed solution. To facilitate scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting. |
| **Step 6** Meeting | The MNR District Manger will contact the concerned person(s), to confirm the date and location of the meeting to discuss and attempt to resolve, the issue. The MNR District Manager will invite the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue and one or more members of the local citizens committee.<br><br>If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNR District Manager will ask each of the plan author, the concerned person(s) and the local citizens committee, to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNR District Manager. |
| **Step 7** Issue resolved | If the meeting resulted in a resolution on the issue, the resolution will be documented and included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan. |
| **Step 8** District Manager Decision | If the meeting did not provide a resolution or the meeting could not be arranged, the MNR District Manager will provide a written decision, with rationale, to the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the local citizens committee and the MNR Regional Director normally within 15 days.<br><br>The MNR District Manager's written decision will indicate that there is an opportunity for the concerned person(s) to request a review of his/her decision by the MNR Regional Director within 30 days (the actual date will be stated in the letter). |

3.4.1.3 MNR Regional Director Stage

The MNR Regional Director stage applies when:

(a) a concerned person(s) requests a review of the District Manager's decision;
(b) a new request that is received during the 30 days following the completion of the 60-day period for public review of the draft forest management plan (Phase I); or

(c) a new request that is received during the 30 days following the completion of the 30-day period for public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).

| | |
|---|---|
| **Step 9**<br>Request | The concerned person(s) will provide a written submission to the MNR Regional Director, and include a description of the issue and preferably a proposed solution. To facilitate the scheduling of a meeting, the concerned person(s) will also provide dates (within the next 15 days) and locations when he/she would be available for a meeting.<br><br>Upon receipt of the submission, other persons known to be directly affected by the issue will be notified by the MNR District Manager that a formal review of a specific decision in the draft forest management plan (Phase I), or the draft planned operations (Phase II), has been requested. |
| **Step 10**<br>Meeting | Normally within 15 days of receipt of the request for issue resolution, the MNR Regional Director will arrange and attend a meeting of the plan author, the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, and one or more members of the local citizens committee, in order to seek resolution of the issue.<br><br>If a meeting could not be arranged, the MNR Regional Director will ask each of the MNR District Manager, the plan author, the concerned person(s) and the local citizens committee, to provide their views and recommend a proposed solution, in writing, within a time period specified by the MNR Regional Director. |
| **Step 11**<br>Regional Director Decision | The MNR Regional Director will consider the results of the meeting and/or the written submissions, and produce a written decision on the issue, with reasons, normally within 15 days of the meeting. The MNR Regional Director will provide a copy of the written decision, with reasons, to the concerned person(s), other person(s) known to be directly affected by the issue, the plan author, the local citizens committee and the MNR District Manager.<br><br>The MNR Regional Director's written decision concerning a forest management plan, insect pest management program or major amendment will include a statement that if the concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the MNR Regional Director's decision, there is an opportunity to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities. The request must be made during the period for public inspection of the MNR-approved plan (Phase I), the MNR-approved planned operations (Phase II), the approved major amendment or approved insect pest management program. |

### 3.4.2 Process for Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

Any person may make a request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment under the *Environmental Assessment Act* of specific proposed forest management activities in a forest management plan. A request is normally made when a concerned person(s) is not satisfied with the outcome of the issue resolution process.

The process for a request for an individual environmental assessment applies to:

(a) the ten-year forest management plan (Phase I);
(b) the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).

The timeframe in which a request can be made is the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan (Phase I) or the MNR-approved operations for the second five-year term (Phase II).

For a request for an individual environmental assessment, to the ten-year forest management plan (Phase I), or the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II) the following process will apply:

1. At the commencement of public inspection of an MNR-approved forest management plan, or the MNR-approved operations for the second five-year term, there shall be a 30-day period for any person(s) to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the plan.

2. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment shall notify the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally have 15 days to respond to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment on the request.

3. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 45 days of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director may require MNR to submit additional necessary information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the documentation submitted by MNR.

4. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment has not decided on the request within 45 days of receipt of all necessary information, the Director shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe for a decision, to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager, the plan author and the person(s) requesting an individual environmental assessment.

5. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.

6. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Director does not require an individual environmental assessment, the Director shall give written notice to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager, the plan author and the person(s) requesting the individual environmental assessment that the request has been denied, with reasons.

7. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment, the Director shall give written notice to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager, the plan author and the person(s) requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and approval under the *Environmental Assessment Act*. The specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are the subject of the individual environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment. Where the Director has given written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are not the subject of the individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

# 4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

## 4.1 Introduction

For the purposes of this section, the reference to an Aboriginal community means an Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

This section describes the requirements for the involvement of Aboriginal communities, and consideration of their interests, in forest management planning.

This section describes the requirements to develop a consultation approach with each Aboriginal community. This section also describes consultation efforts that will be required if a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the agreed upon approach.

The MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community at least six months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the forest management plan to discuss the opportunities to be involved in the planning and implementation of the forest management plan.

The consideration of Aboriginal interests through the involvement of Aboriginal communities in forest management planning as described in this section is intended, in part, to assist the Crown in addressing obligations it may have under subsection 35(1) of the *Constitution Act, 1982*.

Additional requirements regarding the involvement of Pikangikum First Nation in forest management planning for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (A, Section 4.0) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

## 4.2 Planning Team

When appointing members to the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2), the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to offer an opportunity for a representative of the community to participate on the planning team.

The Aboriginal member(s) of the planning team will be reimbursed by the MNR for reasonable out-of-pocket expenses, and will be provided a reasonable per diem for attendance at planning team meetings.

If an Aboriginal community chooses not to participate on the planning team, and a consultation approach is developed for the community in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 4.4, the approach may describe how the community will interact with the planning team.

### 4.3 Local Citizens Committee

When reviewing the membership of the local citizens committee (Part A, Section 1.1.3), the MNR District Manager will invite each Aboriginal community to nominate a representative, and will consider the nominations when appointing a member or members to the local citizens committee.

### 4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning

A consultation approach will describe the involvement of the Aboriginal community, and the consideration of the community's interests, in the production and implementation of the forest management plan, and will provide a process for exchanging necessary information in a timely manner.

The MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community at least 6 months prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for the preparation of the forest management plan to invite the community to discuss the development of a consultation approach for forest management planning with the community (Part A, Section 1.1.9). The MNR District Manager will make ongoing reasonable efforts to engage each Aboriginal community in the development of an agreed upon consultation approach.

If a consultation approach is prepared, it will be developed jointly by representatives of the community, MNR representatives and the plan author. In the development of the approach, the Aboriginal community may choose to co-ordinate efforts with other Aboriginal communities, or seek advice from the applicable treaty organization. If the MNR District Manager and the Aboriginal community agree, an existing approach for consultation may be considered in the development of the consultation approach.

Normally, the consultation approach will be agreed upon by the community and MNR prior to the commencement of the formal public consultation process for a forest management plan (Phase I, Stage One). However, if a consultation approach is not agreed upon by the start of Stage One, the requirements described in Part A, Section 4.5 will apply until an agreed upon approach is developed.

The consultation approach for each community will normally address the community's involvement in the production of the forest management plan, the planning of operations for the second five-year term, contingency plans, amendments to forest management plans and contingency plans, annual work schedules and insect pest management programs. In the development of the consultation approach, the information and timing requirements of the formal public consultation process will be considered to ensure that the schedule for plan production and implementation is maintained.

The consultation approach will normally include requirements regarding notices, consultation forums, information availability, written responses to comments and submissions, and

opportunities to consult directly with representatives from the planning team and the local citizens committee. The consultation approach will normally also address:

(a) the primary contact person(s) for the community;
(b) the preferred language for correspondence and notices;
(c) specific information or summaries which require translation;
(d) contents and formats of notices;
(e) identification of local publications in the Aboriginal media which are used by the community;
(f) timing, notification, content and format of consultation forums such as community meetings or special information centres;
(g) involvement in the preparation and update of the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1), including the Aboriginal values map, and conditions on the public availability of Aboriginal values information;
(h) method and timing for review and comment on the Aboriginal Background Information Report;
(i) involvement in the planning of operations to protect Aboriginal values;
(j) involvement in the preparation and update of the Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3);
(k) method and timing for review and comment on the Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values; and
(l) the update of the consultation approach prior to the planning of operations for the second five-year term.

If MNR and the Aboriginal community agree, changes to the consultation approach may be made during the production and implementation of the forest management plan.

Before commencing the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to confirm the continued use of the consultation approach developed with the community. In those circumstances where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has not been developed, the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to invite the community to discuss the development of a consultation approach with the community. The MNR planning team member(s) assigned the role of Aboriginal liaison will follow up with each Aboriginal community within 15 days to confirm the approach or discuss changes to the approach, or to develop an approach.

If an agreed upon consultation approach is developed, the consultation approach will apply during the production and implementation of the forest management plan. If an agreed upon consultation approach has been developed, but the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the following requirements will apply:

(a) Part A, Section 4.5, for forest management plans;
(b) Part C, Section 6.0, for amendments to forest management plans, and contingency plans, and

(c) Part D, Section 8.0, for annual operations.

## 4.5 Proceeding Without an Agreed Upon Consultation Approach

If a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community is not agreed upon in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, or if an agreed upon consultation approach has been developed, but the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to section 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.

For each notice required for a forest management plan and the planning of operations for the second-five-year term, a direct written notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications in the Aboriginal media.

If a public information centre is scheduled, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.

### 4.5.1 Forest Management Plans

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

#### 4.5.1.1 Phase I Consultation

<u>Stage One – Invitation to Participate</u>

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.1, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) an invitation to participate in the review and update of the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1), and the community demographic profile (Part A, Section 4.6.2); and
(b) a request to advise MNR how the community wishes to participate in the review and update of the report.

Stage Two – Review of Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.2, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the draft Aboriginal Background Information Report and the community demographic profile, within a 30-day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(b) an invitation to participate in the planning of forest management operations to address identified Aboriginal values; and
(c) a request to advise MNR how the community wishes to participate in the planning of forest management operations to address identified Aboriginal values.

Stage Three – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.3, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the Aboriginal Background Information Report and the community demographic profile;
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part A, Section 4.6.3) within a 60-day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and
(c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the Aboriginal community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

Stage Four – Information Centre: Review of Draft Forest Management Plan

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.4, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values;

(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the draft forest management plan within a 60-day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and
(c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the Aboriginal community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

Stage Five – Inspection of MNR-Approved Forest Management Plan

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.3.5 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community.

4.5.1.2 Phase II Consultation

At the commencement of the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the MNR District Manager will contact each Aboriginal community to invite their participation in the review and update of the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report and the Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values.

Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.1, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report;
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the updated Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values within a 30-day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided); and
(c) the time and location of the special information centre, if requested by the Aboriginal community.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

Stage Two – Review of Draft Planned Operations

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.2, and modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) a request to inspect the final Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values; and
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to provide comments on the draft planned operations within a 30-day review period (to advise the community when comments are due, a specific date will be provided).

Stage Three – Inspection of MNR-Approved Planned Operations

The public notice requirements described in Part A, Section 3.3.4.3 will apply, with modifications that are specific for the Aboriginal community.

## 4.6 Documentation

During the preparation of a forest management plan, a number of documents related to Aboriginal involvement will be prepared. These documents include an Aboriginal Background Information Report, a Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values and a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement. MNR shall seek advice from each Aboriginal community regarding the public availability of Aboriginal values information in those documents.

### 4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report

MNR and representatives of participating Aboriginal communities will review and update the existing Aboriginal Background Information Report, or Native Background Information Report, if applicable, for the current approved forest management plan, to produce an Aboriginal Background Information Report as part of the management unit description (Part B, Section 2.3). The existing Aboriginal Background Information Report, or Native Background Information Report, if applicable, will be available at the commencement of formal public consultation (Phase I, Stage One) and a draft Aboriginal Background Information Report will be available at the time of public review of the proposed long-term management direction (Phase I, Stage Two).

The Aboriginal Background Information Report summarizes, for each Aboriginal community, past and current resource use and recent forest management-related concerns, and includes an Aboriginal values map. Specifically, the report will contain:

(a) a summary of the use of natural resources on the management unit by Aboriginal communities, in particular hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering;
(b) forest management-related problems and issues for those Aboriginal communities;
(c) an Aboriginal values map which identifies the locations* of natural resource features, land uses and values which are used by, or of importance to, those

Aboriginal communities. In particular, the following features, land uses and values will be mapped:

(i) areas of significance to local Aboriginal communities, such as areas used for traditional or recreational activities;

(ii) boundaries of trapline management areas of those Aboriginal communities (i.e., all registered trapline areas associated with individual Aboriginal communities);

(iii) Reserves and Aboriginal communities;

(iv) areas that have been identified as being required as Reserve lands or for economic or capital development projects of those Aboriginal communities;

(v) areas used by those Aboriginal communities for fuelwood or building materials;

(vi) sites of local archaeological, historical, religious, and cultural, significance to those Aboriginal communities, including Aboriginal cemeteries, spirit sites and burial sites; and

(vii) areas identified by Aboriginal communities during the archaeological predictive modelling process as having archaeological potential; and

(d) a summary of the involvement of Aboriginal communities in the preparation of the Aboriginal Background Information Report.

** Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information would not normally be shown on the Aboriginal values map(s).*

The report will be updated for use in the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.1.5).

### 4.6.2 Social and Economic Description

The social and economic description that will be prepared for the management unit, will include a demographic profile for each Aboriginal community in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11). The MNR planning team representative, who is the liaison with Aboriginal communities, will contact each Aboriginal community to invite the community to provide, verify and update information in the community demographic profile.

### 4.6.3 Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values

In the planning of operations in the forest management plan, the planning team, with the support of MNR, will produce a Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values. The Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values documents how Aboriginal interests, including values identified in the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1) which are affected by the proposed operations, have been addressed.

In the preparation of the forest management plan, a preliminary report will be available at the time of public review of the proposed operations for the first five-year term (Phase I, Stage Three), and will include:

(a) a summary of proposed operations, and a discussion of proposed primary and branch road corridors of interest to the Aboriginal community;
(b) the most current version of the values map(s) and the Aboriginal values map;
(c) a discussion of proposed operational prescriptions for specific areas of concern associated with identified Aboriginal values;
(d) a discussion of how local Aboriginal hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering activities have been addressed in the planning of forest operations; and
(e) a comment sheet, and the names of an Aboriginal community contact person and an MNR contact person.

The final report will be available at the time of public review of the draft Forest Management Plan (Phase I, Stage Four), and will include:

(a) the draft Forest Management Plan Summary;
(b) the updated current version of the values map(s) and the updated Aboriginal values map;
(c) a discussion of proposed primary branch road corridors of interest to the Aboriginal community;
(d) a discussion of the updated operational prescriptions for specific areas of concern associated with identified Aboriginal values; and
(e) an updated discussion of how local Aboriginal hunting, fishing, trapping and gathering activities have been addressed in the planning of forest operations.

In the planning of operations for the second five-year term, the report will be updated to address the proposed operations for the second five-year term. The updated Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be prepared and reviewed in accordance with the agreed upon consultation approach developed for each Aboriginal community.

During the preparation of an amendment to a forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), the Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be updated, if proposed forest operations in the amendment potentially affect Aboriginal interests.

For a contingency plan, the planning proposal will identify the requirements for the preparation and review of the Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values (Part C, Section 3.2).

### 4.6.4 Summary of Aboriginal Involvement

A Summary of Aboriginal Involvement in the production of the forest management plan will be prepared by the MNR planning team member assigned the role of Aboriginal liaison. The summary will include:

(a) a list of the Aboriginal communities, and the primary contact person for each community;
(b) a list of the communities' representatives on the planning team and local citizens committee;
(c) a summary of correspondence provided to each community;
(d) a summary of additional communication efforts with each community;
(e) a summary of comments or input received from each community, and planning team responses;
(f) a summary of participation at public information centres and special information centres for the community; and
(g) a summary of the implementation of the consultation approach for each Aboriginal community, where applicable.

For the production of the forest management plan, if Aboriginal communities agree, a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft forest management plan, and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved forest management plan. For the planning of operations for the second five-year term, if Aboriginal communities agree, a Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will be included in the supplementary documentation of the draft planned operations, and an updated summary will be included in the supplementary documentation of the approved operations.

A Summary of Aboriginal Involvement will also be prepared for Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of a minor and major amendment to a forest management plan or a contingency plan (Part C, Sections 7.2 and 7.3), preparation of a contingency plan (Part C, Section 7.4), and annual operations (Part D, Section 8.0).

1

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT ..... 6**
Phase-in Provisions ..... 6
**1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... 14**
**2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION ..... 15**
2.1 Forest Description ..... 15
2.1.1 Current Forest Condition ..... 15
2.1.2 Forest Classification ..... 15
2.1.2.1 Forest Units ..... 15
2.1.2.2 Forest Landscape Classes ..... 15
2.1.2.3 Management Zones ..... 16
2.1.2.4 Other Forest Classifications ..... 16
2.1.3 Forest Resources ..... 16
2.1.3.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk ..... 16
2.1.3.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories ..... 17
2.1.3.3 Natural Resource Features, Land Uses and Values ..... 17
2.2 Social and Economic Description ..... 18
2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context ..... 18
2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles ..... 19
2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest ..... 19
2.3 Aboriginal Background Information Report ..... 19
**3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION ..... 20**
3.1 Introduction ..... 20
3.2 Management Considerations ..... 20
3.3 Base Model ..... 20
3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits ..... 20
3.5 Objectives and Indicators ..... 20
3.6 Long-Term Management Direction ..... 21
3.6.1 Available Harvest Area ..... 22
3.6.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest ..... 22
3.6.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement ..... 23
3.6.4 Social and Economic Assessment ..... 23
**4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ..... 24**
4.1 Introduction ..... 24
4.2 Prescriptions for Operations ..... 24
4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ..... 24
4.2.1.1 Operational Prescription for Areas of Concern Information Products ..... 25
4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas ..... 25
4.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules ..... 25
4.2.2.2 Conditions on Regular Operations ..... 25
4.2.2.3 Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest ..... 26
Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest Information Products ..... 26
4.3 Harvest Operations ..... 26

4.3.1 Harvest Areas ....26
4.3.2 Surplus Harvest Area ....27
4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan ....27
4.3.4 Planned Clearcuts ....27
4.3.5 Harvest Volume ....27
4.3.6 Wood Utilization ....28
4.3.7 Salvage ....28
4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume ....28
4.3.9 Harvest Area Information Products ....29
4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations ....29
4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas ....29
4.4.2 Renewal Support ....30
4.4.3 Renewal and Tending Information Products ....30
4.5 Roads ....30
4.5.1 Primary and Branch Roads ....30
4.5.2 Operational Roads ....31
4.5.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads ....32
4.5.4 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads ....32
4.5.5 Existing Roads ....32
Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings ....33
4.5.5.1 Road Information Products ....33
4.5.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits ....34
Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits ....34
4.5.6.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products ....35
4.6 Expenditures ....35
4.7 Monitoring and Assessment ....35
4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections ....35
4.7.2 Exceptions ....36
4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration Success ....36
4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings ....36
4.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness ....37
4.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction ....37

**5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY ....38**

**6.0 DOCUMENTATION ....39**
6.1 Supplementary Documentation ....39
6.2 Other Documentation ....40

**7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY ....41**

**8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ....42**
8.1 Introduction ....47
8.2 Prescriptions for Operations ....47
8.2.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ....47
8.2.1.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern Information Products ....48
8.2.2 Operational Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas ....48
8.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules ....48
8.2.2.2 Conditions on Regular Operations ....48

8.2.2.3 Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest ..... 49
Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest Information Products ..... 49
8.3 Harvest Operations ..... 49
8.3.1 Harvest Areas ..... 49
8.3.2 Surplus Harvest Area ..... 50
8.3.3 Planned Clearcuts ..... 50
8.3.4 Harvest Volume ..... 50
8.3.5 Wood Utilization ..... 50
8.3.6 Salvage ..... 51
8.3.7 Contingency Area and Volume ..... 51
8.3.8 Harvest Area Information Products ..... 51
8.4 Renewal and Tending Operations ..... 52
8.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas ..... 52
8.4.2 Renewal Support ..... 52
8.4.3 Renewal and Tending Information Products ..... 53
8.5 Roads ..... 53
8.5.1 Primary and Branch Roads ..... 53
8.5.1.1 Operational Roads ..... 54
8.5.1.2 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads ..... 54
8.5.1.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads ..... 55
8.5.2 Existing Roads ..... 55
Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings ..... 56
8.5.3 Road Information Products ..... 56
8.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 57
Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 57
8.5.4.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products ..... 57
8.6 Expenditures ..... 58
8.7 Monitoring and Assessment ..... 58
8.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness ..... 58
8.9 Supplementary Documentation ..... 58
8.10 Other Documentation ..... 59
8.11 Planned Operations Summary ..... 59
**9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES ..... 61**

# LIST OF TABLES

**FMP-1: Management Unit Crown Land Summary ..... 62**
**FMP-2: Description of Forest Units ..... 64**
**FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit ..... 66**
**FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules ..... 68**
**FMP-5: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest ..... 70**
**FMP-6: Projected Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species ..... 72**
**FMP-7: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit ..... 74**
**FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group ..... 76**
**FMP-9: Assessment of Objective Achievement ..... 78**
**FMP-10: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ..... 80**
**FMP-11: Planned Harvest Area ..... 82**
**FMP-12: Planned Clearcuts > 260 Ha ..... 84**
**FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species (10-year) ..... 86**
**FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year) ..... 88**
**FMP-15: Planned Wood Utilization by Mill ..... 90**
**FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume ..... 92**
**FMP-17: Planned Renewal and Tending Operations ..... 94**
**FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management ..... 96**
**FMP-19: Road Crossings, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits in Areas of Concern ..... 98**
**FMP-20: Planned Expenditures ..... 100**
**FMP-21: Area Planned For Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year) ..... 102**

# LIST OF FIGURES

**Figure B-1A: Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 8**

**Figure B-1B: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page..... 9**

**Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions..... 10**

**Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors ..... 11**

**Figure B-4: Index to Environmental Assessment Components of the Forest Management Plan ..... 12**

**Figure B-5A: Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page.... 43**

**Figure B-5B: Phase II Planned Operations - Title and Certification Page ..... 44**

**Figure B-6: Phase II Planned Operations - List of Exceptions..... 45**

**Figure B-7: Phase II Planned Operations Contributors ..... 46**

# PART B - FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT

Part B of this manual describes the plan content requirements and a template for writing the forest management plan. A forest management plan is comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary documentation. Forest management plans will contain page numbers and line numbers.

During the preparation, review and approval of the forest management plan (Phase I), the documentation requirements of Part B will apply, with the exception of Section 8.0. During the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Phase II), the documentation requirements of Part B, Section 8.0 and 9.0 will apply.

**Phase-in Provisions**

Forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2010 will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of the FMPM (2004).

Forest management plans scheduled for renewal on April 1, 2011, will be prepared, to the extent reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part B of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Where the renewal of a forest management plan is rescheduled to April 1, 2012 due to a delay in its preparation, and the proposed long-term management direction for that forest management plan has been prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2004) and has been endorsed by the Regional Director prior to April 1, 2011, the forest management plan will be prepared, to the extent reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part B of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Subject to the foregoing phase-in provisions, forest management plans scheduled for renewal on or after April 1, 2012, will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Planned operations for the second five-year term of current plans will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part B of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

## PLAN CERTIFICATION AND APPROVAL PAGE

The Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-1A) will be located at the front of each draft and approved forest management plan. The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final forest management plan. For plans prepared by an organization other than MNR, the senior company official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The final plan approval page will also be signed by the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for

signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted forest management plans. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of a forest management plan, those people will certify the parts of the plan that they prepared, and that they have prepared those parts of the plan in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-1B.

A list of exceptions (Figure B-2) will follow the title and certification page. The list of forest management plan contributors (Figure B-3) will follow the list of exceptions.

**Figure B-1A: Forest Management Plan – Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

I hereby certify that I have prepared this forest management plan, including the silvicultural ground rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement with the assistance of an interdisciplinary planning team in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and Forest Information Manual.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| [R.P.F. seal] | _____<br>[Plan Author] | _____<br>[date] |
| Submitted by:<br>(where applicable) | _____<br>[Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR] | _____<br>[date] |

I recommend that this forest management plan be approved for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that the forest management plan has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this forest management plan, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

| | |
|---|---|
| _____<br>[MNR District Manager] | _____<br>[date] |

Approved by:

| | |
|---|---|
| _____<br>[MNR Regional Director] | _____<br>[date] |

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: _____

**Figure B-1B: Forest Management Plan - Title and Certification Page**

For Sections of the Forest Management Plan not Prepared by the Plan Author

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the forest management plan as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual.*

| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |

**Figure B-2: Forest Management Plan - List of Exceptions**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific section of the forest management plan that provides documentation of the exception is also referenced in this list.

| Description of Exception | Specific Section of Plan |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

**Figure B-3: Forest Management Plan Contributors**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

_____ _____
Plan Author

_____ _____

_____ _____

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

_____ _____

_____ _____

LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE MEMBERS

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

*A brief statement which reports on the local citizens committee's agreement or disagreement with the forest management plan (final plan only):*

_____
_____
_____

PLAN REVIEWERS

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

The table of contents will follow the list of forest management plan contributors. It will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

# INDEX TO THE ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT COMPONENTS OF THE FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

The index to the environmental assessment components of the forest management plan (Figure B-4) will be located in the forest management plan, on a separate page immediately following the Table of Contents. The page numbers of the forest management plan that address each of the environmental assessment components will be listed in the third column.

**Figure B-4: Index to Environmental Assessment Components of the Forest Management Plan**

| Environmental Assessment Component | Section of Forest Management Plan | Section Number |
|---|---|---|
| Background Information | Management Unit Description (Part B, Section 2.0)<br>▪ values map<br>▪ information on other forest resources<br>▪ Forest Resource Inventory update sources<br>Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):<br>▪ Aboriginal Background Information Report | |
| Description of the Environment Affected | Management Unit Description (Part B, Section 2.0)<br>▪ values map<br>▪ information on other forest resources<br>▪ Forest Resource Inventory update sources<br>Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3)<br>▪ digital stand list<br>Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4)<br>Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)<br>Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):<br>▪ Aboriginal Background Information Report | |
| Description of the Selection of Operations and the Alternatives which were Considered | Long-Term Management Direction (Part B, Section 3.0)<br>Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3)<br>▪ digital stand list<br>Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4)<br>Prescriptions for Operations (Part B, Section 4.2)<br>Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)<br>Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):<br>▪ analysis package<br>▪ road planning<br>▪ area of concern planning | |

| Environmental Assessment Component | Section of Forest Management Plan | Section Number |
|---|---|---|
| Description of the Proposed Activities | Harvest Operations (Part B, Section 4.3)<br>▪ digital stand list<br>Renewal and Tending Operations (Part B, Section 4.4)<br>Prescriptions for Operations (Part B, Section 4.2)<br>Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)<br>Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):<br>▪ road planning<br>▪ area of concern planning | |
| Description of the Expected Effects on the Environment and Proposed Mitigation Measures | Long-Term Management Direction (Part B, Section 3.0)<br>Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern (Part B, Section 4.2.1)<br>Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)<br>Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):<br>▪ road planning<br>▪ area of concern planning | |
| Description of Proposed Monitoring | Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas (Part B, Section 4.2.2)<br>Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern (Part B, Section 4.2.1)<br>Roads (Part B, Section 4.5)<br>Monitoring and Assessment (Part B, Section 4.7)<br>Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):<br>▪ monitoring programs<br>▪ road planning<br>▪ area of concern planning | |
| Description of Public Consultation and A Summary of the Results | Supplementary Documentation (Part B, Section 6.1):<br>▪ public consultation summary<br>▪ report of the local citizens committee<br>▪ issues addressed<br>▪ required alterations from draft plan review | |
| Any Other Environmental Assessment Matters | | |

# 1.0 INTRODUCTION

The introduction will describe the purpose of the plan and set the context for the plan locally, regionally and provincially.

The plan text will describe the management responsibilities for the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.1.1). It will include responsibilities of MNR, the sustainable forest licensee, and other forest companies which operate on the management unit, and any management implications of these responsibilities and arrangements.

The date that the present management unit boundaries were established and a description of any boundary changes since the last plan was prepared will be documented.

The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the planning team terms of reference.

The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains a brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the plan in the form of the SEV consideration document.

# 2.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT DESCRIPTION

## 2.1 Forest Description

### 2.1.1 Current Forest Condition

The plan text will describe the Crown forest and patent land crown timber, as described in the planning inventory, and discuss the implications of patent land crown timber and land type (e.g., large areas of non-productive forest within the management unit) on the development of the forest management plan. A summary of the land types for the management unit will be provided in FMP-1, which summarizes the status of the Crown forest and patent land Crown timber at the beginning of the period of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2.2). The plan text will reference FMP-1. The plan text will also discuss the implications of patent land within the management unit on the development of the forest management plan. The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the analysis package that documents the development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted.

### 2.1.2 Forest Classification

#### 2.1.2.1 Forest Units

The plan text will describe the forest units used in the forest management plan and how they correspond to the regional forest units (Part A, Section 1.2.2.1). The forest units for the management unit will be identified in FMP-2. The plan text will reference FMP-2.

A summary of the managed Crown productive forest land area of the management unit by forest unit and age class will be provided in FMP-3. The production forest area that is available for timber production, and the production forest area that is, or is expected to be, unavailable will be identified separately. The plan text will contain the reasons that production forest area is unavailable for timber production. The plan text will describe the management implications of the plan start area by forest unit and age class, on the development of the forest management plan.

#### 2.1.2.2 Forest Landscape Classes

The plan text will describe the forest landscape classes and the plan start forest composition, structure and pattern (e.g. figures and/or graphs) at the landscape level (Part A, Section 1.2.2.3). The forest landscape pattern will be portrayed. The text will reference the information product (e.g. map). The plan text will describe the management implications of the plan start forest landscape pattern on the development of the forest management plan.

#### 2.1.2.3 Management Zones

The plan text will describe each management zone (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) (if applicable) including:

(a) the type of the management zone (i.e., strategic or operational); and
(b) the intent of the management zone

Management zones will be portrayed.

#### 2.1.2.4 Other Forest Classifications

The plan text will describe the other forest classifications (e.g. habitat for wildlife species) used in the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.2.2.4). The plan text will also describe any management implications concerning the other forest classifications on the development of the forest management plan.

Where applicable, a summary of the habitat for selected species on the management unit will be provided in FMP-6. The plan text will reference FMP-6.

Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of selected species will be included. The text will reference the information product (e.g. map).

The plan text will describe the management implications of the plan start habitat on the development of the forest management plan.

### 2.1.3 Forest Resources

#### 2.1.3.1 Inventories and Information for Species at Risk

Forest dependent species at risk (special concern, threatened or endangered) on the management unit will be identified. If applicable, the plan text will describe classifications used to identify habitat for forest dependent species at risk. The contribution and importance of the management unit in supporting these classified forest dependent species of flora, fish and wildlife will be described. Species for which the contribution to preferred habitat, on a regional basis, is lower than expected will be specifically identified. Where other resource management plans (e.g. recovery strategies and management plans for species at risk) or inventories for these species provide information on the extent and quality of the habitat, and population status, relevant to the management unit, the information will be described. The degree to which the quality or quantity of habitat for species at risk could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

A summary of the habitat for wildlife species at risk on the management unit will be provided in FMP-6. The plan text will reference FMP-6.

Where applicable, information products showing the spatial arrangement of habitats of species at risk will be included. The text will reference the information product (e.g. map).

The plan text will describe the implications of species at risk species on the development of the forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.1.8.7).

2.1.3.2 Fish and Wildlife Inventories

The plan text will describe the other (not species at risk or selected species) fish and wildlife resources on the management unit, including a summary of available information on the occurrence of fish and wildlife species based on fish and wildlife inventory and habitat information (Part A, Section 1.1.8.6). The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources could be affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The plan text will describe the implications of the fish and wildlife resources on the development of the forest management plan.

2.1.3.3 Natural Resource Features, Land Uses and Values

The plan text will identify and briefly describe the information portrayed on the values maps (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and how it was used in the preparation of the forest management plan. The text will include a list of sources of the information on the values map(s) or otherwise available in the values database and identification of those subjects for which data is recognized as being incomplete or missing.

The plan text will also describe the management implications of natural resource features, land uses and values, on the development of the forest management plan. The values maps will be included in the plan. The text will describe how the information is organized on the values maps (e.g., one map, series of maps).

For resource-based tourism values and old growth red and white pine forest communities, the plan text will provide a brief description of the information portrayed on the values maps. Not all old growth red and white pine forest communities will be managed for old growth values. An explanation of the reasons why any such community will not be managed for old growth values will be provided in the text of the plan.

The plan text will describe the land uses on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.8) and their implications on the forest management plan. The land uses include:

(a) resource-based tourism areas;
(b) mineral, aggregate and quarry areas;
(c) crown land recreation and cottaging;
(d) trapping (commercial fur); and
(e) private land.

The plan text will describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, national parks and forest reserves within the boundary of the management unit that contribute to the achievement of management objectives. This description will include a list of national and provincial parks, conservation reserves, forest reserves, and the management emphasis for each protected area and the class of provincial park. In addition, the plan text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within or in the vicinity of these areas.

The plan text will also describe any other land use policy areas that are documented in the Crown Land Use Policy Atlas, such as enhanced management areas, that may have implications for forest management activities on the management unit. The plan text will describe any management implications associated with the planning of operations within these areas.

The plan text will describe other uncommon or notable natural resource features (e.g., significant old growth stands, large wetland complexes) which occur on the management unit. The degree to which the quality or quantity of these resources have been, or could be, affected by forest management operations will be discussed.

The plan text will describe the access condition on the management unit (Part A, Section 1.1.8.10). For example, the text will describe areas that are currently accessed, roadless areas and areas where land use decisions have restricted access. The plan text will describe the implications of the plan start access condition on the development of the forest management plan.

The plan text will include a statement confirming the commitment of part of the forest management plan to maintain the viability of the tourism industry by protecting tourism values in the forest management planning process through the application of the Management Guidelines for Forestry and Resource-Based Tourism and the use of RSA's as one method of protecting and sustaining these values.

## 2.2 Social and Economic Description

### 2.2.1 Overview of Social and Economic Context

The plan text will list communities that receive substantial amounts of timber, chips or other forest resources from the management unit, communities that have substantial employment related to the forest industry and Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by forest management activities.

### 2.2.2 Summary of Demographic Profiles

The standardized demographic profiles for those communities identified in Part B, Section 2.2.1 will be summarized in the text. The summary will include:

(a) population trends for each community;
(b) community diversity for each community;
(c) household income for each community; and
(d) employment by industry for each community.

The summary will describe the importance of the forest to individual communities. The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete profiles.

### 2.2.3 Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

The plan text will include a summary of the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest organized by sector. The sectors include:

(a) timber;
(b) recreation and tourism;
(c) mining, aggregate and hydro generation; and
(d) any others.

The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete description of industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest.

## 2.3 Aboriginal Background Information Report

If agreed to by the Aboriginal community, the Aboriginal Background Information Report will be included in the plan as follows. The plan text will summarize the use of the lands, and natural resources on the management unit by Aboriginal communities and forest management-related opportunities, problems, and issues for those communities. The Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1) will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan. The text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the complete report.

# 3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION

## 3.1 Introduction

The plan text will outline the components of the long-term management direction.

Additional documentation requirements associated with the long-term management direction for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (B, Section 3.0) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

## 3.2 Management Considerations

The plan text will describe the management considerations and how these considerations affected the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.3).

The plan text will summarize the information used to identify the management considerations, the sources of the information and how the information was used to confirm or change past management direction.

## 3.3 Base Model

The plan text will identify that the assumptions used to develop the base model inventory and base model related to the land base, forest dynamics (forest succession, growth and yield), available silvicultural options, biological limits, and other model assumptions identified by the planning team are included in the analysis package. The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the details of the development of the base model inventory and the base model.

## 3.4 Desired Forest and Benefits

The plan text will describe the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting. The plan text will include a discussion of how the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1) influenced the development of objectives, indicators and desired levels for the management unit. The summary of public consultation will summarize participation in the desired forest and benefits meeting.

## 3.5 Objectives and Indicators

The plan text will describe the management objectives, indicators and the time when each indicator is to be assessed. The plan text will document the desirable levels and targets for each indicator. The management objectives, indicators desirable levels and targets, and the

timing of assessment are summarized in FMP-9. The plan text will reference FMP-9. Where objectives relating to the management of forest cover have been established in other plans or policies, the specific plan or policy which is the source of those existing objectives will be stated in the text and the geographic area(s) that applies to those objectives will be identified.

The plan text will also document how desirable levels and targets were established, in consideration of background information, including direction in relevant forest management guides (Part A, Section 1.1.8.3), the results of the desired forest and benefits meeting, and the results of scoping analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1). The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package with the inputs, results and conclusions for the development of management objectives and scoping investigations.

## 3.6 Long-Term Management Direction

The plan text will describe the strategic modelling (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) conducted to determine the types and levels of activities (access, harvest, renewal and tending) required to manage forest cover to balance the achievement of management objectives. The types and levels of activities required to manage forest cover in balancing the achievement of management objectives investigated during the development of the long-term management direction, will be described. The plan text will reference the section of the analysis package that provides the details of the development of the long-term management direction.

The plan text will contain a description of the projected forest condition from the strategic modelling. The applicable 100-year projections for quantifiable objectives will be documented in the plan. The projections in the plan include:

(a) forest condition for the Crown productive forest (FMP-5);
(b) habitat for species at risk and selected wildlife species (FMP-6);
(c) available harvest area by forest unit (FMP-7); and
(d) available harvest volume by species group (FMP-8).

The plan text will describe the change in forest condition from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change in area of each forest unit (FMP-5). The projected area of each forest unit (FMP-5) will be portrayed graphically in the plan. The plan text will reference FMP-5.

The plan text will describe the change in habitat for species at risk and selected wildlife species from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change (FMP-6). The projected area of habitat for species at risk and selected wildlife species (FMP-6) will be portrayed graphically in the plan. The plan text will reference FMP-6.

The plan text will describe the change in available harvest volume from plan start through the 100-year projections, and any implications of the projected change (FMP-8). The plan text will reference FMP-8. The projected level of available harvest volume (FMP-8) will be portrayed graphically in the plan.

The volume graph will also present:

(a) projections from the previous forest management plans;
(b) historic wood utilization; and
(c) Ontario Forest Accord Advisory Board benchmark harvest levels, as identified in the *Regional Wood Supply Strategies.*

The outputs of forest modelling will be submitted with the forest management plan in digital form. The decisions made in the development of the strategic model will be documented in the analysis package. The text will reference the sections of the analysis package which contain the decisions made.

The requirements for the information in the analysis package are described in Appendix II.

### 3.6.1 Available Harvest Area

The plan text will describe the levels of available harvest area for each forest unit and discuss any associated management implications (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) (FMP-7) and will reference FMP-7. The plan text will also describe the trends in available harvest area from previous plans, the current plan, and projected available harvest area (FMP-7), and the implications of the projected change. The plan text will reference FMP-7. The projected level of available harvest area (FMP-7) will be portrayed graphically in the plan.

### 3.6.2 Selection of Areas for Harvest

The plan text will contain a description of the criteria used for the identification of areas eligible for harvest and the selection of areas for harvest, for the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). Areas selected for harvest for the ten-year period will not exceed the available harvest area by forest unit. The text will document how the criteria reflect upon the strategic modelling, and discuss the relative importance of each criterion and its role in selecting the areas for harvest. The rationale for the selected harvest areas for the ten-year period, and for each five-year term, will be documented in the plan text.

If planned harvest areas do not closely match projections of forest operations in the long-term management direction, in terms of management zone (if applicable), age class and/or stage of management, the rationale will be documented in the plan text.

The planned harvest areas for the ten-year period and the optional harvest areas will be identified.

The plan text will include a discussion describing how MNR's forest management guide(s) relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns, was considered during the selection of areas for harvest operations. The text will describe how the areas selected for harvest contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern. Rationale for

harvest areas selected for the ten-year period that do not contribute to the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern will be provided.

The plan text will describe any factors which limited the selection of areas for harvest, such as unresolved issues over forest resource use, habitat for species at risk, and the effects of these limitations on the achievement of forest management objectives.

The text will document input from the public and Aboriginal communities that influenced the selection of areas for harvest.

### 3.6.3 Assessment of Objective Achievement

For each management objectives and indicators, scheduled for assessment during the preparation and approval of the forest management plan (FMP-9), the plan text will document the results of the assessment of objective achievement (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The levels of objective achievement and their relationship to desirable levels and targets, including any differences, will also be documented. If the level of objective achievement is outside of the desirable level for an objective, rationale will be provided. The results of analysis to investigate the balancing of objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) will be described in the text. A summary of the projected objective achievement, desirable levels and targets in the long-term management direction will be recorded in FMP-9. The plan text will reference FMP-9.

The plan text will document assessment of objectives associated with species at risk and describe how the achievement levels meet the objectives.

The plan text will describe how objectives and indicators to be assessed during plan implementation will be assessed. The plan text will also describe how scheduled forest management activities related to these objectives and indicators will contribute to overall objective achievement.

### 3.6.4 Social and Economic Assessment

The plan text will describe the expected social and economic impacts of implementing the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The plan text will also describe how the quantity of timber supplied to the wood-processing facilities, and the silvicultural investment requirements, may affect the communities identified in the social and economic description (Part B, Section 2.2).

# 4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS

## 4.1 Introduction

The plan text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The text will describe the areas planned for operations for the first five-year term (Part A, Section 1.3.3) and will describe the areas planned for operations for the second five-year term. If detailed planning of operations was conducted for the second five-year term, the text will note that these areas will be reviewed, updated as required, and approved for operations during Phase II planning.

Additional documentation requirements for the Whitefeather Forest concerning the planned operations are described in Part F (B, Section 4.0) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

## 4.2 Prescriptions for Operations

### 4.2.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

The operational prescriptions for all areas of concern within the areas of operations, which were developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, will be documented in FMP-10. The plan text will reference FMP-10 and describe the contents of the table.

For areas of concern prescriptions that required the completion of supplementary documentation, the text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the additional information, including comments from the public and Aboriginal communities. Any objections to an operational prescription for an area of concern as a result of public or Aboriginal community comment will be recorded in the supplementary documentation. The responses to those objections will also be documented on the supplementary documentation. The format for the supplementary documentation is prescribed in Appendix VI.

Any operational prescription for an area of concern that differs from the specific direction or recommendation (standards or guidelines) in a forest management guide will be identified in FMP-10 as an exception. The exceptions monitoring program (Part B, Section 4.7.2) will describe the methods which will be used to monitor the effectiveness of the operational prescription. The exception monitoring program will also be identified in the supplementary documentation (Appendix VI). The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNR District Manager's certification and recommendation of the forest management plan for approval (Figure B-2).

#### 4.2.1.1 Operational Prescription for Areas of Concern Information Products

The information product associated with operational prescriptions for areas of concern will identify:

(a) the area of concern identifier; and
(b) the area of concern type.

For candidate bridging areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) and second-pass harvest areas (Part A, Section 1.3.4.2), the operational prescriptions for areas of concern from the current approved forest management plan may be used, and will be documented in FMP-10, and identified in the information product. If desired, operational prescriptions for areas of concern from the new forest management plan may be used for candidate bridging areas and second-pass harvest areas and will be documented in FMP-10, and identified in the information product.

### 4.2.2 Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

#### 4.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules

Silvicultural ground rules, which were developed for all forest units - ecosite combinations on the management unit, are documented in FMP-4 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

The plan text will contain a statement that the prescriptions for harvest, renewal and tending presented in FMP-4 will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally depleted areas that are salvaged, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

The plan text will describe the silvicultural ground rules which will most commonly be used to regenerate each forest unit. The plan text will state that the most common treatment package(s) in each silvicultural ground rule will be the most likely treatment. The plan text will also contain a statement that this information represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of plan preparation, and will not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules at the time of implementation of operations. If a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide is included in a silvicultural ground rule, that treatment will be recorded as an exception in FMP-4. The rationale for that exception will be provided. The plan text will reference the monitoring program that describes the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 4.7.2).

The plan text will state that the information products for harvest, renewal and tending operations will serve as the stand list.

#### 4.2.2.2 Conditions on Regular Operations

Where a condition on regular operations has been developed through application of MNR's forest management guides relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales,

these conditions will be documented in the forest management plan. Where conditions on regular operations apply to a specific management zone, the text will identify the management zone and where it is portrayed.

#### 4.2.2.3 Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest

The plan text will describe any silvicultural treatments of special public interest (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2).

<u>Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest Information Products</u>

Information products associated with silvicultural treatments of special public interest will identify:

(a) candidate high complexity prescribed burns;
(b) areas proposed for aerial application of herbicides;
(c) if applicable, areas which have been identified as eligible for insect pest management, and areas proposed for aerial application of insecticides, as a result of an insect pest management program; and
(d) areas available for fuelwood.

## 4.3 Harvest Operations

### 4.3.1 Harvest Areas

The areas planned for harvest operations for the ten-year period (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1) are described in Part B, Section 3.6.2. The ten-year area is the planned harvest area. The available harvest area and the planned harvest area for the ten-year period, and the planned harvest area for the appropriate five-year term, will be described in the text and recorded in FMP-11. The plan text will reference FMP-11. The plan text will describe the areas planned for harvest operations for the first five-year term, and the second five-year term (Part A, Section 1.3.3.1). The plan text will describe the distribution of harvest areas between the two five-year terms. If the planned harvest area for the first five-year term substantially exceeds one-half of the available harvest area by forest unit, rationale will be provided in the text. If applicable, the plan text will describe the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee and record it in FMP-14. The plan text will reference FMP-14.

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silviculture system, the required area of stand level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNR's applicable forest management guides. The required area of stand level residual will be identified and portrayed. Rationale will be provided in the text of the plan for harvest areas that do not follow the residual stand structure requirements of the applicable forest management guides.

If area is identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D, Section 6.0), the area planned for harvest will be documented in the plan text. The plan text will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

### 4.3.2 Surplus Harvest Area

The requirements for the planning of surplus harvest areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. Any areas within the planned harvest areas, which are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit, will be identified as surplus harvest area. The plan text will document the total area and volume for the surplus harvest area. Any factors which limit the utilization of the surplus harvest area (e.g., lack of markets, access) will be explained in the plan text. Anticipated effects on the achievement of management objectives and progress toward the desired forest condition, if the surplus harvest area is not harvested, will be documented in the text.

### 4.3.3 Completion of On-going Harvest Operations from Previous Plan

The requirements for the planning of bridging operations and second-pass harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.4. The plan text will contain a description of the area of bridging operations, by forest unit. The text will also include an acknowledgement that the bridging operations are limited to three months of harvest area, and harvest of bridging area must be completed by March 31, of the first year of the forest management plan.

The plan text will contain a description of any second-pass harvest areas, including an estimate of the area and volume associated with those areas. Any restrictions on the timing and extent of these operations will be documented in the text.

### 4.3.4 Planned Clearcuts

The requirements for the planning of clearcuts are described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2. The planned clearcuts that exceeds 260 hectares will be identified in FMP-12. The plan text will reference FMP-12 and describe the contents of the table. The silvicultural and/or biological rationale will be provided in the plan text. The maximum and average size of planned clearcuts will also be documented in the plan text.

### 4.3.5 Harvest Volume

The available harvest volume, and an estimate of the planned net merchantable volume, and undersized and defect that may be available for bioproducts for the planned harvest area, for the ten-year period, will be recorded in FMP-13. The method used to estimate the volume for the planned harvest area will be described in the plan text. If there are any substantial

differences between the available harvest volume and the planned harvest volume, by conifer and hardwood subtotals, an explanation will be provided in the text.

### 4.3.6 Wood Utilization

The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization, by volume type, product (including bio-products) and species, for each mill reliant on wood supply from the management unit (FMP-14). The harvest volume for the planned harvest area will be recorded by utilization, volume type (i.e., net merchantable, and undersized and defect), product and species in FMP-14. Upon request by an overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. The text will also include a discussion of the sources of, and reasons for, unutilized volumes. Anticipated effects on the achievement of management objectives and progress toward the desired forest condition, if the available volumes are not utilized, will be documented in the text. The plan text will reference FMP-14.

The planned harvest volume and the planned harvest volume for each mill which relies on wood supply from the management unit will be recorded, by species and product, in FMP-15. The plan text will include a discussion of whether or not the MNR wood supply commitment levels were achieved and the implications. The plan text will reference FMP-15.

If unutilized volume is available for fuelwood, the fuelwood areas will be included in the harvest area information products.

The plan text will include a statement that the approval of the forest management plan is not an agreement to make areas available for harvest to a particular licensee, or an agreement to supply wood to a particular mill.

### 4.3.7 Salvage

The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. The plan text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of salvage harvest operations. The salvage harvest area and volume will be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees in tables similar to FMP-14. Areas of salvage harvest will be included in the harvest area information products. The plan text will reference FMP-14.

### 4.3.8 Contingency Area and Volume

The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.2. The plan text will briefly describe the purpose and function of contingency area for harvest operations and how these areas were identified. The contingency area and an estimate of the volume will be recorded in FMP-16. The plan text will reference FMP-16.

The contingency area will be included in the harvest area information products.

#### 4.3.9 Harvest Area Information Products

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will identify:

(a) the silvicultural system;
(b) the harvest category (e.g. regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);
(c) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(d) the silvicultural ground rule;
(e) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained;
(f) planned clearcuts greater than 260 ha; and
(g) if applicable, stand level residual requirements.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will portray:

(a) the silvicultural system;
(b) the harvest category (e.g. regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);
(c) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(d) the silvicultural ground rule;
(e) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained;
(f) planned clearcuts greater than 260 ha; and
(g) if applicable, the stand level residual requirements.

## 4.4 Renewal and Tending Operations

#### 4.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas

The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.3. The planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with harvest and natural disturbance will be summarized by treatment in FMP-17. The plan text will reference FMP-17.

The plan text will include a discussion of how the analysis of renewal and tending requirements (Part E, Section 4.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the planned types and levels of renewal and tending operations. The plan text will also describe the planned levels of renewal and tending activities and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the forest management plan. The plan text will describe supplemental treatments or retreatments, if applicable.

For areas managed using the clearcut silvicultural system, harvest may be planned in two passes. The plan text will describe how area planned to be harvested in two passes will achieve the silvicultural objectives in the long-term management direction.

The plan text will describe planned silvicultural treatments of special public interest.

#### 4.4.2 Renewal Support

The sustainable forest licensee's program for the collection of seed and the production of nursery stock, during the first five-year term will be described in the plan text. A forecast of the volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by species), for the first five-year term will also be documented in the plan text.

Tree improvement activities scheduled during the first five-year term to support the production of improved seed will be described in the plan text, with reference to existing seed orchards and tree improvement strategies. The locations of tree improvement activities will be portrayed.

#### 4.4.3 Renewal and Tending Information Products

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance will identify:

(a) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(b) the applicable silvicultural ground rules;
(c) the tree improvement activity; and
(d) silvicultural treatments of special public interest

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance will portray:

(a) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(b) the applicable silvicultural ground rules;
(c) the tree improvement activity; and
(d) silvicultural treatments of special public interest

### 4.5 Roads

#### 4.5.1 Primary and Branch Roads

A summary of primary and branch road construction will be documented in the plan text. Documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor and associated use management

strategy, and the rationale for each new branch road corridor and associated use management strategy, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix V). The plan text will reference the supplemental documentation (Appendix V).

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the plan text.

The plan text will identify primary and branch roads that will have access restriction and/or road transfer implemented during the first five-year term. If a use management strategy restricts public access, the plan text will reference the supplementary documentation that contains the rationale for the restriction (Appendix V).

Each planned new primary and branch road and the use management strategy for the road will be recorded in FMP-18. The length of road to be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and the length of road to be constructed during the first five-year term of the forest management plan, will also be recorded in FMP-18. The plan text will reference FMP-18.

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, any conditions on the primary road, branch road or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

### 4.5.2 Operational Roads

A summary of operational road construction will be documented in the plan text. The plan text will contain a statement that operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often decommissioned. Each operational road boundary within which an operational road will be constructed and the associated use management strategy for the road(s) will be recorded in FMP-18. The plan text will reference FMP-18. Documentation of the use management strategy for each operational road or networks of operational roads will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix V). If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will also be provided in the supplementary documentation (Appendix V). The plan text will reference the appropriate sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the plan text.

Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in the forest management plan.

### 4.5.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

The plan text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on a primary road or branch road crossing of an area of concern, or landing within an area of concern. For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary and branch road corridor, the conditions on construction and acceptable variations to the locations and conditions will be documented in FMP-19 and portrayed. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-19. Documentation of the analysis, including public comments and identification of the map which portrays the 100 metre wide crossing location will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix VI). The plan text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that contains the documentation.

The plan text will also include a statement that the 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction in the forest management plan for area of concern crossings are preliminary locations and conditions. The statement will indicate the locations and conditions will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the acceptable variations described in the forest management plan.

### 4.5.4 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads

The plan text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on an operational road crossing of an area of concern or landing within an area of concern. For operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the location(s) or construction of the crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern, will be documented in FMP-19. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-19. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of public comments will be noted in FMP-19 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix VI). The plan text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that contains the documentation.

The plan text will also include a statement that the road locations and conditions on construction will be identified in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the conditions described in the forest management plan.

### 4.5.5 Existing Roads

Each existing road or road network that is the responsibility of the licensee, and the associated use management strategy, will be documented in FMP-18. Documentation of new or revised use management strategies, and the rationale, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix V).

Where the sustainable forest licensee has indicated intent to transfer responsibility for an existing road during the next 20 years (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7), a preliminary indication of the management intent for the road or road network will be documented in FMP-18. If the sustainable forest licensee plans to transfer the road during this five-year term, the activities required prior to transfer, including potential removal of water crossings will be documented in FMP-18.

The plan text will reference that information on existing road use management strategies including road transfer and decommissioning are in FMP-18.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes which traverses a provincial park or conservation reserve will be upgraded, the rationale will be provided in the plan text. The rationale is not required for roads in Algonquin Park.

Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the forest management plan, and the road and/or landing intersects an areas of concern for a value, FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on the road and/or landing. The appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in FMP-19.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the forest management plan, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

4.5.5.1 Road Information Products

For roads that are the responsibility of the sustainable forest licensee, information products associated with road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will identify:

(a) the corridors for primary roads (20 years);
(b) the corridors for primary and branch roads planned for construction (10 years);
(c) the corridors for primary and branch roads planned for construction (5 years);
(d) the operational road boundaries (5 years);
(e) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
(f) the 100 metre wide crossing of each area of concern;
(g) the acceptable alternative locations or location restrictions for each crossing of an area of concern;
(h) the roads that will be maintained;

(i) the roads and associated water crossings that will be monitored;
(j) the segments of roads that will have access controls implemented, and the type of access control activities; and
(k) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned, and the type of decommissioning activities.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will portray:

(a) the corridors for primary roads (20 years);
(b) the corridors for primary and branch roads (10 year and this term);
(c) the operational road boundaries (5 years);
(d) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
(e) the 100 metre wide crossing of each area of concern;
(f) the segments of roads that will have access controls implemented; and
(g) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned.

### 4.5.6 Forestry Aggregate Pits

The plan text will include a statement that the criteria for a Forestry Aggregate Pit apply as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

The operational standards for the extraction of aggregate resources for Forestry Aggregate Pits, as described in Appendix VII, will be documented in the forest management plan.

Aggregate extraction areas will be identified in the forest management plan as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

<u>Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits</u>

The appropriate conditions on operations for Forestry Aggregate Pits, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in the forest management plan.

If a Forestry Aggregate Pit intersects an area of concern, FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on operations. The appropriate conditions on operations, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in FMP-19.

All existing Forestry Aggregate Pits will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.3.4).

#### 4.5.6.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products

Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will identify:

(a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and
(b) the areas of concern.

Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will portray:

(a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and
(b) the areas of concern

## 4.6 Expenditures

The plan text will identify the projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, and renewal support, and discuss the associated implications (Part A, Section 1.3.7). Rationale will be provided for the assumptions and ratios used to calculate expenditures associated with the implementation of renewal and tending operations.

The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source will be summarized in FMP-20. The plan text will reference FMP-20.

## 4.7 Monitoring and Assessment

### 4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

The sustainable forest licensee's ten-year compliance strategy will be developed in accordance with the requirements of MNR's Forest Compliance Handbook. The handbook describes the forest operations inspection process, the requirement for the sustainable forest licensee to produce inspection reports and the processes for managing operational issues that may be identified through compliance inspections. The ten-year compliance strategy will describe the methods, intensity and frequency of forest operations inspections, particular circumstances for which the sustainable forest licensee will conduct forest operations inspections (e.g. forest operations in, and adjacent to, areas of concern), and the submission of inspection reports to MNR. The ten-year compliance strategy will be included in the plan text.

The plan text will describe the MNR district program for auditing forest operations and conducting forest operations inspections. The plan text will also describe how compliance performance on the forest will be communicated to the local citizens committee for their review.

### 4.7.2 Exceptions

The plan text will summarize the exceptions monitoring programs to be conducted on the management unit. The full monitoring program that will be conducted will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan, and referenced in the plan text.

The monitoring programs for exceptions will include:

(a) methodologies;
(b) timing and duration;
(c) documentation and reporting; and
(d) the opportunities for local citizens committee participation.

### 4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration Success

The plan text will summarize the monitoring program to assess regeneration success for naturally and artificially regenerated areas, including the information required to assess the success of areas managed under the selection silvicultural system.

The monitoring program will assess the success of silvicultural activities in the achievement of standards contained in the silvicultural ground rules. The Silvicultural Effectiveness Monitoring Manual for Ontario describes the information to be collected and survey methodologies.

A summary of the area to be assessed for the determination of regeneration success will be provided in FMP-21. The plan text will include a discussion of the area anticipated to be successfully regenerated during each five-year term. The plan text will reference FMP-21.

The full monitoring program will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan, and referenced in the plan text.

The monitoring program will include:

(a) methodologies;
(b) timing and duration;
(c) documentation and reporting; and
(d) the opportunities for local citizens committee participation.

### 4.7.4 Roads and Water Crossings

A description of the monitoring program for roads and water crossings to be carried out during the first five-year term will be provided in the plan text. The description will include the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns. The planned monitoring for each road or road network will be recorded in FMP-18.

## 4.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures to be implemented during the period of the forest management plan will be described in the text, and will apply to the entire management unit. These measures will address how the sustainable forest licensee will prevent the start of wildfires, and how forest workers will be prepared to take immediate action to suppress small fires. These measures will include any business practices and guidelines for modifying industrial operations; developed for fire prevention, preparedness and suppression purpose. The MNR guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in the planning of fire prevention and preparedness.

The text of the section will include:

(a) a description of how sustainable forest licensees will promote fire prevention (e.g., communication, equipment standards and inspections, monitoring compliance with the *Forest Fires Prevention Act*), including a description of how fire prevention efforts will increase during periods of high fire danger;
(b) a description of how forest workers will be made aware of fire prevention plans and initiatives;
(c) a description of how forest workers will be trained to take part in fire suppression, in order to be considered "trained and capable".

## 4.9 Comparison of Proposed Operations to the Long-Term Management Direction

The plan text will document the assessment of the expected effect of planned types and levels of harvest, renewal and tending operations on the progress towards meeting the objectives in the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.3.9). The assessment will:

(a) compare the planned harvest, renewal and tending operations to the projections in the long-term management direction;
(b) compare the stand conditions (e.g., species composition, site class) of the planned harvest areas to the eligible harvest areas;
(c) examine the effect of the age class distribution and the projected harvest volume of the planned harvest area, on the achievement of the long-term management direction; and
(d) examine the effect of the amount of surplus harvest area on the achievement of the long-term management direction.

If planned types and levels of operations deviate from the projections in the long-term management direction, a discussion of the effects on objective achievement and sustainability will be provided.

# 5.0 DETERMINATION OF SUSTAINABILITY

The plan text will contain a conclusion on forest sustainability and include documentation as to how the forest management plan has regard for plant life, animal life, water, soil, air, and social and economic values, including recreational values and heritage values (Part A, Section 1.3.10). The conclusion will be based on the assessment of objective achievement, the spatial assessment, the social and economic assessment (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2) and prescriptions for the protection of values.

The documentation of the determination of sustainability will:

- (a) describe how the forest management plan provides for the sustainability of the Crown forest on the management unit, and discuss:
  - (i) the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which targets and/or desirable levels are not achieved;
  - (ii) the preliminary spatial assessment; and
  - (iii) the social and economic assessment; and
- (b) provide a conclusion that the forest management plan has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

# 6.0 DOCUMENTATION

The forest management plan will include supplementary documentation, which is a summary of information used, and the documentation of decisions and analyses made, during the planning process. In addition, there is other documentation of information, which because of its sensitive nature, will not be included in the plan.

Additional supplementary documentation requirements for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (B, Section 6.0) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

## 6.1 Supplementary Documentation

The supplementary documentation of the forest management plan includes:

- (a) the analysis package, which describes the inputs and assumptions used, and the results and conclusions of analysis conducted, during the development of the long-term management direction (Part A, Section 1.1.7);
- (b) the Aboriginal Background Information Report(s) (if Aboriginal communities agree) (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
- (c) the updated summary of Aboriginal Involvement (if Aboriginal communities agree) (Part A, Section 4.6.4);
- (d) the social and economic description (Part A, Section 1.1.8.11);
- (e) the monitoring programs for exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2);
- (f) the monitoring program for regeneration success (Part B, Section 4.7.3);
- (g) documentation of the planning of primary and branch road corridors (Part A, Sections 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.2), and the locations of primary and branch roads in areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3);
- (h) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1), and conditions on operational roads (Part A, Section 1.3.6.4);
- (i) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of the plan (in the event of a request for an individual Environmental Assessment, this documentation will form part of the record provided by MNR to the Ministry of Environment), which includes:
  - i a summary of all comments received and the consideration of those comments;
  - ii a summary of issue resolution (e.g. type of issue, stage initiated, resolution); and
  - iii a summary of each stage of consultation (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types of supplemental notices sent, etc.);
- (j) a report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during plan preparation; the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; recommendations for change, if any (Part A, Section 3.2.6);

(k) the final list of required alterations (Part A, Sections 1.5.2) and a list of major changes from the draft to final plan;
(l) the planning team's terms of reference (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1);
(m) Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0).

The draft forest management plan will include the supplementary documentation available at the time of draft plan submission. The approved forest management plan will include all of the supplementary documentation.

## 6.2 Other Documentation

The public correspondence related to the development of the plan will be retained on file at the appropriate MNR district or area office. The Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the Aboriginal communities.

# 7.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN SUMMARY

A forest management plan summary will be prepared to facilitate public review of the draft plan and public inspection of the approved plan. The summary will be available at the prescribed locations (Part A, Sections 3.3.3.4 and 3.3.3.5) for the duration of the public consultation periods. A French language version of the summary will be prepared. The local citizens committee may provide advice in the preparation of the plan summary.

The forest management plan summary will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the plan for each item:

(a) a description of the management responsibilities for the management unit (i.e., responsibilities of MNR and/or an organization other than MNR, such as a forest company);

(b) the names of the MNR District Manager, plan author, and local citizens committee contact;

(c) a summary of the report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during plan preparation and a statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the plan (*NOTE: The committee will normally prepare this summary and statement.*);

(d) a summary of the objectives and indicators;

(e) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations of new primary and branch roads, for the ten-year term of the plan;

(f) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the plan;

(g) for the draft forest management plan summary; a statement that there is an opportunity during the 60 day review period (30 days for phase II) of the draft forest management plan to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager or during the 30 days following the completion of the 60 day review period (30 days for phase II) with the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1);

(h) for the final forest management plan summary; a statement that there is an opportunity during the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNR-approved forest management plan for any person to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the forest management plan (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.2); and

(i) a comment form.

# 8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

This section describes the content requirements and a template for writing the planned operations for the second five-year term. Planned operations are comprised of text, tables, maps and supplementary documentation. Planned operations will contain page numbers and line numbers.

Additional documentation requirements for the planned operations for the second five-year term for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (B, Section 8.0) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

The Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page (Figure B-5A) will be located at the front of each draft and approved planned operations. The plan author will complete, sign and seal the title, certification and approval page of the draft and final planned operations. For plans prepared by an organization other than MNR, the senior company official will also sign the title, certification and approval page. The approved planned operations will also be signed by the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted forest management plans. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of the planned operations, those people will certify the parts of the planned operations that they prepared, and that they have prepared those parts of the planned operations in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual. Their certification will be documented in the format prescribed in Part B, Figure B-5B.

A list of exceptions (Figure B-6) will follow the title and certification page. The list of planned operations contributors (Figure B-7) will follow the list of exceptions.

A table of contents will follow the list of planned operations contributors. It will also contain a list of tables, a list of figures, and a list of supplementary documentation.

**Figure B-5A: Phase II Planned Operations - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN, April 1, _____ to March 31, _____
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

PLANNED OPERATIONS
for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]

I hereby certify that I have prepared these planned operations, including the silvicultural ground rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement with the assistance of an interdisciplinary planning team in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| [R.P.F. seal] | [Plan Author] | [date] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Submitted by: | _____ | _____ |
| (where applicable) | [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR] | [date] |

I recommend that these planned operations be approved for implementation and certify that they have been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that these planned operations have been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In these planned operations, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Recommended by: | _____ | _____ |
| | [MNR District Manager] | [date] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Approved by: | _____ | _____ |
| | [MNR Regional Director] | [date] |

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: _____

**Figure B-5B: Phase II Planned Operations - Title and Certification Page**

For Sections Not Prepared by the Plan Author

PLANNED OPERATIONS
for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

I hereby certify that I have prepared the sections of the planned operations as indicated, to the best of my professional skill and judgement in accordance with the requirements of the *Forest Management Planning Manual.*

| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |
| Name | Job Title | Sections prepared | Signature | Date |

**Figure B-6: Phase II Planned Operations - List of Exceptions**

PLANNED OPERATIONS
for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization, if other than MNR]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

All silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules which are exceptions to the recommendations in the silvicultural guides, and all operational prescriptions for areas of concern which are exceptions to the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable guides, are provided in this list of exceptions. The specific section of the planned operations that provides documentation of the exception is also referenced in this list.

| Description of Exception | Specific Section |
|---|---|
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |
| | |

**Figure B-7: Phase II Planned Operations Contributors**

TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN - April 1, _____ to March 31, _____
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

PLANNED OPERATIONS
for the 2nd 5-year term from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

PLANNING TEAM MEMBERS

_____ _____
Plan Author
_____ _____

_____ _____

PLANNING TEAM ADVISORS

_____ _____

_____ _____

LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE MEMBERS

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

*A brief statement that reports on the local citizens committee's agreement or disagreement with the planned operations(final plan only):*

_____
_____
_____

PLAN REVIEWERS

_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____
_____ _____

## 8.1 Introduction

The plan text will provide a brief description of the contents of this section. The plan text will have a statement that any approved access, harvest, renewal and tending operations for the first five-year term of the forest management plan, that were not completed during the first five-year term, remain approved for implementation during the second five-year term, with no further planning requirements. The text will describe the areas planned for operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.1.7). The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the updated planning team terms of reference.

The plan text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains a brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the planned operations in the form of the SEV consideration document.

## 8.2 Prescriptions for Operations

### 8.2.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

FMP-10 will be revised if applicable to reflect new, modified or deleted operational prescriptions for areas of concern within the areas of operations, which were developed in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 2.1.8.1. The plan text will reference FMP-10 and include a statement that the prescriptions in the revised FMP-10 will serve as the prescriptions for areas of concern for the second five-year term of the forest management plan.

The plan text will identify the new, modified, or deleted prescriptions in the revised FMP-10. The plan text will also identify any operational prescriptions for areas of concern which no longer apply.

For new or revised operational prescriptions for an area of concern that require the completion of supplementary documentation forms, the text will reference the section of the supplementary documentation that contains the additional information, including comments from the public and Aboriginal communities, for the operational prescriptions. Any objections to an operational prescription for an area of concern as a result of public or Aboriginal peoples comment will be recorded in the supplementary documentation. The responses to those objections will also be documented on the supplementary documentation forms. The format for the supplementary documentation is prescribed in Appendix VI.

Any new or revised operational prescription for an area of concern that differs from the specific direction or recommendations (standards or guidelines) in a forest management guide will be identified in FMP-10 as an exception. The exception will also be recorded in the supplementary documentation (Appendix VI). The list of exceptions will be referenced in the MNR District Manager’s certification and recommendation of the forest management plan for approval (Figure B-6).

#### 8.2.1.1 Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern Information Products

The information product associated with operational prescriptions for areas of concern will identify:

(a) the area of concern identifier; and
(b) the area of concern type.

### 8.2.2 Operational Prescriptions for Harvest, Renewal and Tending Areas

#### 8.2.2.1 Silvicultural Ground Rules

If a new silvicultural ground rule is developed for a forest unit - ecosite combination on the management unit, a revised version of FMP-4 (Part A, Section 1.3.5.2) will be prepared.

The plan text will identify that the new or revised silvicultural ground rules in the revised FMP-4 will serve as the prescriptions for operations, including naturally depleted areas that are salvaged, for the second five-year term of the forest management plan. The plan text will also identify any silvicultural ground rules which no longer apply.

The information products associated with the harvest, renewal and tending areas will serve as the stand list.

The plan text will describe the silvicultural ground rules which will most commonly be used to regenerate each forest unit. The plan text will state that the most common treatment package(s) in each silvicultural ground rule will be the most likely treatment. The plan text will also contain a statement that this information represents the best estimate of proposed operations at the time of plan preparation, and will not limit the selection of any acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments in the silvicultural ground rules at the time of implementation of operations. If a treatment that is not recommended in the applicable silvicultural guide is included in a silvicultural ground rule, that treatment will be recorded as an exception in FMP-4. The rationale for that exception will be provided. The plan text will reference the monitoring program that describes the methods that will be used to determine the effectiveness of that treatment (Part B, Section 4.7.2). The monitoring program will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan, and referenced in the plan text (Part B, Section 8.7).

#### 8.2.2.2 Conditions on Regular Operations

Where a condition on regular operations (harvest, renewal, and tending) has been developed through application of MNR's forest management guides relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, these conditions will be documented in the forest management plan. Where conditions on regular operations apply to a specific management zone, the text will identify the management zone and where it is portrayed.

8.2.2.3 Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest

The plan text will describe any silvicultural treatments of special public interest (Part A, Section 2.1.8.2).

Silvicultural Treatments of Special Public Interest Information Products

Information products associated with silvicultural treatments of special public interest will identify:

(a) candidate high complexity prescribed burns;
(b) areas proposed for aerial application of herbicides;
(c) if applicable, areas which have been identified as eligible for insect pest management, and areas proposed for aerial application of insecticides, as a result of application of the planning procedure for insect pest management programs; and
(d) areas available for fuelwood.

## 8.3 Harvest Operations

### 8.3.1 Harvest Areas

The planned harvest area for the second five-year term will be described in the text and recorded in a revised FMP-11. If applicable, the plan text will describe the distribution of the planned harvest area by licensee in FMP-14.

If there are changes to the planned harvest areas from what was shown in Phase I, the rationale will be documented in the text. The rationale may include consideration of the comments received in Phase II, Stage One of consultation. The text will document the effect of the changes to planned harvest areas on landscape pattern objectives and indicators (Part A, Section 1.2.5.2). The planned harvest areas in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit will be clearly identified as surplus areas.

For the area planned for harvest using the clearcut silviculture system, the required area of stand level residual will be determined, using the direction and standards in MNR's applicable forest management guide. The required area of stand level residual will be identified and portrayed.

Rationale will be provided in the text for harvest areas that do not follow the residual stand structure requirements of the applicable forest management guide.

If areas are identified for harvest as a result of an insect pest management strategy (Part D, Section 6.0), the area planned for harvest will be documented in the plan text. The plan text will discuss the effect on achievement of management objectives.

### 8.3.2 Surplus Harvest Area

The requirements for the planning of surplus harvest areas are described in Part A, Section 1.3.3.1. Any areas within the planned harvest areas, which are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the management unit, will be identified as surplus harvest area. The plan text will document the total area and volume for the surplus harvest area. Any factors which limit the utilization of the surplus harvest area (e.g., lack of markets, access) will be explained in the plan text. Anticipated effects on the achievement of management objectives and progress toward the desired forest, if the surplus harvest area is not harvested, will be documented in the text.

### 8.3.3 Planned Clearcuts

The requirements for the planning of clearcuts are described in Part A, Section 1.3.5.2. The planned clearcuts that exceeds 260 hectares will be identified in a revised FMP-12. The plan text will reference FMP-12 and describe the contents of the table. The plan text will provide the silvicultural or biological rationale. The maximum and average size of planned clearcuts will also be documented in the plan text.

### 8.3.4 Harvest Volume

The available harvest volume, and an estimate of the planned net merchantable volume, and undersized and defect, that may be available for bio-products from the planned harvest area, for the ten-year period, was recorded in FMP-13. A revised FMP-13 will be prepared to identify undersized and defect volume if it was not provided in the forest management plan. The method used to estimate this volume for the planned harvest area will be described in the plan text.

### 8.3.5 Wood Utilization

The text will include a discussion of the anticipated wood utilization, by volume type, product and species, for each mill reliant on wood supply from the management unit. The text will also include a discussion of the sources of, and reasons for, unutilized volumes. Anticipated effects on the achievement of management objectives and progress toward the desired forest, if the available volumes are not utilized, will be documented in the text.

The harvest volume for the planned harvest area will be recorded by utilization, volume type (i.e., net merchantable, and undersized and defect), product and species in FMP-14. Upon request by an overlapping licensee and agreement of the planning team, the harvest volumes will also be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees. The planned harvest volume and the planned harvest volume for each mill which relies on wood supply from the management unit will be recorded, by species and product, in FMP-15. The plan text will discuss

anticipated utilization of forest resources from the management unit by product, including bio-products.

If unutilized volume is available for fuelwood, the fuelwood areas will be included in the harvest area information products.

### 8.3.6 Salvage

The requirements for the planning of salvage harvest areas are described in Part A, Section 2.1.7. The plan text will document the total area and volume associated with areas of salvage harvest operations. The salvage harvest area and volume will be recorded for each licensee or group of licensees in tables similar to FMP-14. Areas of salvage harvest will be included in the harvest area information products.

### 8.3.7 Contingency Area and Volume

The requirements for the planning of contingency area for harvest operations are described in Part A, Section 2.1.7. Contingency area identified for the second five-year term will be described in the text. If there are significant changes from the forest management plan rationale will be provided in the text. The contingency area and an estimate of the volume for the second five-year term will be recorded in a revised FMP-16.

The contingency area will be included in the harvest area information products.

### 8.3.8 Harvest Area Information Products

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will identify:

(a) the silvicultural system;
(b) the harvest category (e.g. regular, second-pass, salvage, contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);
(c) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(d) the silvicultural ground rule;
(e) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained;
(f) planned clearcuts greater than 260 ha;
(g) if applicable, the harvest area changed from the planned harvest area in the forest management plan, and
(h) if applicable, stand level residual requirements.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will portray:

(a) the harvest area;
(b) the harvest category (e.g. regular, second-pass, salvage, contingency, surplus, redirected and accelerated);
(c) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(d) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained;
(e) planned clearcuts greater than 260 ha;
(f) if applicable, the harvest area changed from the planned harvest area in the forest management plan, and
(g) if applicable, the stand level residual requirements.

## 8.4 Renewal and Tending Operations

### 8.4.1 Renewal and Tending Areas

The requirements for the planning of renewal and tending areas are described in Part A, Section 2.1.7. The planned levels of renewal and tending operations associated with harvest and natural disturbance for the second five-year term will be summarized by treatment in a revised FMP-17. The plan text will reference FMP-17.

The plan text will include a discussion of how the analysis of renewal and tending requirements (Part E, Section 4.3) conducted by a registered professional forester influenced the planned types and levels of renewal and tending operations. The plan text will also describe the planned levels of renewal and tending activities and associated expenditures required to achieve objectives described in the forest management plan. The plan text will describe supplemental treatments or retreatments, if applicable.

The plan text will describe planned silvicultural treatments of special public interest.

### 8.4.2 Renewal Support

The sustainable forest licensee's program for the collection of seed, and production of nursery stock, during the second five-year term will be described in the plan text. A forecast of the volume of seed to be used (by species), and the quantity of nursery stock to be planted (by species), for the second five-year term will also be documented in the plan text.

Tree improvement activities scheduled during the second five-year term to support the production of improved seed will be described in the plan text, with reference to existing seed orchards and tree improvement strategies. The locations of tree improvement activities will be portrayed.

### 8.4.3 Renewal and Tending Information Products

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance will identify:

(a) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(b) the applicable silvicultural ground rules;
(c) the tree improvement activity; and
(d) silvicultural treatments of special public interest.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance will portray:

(a) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(b) the applicable silvicultural ground rules;
(c) the tree improvement activity; and
(d) silvicultural treatments of special public interest.

## 8.5 Roads

### 8.5.1 Primary and Branch Roads

A summary of primary and branch road construction for the second five-year term will be documented in the plan text. The length of each road to be constructed during the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and the length of road to be constructed during the second five-year term of the forest management plan, will be identified in a revised FMP-18. Any new, or changes to, a primary or branch road corridor will also be identified in the revised FMP-18. Any new, or changes to, a primary or branch road use management strategy will also be identified in the revised in FMP-18.

The text will provide rationale for new road corridors and use management strategies. The text will provide rationale for changes to road corridors or road use management strategies identified in Phase I of the forest management plan. The rationale will include consideration of the comments received from the public or Aboriginal communities in Phase II, Stage One of consultation. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will also be provided. If required, documentation of the environmental analysis of the alternative corridors for each new primary road corridor, the rationale for the selected corridor and associated use management strategy, and the rationale for each new branch road corridor and associated use management strategy, will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix V). The plan text will reference the supplemental documentation.

If a new primary or branch road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the plan text.

The plan text will identify primary and branch roads that will have access restriction and/or road transfer implemented during the second five-year term. If a use management strategy restricts public access, the plan text will reference the supplementary documentation that contains the rationale for the restriction (Appendix V).

Where a new primary road, branch road, or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, any conditions on the primary road, branch road or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

#### 8.5.1.1 Operational Roads

A summary of operational road construction will be documented in the plan text. The plan text will contain a statement that operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often decommissioned. Each operational road boundary within which an operational road will be constructed and the associated use management strategy for the road(s) will be recorded in FMP-18. If the use management strategy restricts public access, the rationale for the restriction will also be provided.

If a new operational road required for forest management purposes will traverse a provincial park or conservation reserve, the rationale will be provided in the plan text.

Documentation of the use management strategy for each operational road or networks of operational roads will be included in the supplementary documentation of the plan (Appendix V). The plan text will reference the appropriate sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan.

Where a new operational road or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, any conditions on the operational road or landing, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in the forest management plan.

#### 8.5.1.2 Area of Concern Crossings - Primary and Branch Roads

The plan text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on a primary road, or branch road crossing of an area of concern or landing within an area of concern. For each crossing of an area of concern within a primary and branch road corridor, the conditions on construction and acceptable variations to the locations and conditions will be summarized in FMP-19 and portrayed. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-19. Documentation of the analysis, including public comments and identification of the map which portrays the 100 metre wide crossing location will be included in the supplementary

documentation of the plan (Appendix VI). The plan text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation of the plan that contains the documentation.

The plan text will also include a statement that the 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction in the forest management plan for area of concern crossings are preliminary locations and conditions. The statement will indicate the locations and conditions will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the acceptable variations described in the forest management plan.

#### 8.5.1.3 Area of Concern Crossings - Operational Roads

The plan text will discuss any concerns expressed with road crossings of areas of concern. FMP-10 will identify if there is conditions on an operational road crossing of an area of concern or landing within an area of concern. For operational road crossings of areas of concern, conditions on the location(s) or construction of the crossing(s) for individual areas of concern, or groups of areas of concern, will be summarized in FMP-19. Conditions on a landing within an area of concern will also be documented in FMP-19. If public comments have been received concerning a crossing of an area of concern by an operational road, the receipt of public comments will be noted in FMP-19 and documented in the supplementary documentation (Appendix VI). The plan text will reference the sections of the supplementary documentation.

The plan text will also include a statement that the 100 metre wide road locations and conditions on construction will be finalized in the applicable annual work schedules (Part D, Section 3.2.5), consistent with the conditions described in the forest management.

### 8.5.2 Existing Roads

Existing road or road networks that are the responsibility of the licensee, and the associated use management strategy, will be updated in FMP-18 if necessary.

If an existing road required for forest management purposes which traverses a provincial park or conservation reserve will be upgraded, the rationale will be provided in the plan text.

If the use management strategy for a road identifies transfer to MNR during the second five-year term, and MNR's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use and decommissioning activities are planned, the plan text will provide rationale.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the period of the forest management plan, and the road and/or landing intersects an areas of concern for a value, the appropriate conditions on operations will be identified.

Conditions on Existing Roads and Landings

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the second five-year term, and the road and/or landing intersects an area of concern for a value, FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on the road and/or landing. The appropriate conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in FMP-19.

If an existing road and/or landing is planned to be used for forest management purposes during the second five-year term, and where the road and/or landing does not intersect an area of concern for a value, conditions on the road and/or landing as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales will be documented in the forest management plan.

### 8.5.3 Road Information Products

Information products associated with road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will identify:

(a) the corridors for primary roads (20 years);
(b) the corridors for primary and branch roads planned for construction (5 years);
(c) the operational road boundaries;
(d) if applicable, the road changes from the planned roads in the forest management plan;
(e) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
(f) the 100 metre wide crossing of each area of concern;
(g) the acceptable alternative locations or location restrictions for each crossing of an area of concern;
(h) the roads that will be maintained;
(i) the roads and associated water crossings that will be monitored;
(j) the segments of roads that will have access controls implemented, and the type of access control activities;
(k) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned, and the type of decommissioning activities; and
(l) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will portray:

(a) the corridors for primary and branch roads (5 years);
(b) the operational road boundaries;
(c) if applicable, the road changes from the planned roads in the forest management plan;
(d) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
(e) the 100 metre wide crossing of each area of concern;

(f) the segments of roads that will have access controls implemented;
(g) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned; and
(h) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.

### 8.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

The plan text will include a statement that the criteria for a Forestry Aggregate Pit apply as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

The operational standards for the extraction of aggregate resources for Forestry Aggregate Pits, as described in Appendix VII, will be documented in the forest management plan.

Aggregate extraction areas will be identified in the forest management plan as per Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

<u>Conditions on Forestry Aggregate Pits</u>

The appropriate conditions on operations for Forestry Aggregate Pits, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in the forest management plan.

If a Forestry Aggregate Pit intersects an area of concern, FMP-10 will identify if there are conditions on operations. The appropriate conditions on operations, as described in MNR's guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, will be documented in FMP-19.

All existing Forestry Aggregate Pits will be identified in each annual work schedule (Part D, Section 3.3.4).

#### 8.5.4.1 Aggregate Extraction Areas Information Products

Information products associated with aggregate extraction areas will identify:

(a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and
(b) the areas of concern.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled aggregate extraction areas will portray:

(a) the aggregate extraction area identifier; and
(b) the areas of concern.

## 8.6 Expenditures

The plan text will identify the projected expenditures required for renewal and maintenance operations, insect pest management and renewal support, and discuss the associated implications (Part A, Section 2.1.10) for the second five-year term. Rationale will be provided for the assumptions and ratios used to calculate expenditures associated with the implementation of harvest, renewal and tending operations.

The forecast of expenditures by activity and funding source, will be revised and summarized in FMP-20.

## 8.7 Monitoring and Assessment

Part B, Section 4.7 describes the documentation requirements for the monitoring program. The monitoring and assessment program will be updated for the planned operations for the second five-year term, if necessary.

## 8.8 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

Part B, Section 4.8 describes the documentation requirements for the fire prevention and preparedness plan. The fire prevention and preparedness plan will be updated for the second five-year term, if necessary.

## 8.9 Supplementary Documentation

The updated supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year term includes (Part B, Section 6.1):

(a) the updated Aboriginal Background Information Report (if Aboriginal communities agree) (Part A, Section 4.6.1);
(b) the updated summary of Aboriginal Involvement (if Aboriginal communities agree) (Part A, Section 4.6.4);
(c) the monitoring programs for exceptions (Part B, Section 8.7);
(d) the monitoring program for regeneration success (Part B, Section 8.7);
(e) documentation of the planning of primary and branch road corridors (Part A, Sections 2.1.9.1), and the locations of primary and branch roads in areas of concern (Part A, Section 2.1.9.2);
(f) documentation of the planning of operational prescriptions for areas of concern (Part A, Section 2.1.8.1), and conditions on operational roads (Part A, Section 2.1.9.3);
(g) a summary of public consultation in the preparation of planned operations for the second five-year term (in the event of a request for an individual

Environmental Assessment, this documentation will form part of the record provided by MNR to the Ministry of Environment), which includes:

(i) summary of all comments received and the consideration of those comments;

(ii) a summary of issue resolution (e.g. type of issue, stage initiated, resolution); and

(iii) a summary of each stage of consultation (e.g., forum, dates, number of attendees, types of supplemental notices sent, etc.).

(h) a report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during the preparation of the planned operations for the second five-year term; the problems and issues addressed by the committee; an assessment of the effectiveness of the committee structure; and recommendations for change, if any (Part A, Section 3.2.6);

(i) the final lists of required alteration and list of major changes from the draft planned operations to the final planned operations for the second five-year term;

(j) an updated planning team's terms of reference (Part A, Section 2.1.2.1); and

(k) Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) consideration document (Part B, Section 1.0).

The draft planned operations for the second five-year term will include the supplementary documentation available at the time of draft planned operations submission. The approved planned operations for the second five-year term will include all of the supplementary documentation.

## 8.10 Other Documentation

The public correspondence related to the development of the planned operations for the second five-year term will be retained on file at the appropriate MNR district or area office. The Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values will be retained at a location as agreed to in consultation with the Aboriginal communities.

## 8.11 Planned Operations Summary

A summary of planned operations for the second five-year term will be prepared to facilitate public review of the draft planned operations and approved planned operations. The summary will be available at the locations prescribed in Part A, Sections 3.3.3.4 and 3.3.3.5. A French language version of the summary will be prepared. The local citizens committee may provide advice in the preparation of the planned operations summary.

The summary of planned operations will include the following items, and will provide references to the appropriate sections of the plan or planned operations for each item:

(a) the names of the MNR District Manager, plan author, and local citizens committee contact;

(b) a summary map of the areas of harvest, renewal and tending operations, and the locations and names of new and existing roads, for the planned operations for the second five-year term of the plan;

(c) a summary of the report prepared by the local citizens committee concerning its activities during the preparation of the planned operations; and a brief statement of the committee's general agreement or disagreement with the planned operations (*NOTE: The committee will prepare this summary.*);

(d) a summary of the major issues encountered and addressed in the plan;

(e) for the draft planned operations summary, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 30-day review of draft planned operations for the second five-year term to seek resolution of issues with the MNR District Manager, or during the 30 days following the completion of the 30 day period of public review of the draft planned operations for the second five-year term to seek resolution of issues with the MNR Regional Director (in accordance with the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1);

(f) for the final planned operations summary for the second five-year term, a statement that there is an opportunity during the 30-day period for public inspection of the MNR-approved planned operations for any person to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the forest management plan (in accordance with the process described in Part A, Section 3.4.2); and

(g) a comment form.

# 9.0 FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN TABLES

The following tables are required for a forest management plan.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-1: Management Unit Crown Land Summary**

| Land Ownership and Type | Land Ownership (Hectares) | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Crown | | Patent | Total |
| | Managed | Other | Crown Timber | |
| Unsurveyed | | | | |
| Non-forested | | | | |
| Water | | | | |
| Other Land | | | | |
| Agricultural Land | | | | |
| Grass & Meadow | | | | |
| Unclassified | | | | |
| Other | | | | |
| **Subtotal Non-Forested** | | | | |
| Forested | | | | |
| Non-Productive Forest | | | | |
| Treed Muskeg | | | | |
| Open Muskeg | | | | |
| Brush & Alder | | | | |
| Rock | | | | |
| **Subtotal Non-Productive** | | | | |
| Productive Forest | | | | |
| Protection Forest | | | | |
| Site | | | | |
| Islands | | | | |
| **Subtotal Protection** | | | | |
| Production Forest | | | | |
| Recent Disturbance | | | | |
| Below Regeneration Standards | | | | |
| Forest Stands | | | | |
| **Subtotal Production** | | | | |
| **Subtotal Productive** | | | | |
| **Subtotal Forested** | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | |
| | **Total Crown:** | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## FMP-l: Management Unit Crown Land Summary

This table summarizes the area of different Crown land types for the management unit at the start of the plan period. The source of information for this table is the updated planning inventory for the management unit. Planning inventory updates for lands other than Crown managed land should be reflected in this inventory where information is available and particularly where large areas of these lands within the management unit have implications on the development of the forest management plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

Enter the area in hectares by FRI land type for each land ownership:

**Crown:**

Managed: All Crown land available for forest management purposes including lands patented to Ontario government agencies where appropriate. Crown – Managed may include area of some or all inventory land types (e.g., treed muskeg, protection forest and production forest). Area affected by forest management planning decisions (e.g., area of concern reserves) is included.

Other: All Crown land that is not available for forest management purposes through legal designation. This includes provincial parks and conservation reserves regulated under the *Provincial Parks and Conservation Reserves Act*. It also includes areas established by policy direction (where forest management activity is not permitted) and higher order land use decisions (e.g., Ontario Living Legacy).

**Patent:**

Crown Timber: Patent land where the Crown has rights to some or all timber.

Notes for selected inventory land types:

Production Forest: Includes both production forest reserve and regular production forest stands.

Recent Disturbance: Areas of stand replacing natural disturbance (e.g., fire, insect, blow down, etc.) or artificial disturbance (e.g., harvest), which have not received a silvicultural treatment for regeneration such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting.

Below Regeneration Standards: Area of productive forest stands that have received regeneration treatments such as natural regeneration, seeding or planting but do not yet meet the regeneration standards in an approved forest management plan. Includes both natural disturbances and harvested area.

Forest Stands: All existing forest stands and areas which have been successfully regenerated.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-2: Description of Forest Units**

| Forest Unit | | Ecosite(s) | Regional Forest Unit | Silvicultural System | FRI Parameters & Criteria | Additional Information |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Code | Name | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-2: Description of Forest Units**

This table describes the forest units used to classify all forest stands of the management unit, including the stands that are not available for forest management activities. Forest units are used as the basis for summarizing data for many forest management plan, annual work schedule and annual report tables.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

List each forest unit including an appropriate **Code** (maximum 6 characters) and a descriptive **Name** (maximum 20 characters). The list should include all forest units currently represented as well as forest units, which will occur in the future as a result of management actions.

**Eco-sites:**

Indicate the eco-site(s) which fall within the forest unit, based on the provincial Ecological Land Classification.

**Regional Forest Unit:**

Indicate the regional forest unit(s) that best match each forest unit.

**Silvicultural System:**

Indicate the silvicultural system (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood, and selection) to be used for the forest unit.

**FRI Parameters & Criteria:**

For the purpose of assigning a forest unit to each stand, identify the appropriate Forest Resource Inventory (FRI) parameters (e.g., species composition, site class, stocking) or other criteria by which the stands are classified (e.g., plantations).

**Additional Information:**

Indicate any other information, which is useful in describing each forest unit.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit**

| Forest Unit | Age Class | Protection Forest (ha) | Production Forest | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Unavailable (ha) | Stage of Management | Available (ha) |
| | | | | | |
| **Forest Unit Subtotal** | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-3: Summary of Managed Crown Productive Forest by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes the area of managed productive Crown forest (as shown in Table FMP-1) by forest unit and age class. The source of information for this table is the planning inventory with forest units as defined in FMP-2.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in Table FMP-2.

**Age Class:**

Enter 20-year age classes for clearcut and shelterwood management. This column is not completed for the forest units managed under the selection silvicultural system.

**Protection Forest:**

Enter the area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class.

**Production Forest:**

**Unavailable:**

Enter the area (in hectares) of the Crown managed production forest that is not available for timber production as a result of forest management planning decisions, current forest management guides and other known factors (e.g., actual or anticipated reserves, inaccessible area).

**Stage of Management**:

Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Available:**

Enter the area (in hectares) of the managed Crown production forest area minus the Unavailable area.

Enter all totals and subtotals as required.

Ensure that the total areas in the Protection Forest and Production Forest (Unavailable and Available) columns correspond with the productive forest subtotals in Table FMP-1.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules**

| SGR Code | |
|---|---|

| Silvicultural System | |
|---|---|

| Current Condition | | Future Condition | | Regeneration Standards |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Forest Unit** | **Ecosite(s)** | **Forest Unit** | **Stand Characteristics** | |
| | | | | |
| **Additional Information** | | **Development Information** | | |
| | | | | |

| | Silvicultural Treatments | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Harvest Method** | **Logging Method** | **Site Preparation** | **Regeneration** | **Tending** |
| **Most Common Treatment Package** | | | | | |
| **Acceptable Alternative Treatments** | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## FMP-4: Silvicultural Ground Rules

This table describes the silvicultural systems and types of treatments that may be used to manage a specific current forest condition to achieve a predicted future forest condition. The source of information for the table are the applicable Silvicultural Guides and the knowledge and experience of the plan author and planning team.

Complete the table as follows for each silvicultural ground rule.

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**SGR Code:** Enter a label (maximum 15 characters) that identifies the silvicultural ground rule.

**Silvicultural System:** Enter the silvicultural system (i.e. clearcut, shelterwood and selection) under which each forest unit will be managed. Only one silvicultural system will be identified for each forest unit.

**Current Condition:** Enter the Forest Unit (identified in FMP-2) and Eco-site(s). In describing eco-site, use the provincial Ecological Land Classification (ELC) or the best available site information. Provide any additional information as required.

**Future Condition:** Future conditions (resulting from the implementation of the silvicultural ground rule) will be described in terms of the predicted forest unit, stand characteristics and development information. Enter the predicted future forest unit. Enter the anticipated future stand characteristics, (e.g. average species composition, and stocking, stand density) for the mature stand condition. Enter a reference to the development information used in modelling this silvicultural ground rule at the forest level (e.g. Pj1-Intensive).

**Regeneration Standards:** Enter the standards for determining regeneration success (e.g. acceptable species, the timeframes required, site occupancy). The standards of regeneration success will be consistent with the development information associated with this silvicultural ground rule.

**Silvicultural Treatments:** For each silvicultural ground rule, identify the most common series of silvicultural and acceptable alternative treatments. Where a silvicultural treatment differs from the recommendations in the appropriate silvicultural guide, that treatment will be identified as an exception.

**Harvest Method:** Enter the harvest method (e.g. strip clearcut, uniform shelterwood) as well as any reference to commercial thinning.

**Logging Method:** Enter the logging method (e.g. full tree, tree length or shortwood) to be used. Where there are options, indicate under what conditions the different methods will be used. Special restrictions on the type of logging equipment, the prescription for logging or the timing of logging to ensure site compatibility will be noted.

**Site Preparation :** Enter the site preparation treatment (e.g. mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn). Combinations of site preparation treatments (e.g., chemical site preparation followed by prescribed burning) are acceptable.

**Regeneration:** Enter the regeneration treatments (e.g. natural, plant, seed).

**Tending:** Enter the tending treatments.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-5: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

| Forest Type | Age | Area (ha) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | <Year 0> | <Year 20> | <Year 40> | <Year 60> | <Year 80> | <Year 100> |
| | | | | | | | |
| **Forest Type Subtotal** | | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-5: Projected Forest Condition for the Crown Productive Forest**

This table summarizes the area of Crown productive forest by forest type (e.g., forest unit or provincial forest type) and age (e.g., age class or seral stage) by twenty-year projections for the long-term management direction. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the future forest conditions over time resulting from the long-term management direction.

The source of information for this table is the output of forest modelling for the long-term management direction.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Type:**

Enter the user defined forest type. This may be forest units as in FMP-2 or forest unit groupings.

**Age:**

Enter the user defined age. This may be a twenty year age class or a seral stage age. This column is left blank for forest types managed under the selection silviculture system.

**Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2012) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (in hectares) for each forest type/age at each indicated year from forest modelling for the long-term management direction. The information shown for <Year 0> will be consistent with the Crown productive forest total summarized in FMP-1 (Crown – Total).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-6: Projected Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species**

| Species | Area (ha) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **<Year 0>** | **<Year 20>** | **<Year 40>** | **<Year 60>** | **<Year 80>** | **<Year 100>** |
| | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-6: Projected Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species**

This table summarizes the area of habitat for species at risk and selected wildlife species by twenty-year projections for the long-term management direction. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the habitat availability over time resulting from the long-term management direction.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Species:**

Enter the common names of the species at risk and selected wildlife species.

**Area (ha) :**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2012) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the area (in hectares) of habitat for each species at risk and selected wildlife species at each indicated year from forest modelling for the long-term management direction.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-7: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

| Forest Unit | Available Harvest Area (ha) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | <Year 0> | <Year 20> | <Year 40> | <Year 60> | <Year 80> | <Year 100> |
| | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-7: Projected Available Harvest Area by Forest Unit**

This table summarizes the available harvest area (i.e., for a ten year period) by twenty-year projections for the long-term management direction. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the projected harvest area over time resulting from the long-term management direction.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

**Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2012) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest area for the ten year period (in hectares) at each indicated year from forest modelling for the long-term management direction.

Enter all totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group**

| Species Group | Available Harvest Volume (m3) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | <Year 0> | <Year 20> | <Year 40> | <Year 60> | <Year 80> | <Year 100> |
| | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-8: Projected Available Harvest Volume by Species Group**

This table summarizes the estimated available harvest volume (i.e., for a ten year period) by twenty-year projections for the long-term management direction. The purpose of the table is to provide a tabular comparison of the available harvest volume over time resulting from the long-term management direction.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Species Group:**

Enter the species group (e.g., spruce/pine/fir, white/red pine). This is normally the same as the species groups used in forest modelling.

**Available Harvest Volume (m3):**

Enter the actual year (e.g., 2012) as column titles where <Year 0> represents the plan start year and <Year 20> represents plan start year plus 20. Complete the remaining column titles in a similar manner.

Enter the available harvest volume for the ten year period (in cubic metres) for net merchantable volume and undersize and defect volume at each indicated year from forest modelling for the long-term management direction.

Enter all totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-9: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

| | | | | | | LTMD - Projections | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Management Objective** | **Indicator** | **Plan Start Level** | **Desirable Level** | **Timing of Assessment** | **Target** | **Medium** | **Long** | **Assessment** |
| **Quantitative Objectives** | | | | | | | | |
| **Qualitative Objectives** | **Assessment:** | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## FMP-9: Assessment of Objective Achievement

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators and target information and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and the plan period.

**Management Objective**:

Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

**Indicator:**

Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres ) for levels, targets and projections.

**Plan Start Level:**

Enter the plan start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for a ten-year plan period (e.g., available harvest volume).

**Desirable Level:**

Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

**Timing of Assessment:**

Enter the timing of assessment for the indicator (i.e. plan preparation, and/or plan implementation).

**Target:**

Enter the target level for the indicator. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

**Long-Term Management Direction – Projections:**

Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the long-term management direction, for the target year and for the medium and long term.

**Assessment:**

Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the plan start, desirable and target levels as well as the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:

Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-10: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern**

| AOC ID | Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value | Group AOC | Operational Prescription | Source | Exception | Road Crossings and Landings | | Forestry Aggregate Pit |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | Primary or Branch Road Crossing / Landing Conditions | Operational Road/Landing Conditions | Conditions |
| | | | | | | | | |

Note: where the Road Crossings and Landings or Forestry columns indicate “yes”, additional information is provided in FMP-19.

# INSTRUCTIONS

## FMP-10: Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

This table outlines the prescriptions for areas identified as areas of concern (AOC). Each table entry represents either a group of areas of concern with a common prescription, or an individual area of concern with a unique prescription.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**AOC Identifier:**

Enter the code by which an area of concern prescription can be identified on the operations maps and in the area of concern supplementary documentation for individual or groups of AOCs.

**Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value:**

Briefly describe the features, land uses or values for which an AOC prescription has been prepared.

**Group AOC:**

Note in the table Yes or No to indicate whether the prescription is a group AOC.

**Operational Prescription:**

Enter the operational prescription for the area of concern including any constraints on harvest, renewal and tending operations.

**Source:**

Enter source of prescription, if applicable, including the title of the forest management guide and page number from which the prescription specific direction or recommendation is located.

**Exception:**

Where an area of concern prescription differs from specific direction or from a recommendation in the appropriate forest management guide, the prescription will be considered an exception and indicated by placing “Yes” in the column.

**Road Crossings and Landings:**

Primary or Branch Road Crossing/Landing Conditions: indicate with “Yes” if there are conditions.

Operational Road/Landing Conditions: indicate with “Yes” if there are conditions.

**Forestry:**

Indicate with “yes” if there are conditions.

Note: where the Road Crossings, Landing or Forestry columns indicate “Yes”, additional information is provided in FMP-19.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-11: Planned Harvest Area**

| Forest Unit | Available Harvest Area (ha) | Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class | Planned Harvest Area 10 Year (ha) | Planned Harvest Area Term __ (ha) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |
| **Stage of Management Subtotal** | | | | |
| **Forest Unit Subtotal** | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-11: Planned Harvest Area**

This table summarizes the level of forecast available harvest area, the planned harvest area, as well as the available harvest area by forest unit for comparison. The source of information for this table is the long-term management direction and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

**Available Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the ten-year available harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit.

**Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Planned Ten-Year Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the ten-year planned harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the planned area by stage of management and age class. The planned area will agree with the available harvest area by forest unit.

**Planned Five-Year Harvest Area (ha):**

Enter the Planned (5-year) harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the planned harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Enter subtotal by forest unit and by stage of management, if applicable.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-12: Planned Clearcuts > 260 Ha**

| Planned Clearcuts > 260 ha | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Location ID** | **Area of Planned Clearcut (ha)** | **Planned Harvest Area This Term (ha)** |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |
| | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-12: Planned Clearcuts > 260 Ha (5-year)**

This table provides a list of all planned clearcuts greater than 260 ha for the five-year term. This table will be updated in Phase II planning. The MNR definition of a clearcut (i.e., temporal and spatial standards) is to be used when determining the boundaries and area (ha) of planned clearcuts for the purpose of completing this table.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Planned Clearcuts Greater Than 260 Hectares:**

List each planned clearcut by location identifier including the total area, and the planned harvest area this term.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species (10-year)**

| Forest Unit | Volume Type | 10-Year Available Harvest Volume ($m^3$) | | 10-Year Planned Harvest Volume ($m^3$) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Conifer | | | | | | Subtotal | Hardwood | | | | Subtotal | Total |
| | | Conifer | Hardwood | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Net Merchantable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Sub-Total | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Undersize & Defect | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Sub-Total | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | Total | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-13: Planned Harvest Volume by Species (10-year)**

This table summarizes available forecast harvest volume and compares available forecast harvest volume to the planned available harvest volume by conifer and hardwood. The source of information for this table is the long-term management direction and the result of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest units as identified in FMP-2.

**Volume Type:**

Enter the ten year available harvest volume and planned harvest volume for net merchantable volume and undersize and defect volume.

**Ten Year Available Harvest Volume (m3):**

Enter the ten year available harvest volume (in cubic metres) for conifer and hardwood by forest unit. Ensure the available harvest volume matches the harvest volume in the long-term management direction.

**Ten Year Planned Harvest Volume (m3):**

**Conifer:**

Enter the ten-year forecast conifer volume (in cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

**Hardwood:**

Enter the ten-year forecast hardwood volume (in cubic metres) by forest unit and by species.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

## FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year)

| Licensee or Grouping | Planned Harvest Area (ha) | Utilization | Volume Type | Product | Volume by Species (m3) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | Conifer | | | | | | | Hardwood | | | | | Total |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Subtotal | | | | | Subtotal | |
| | | | Net Merchantable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | Undersize & Defect | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Total | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Utilized | Net Merchantable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | Undersize & Defect | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Subtotal | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | Unutilized | Net Merchantable | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | Undersize & Defect | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Subtotal | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Total | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-14: Planned Harvest Volume and Wood Utilization (5-year)**

This table summarizes the volumes that are available for harvest from the planned and surplus harvest areas by species, product and volume type for the five-year term. Planning teams have the option of summarizing the planned harvest area by licensee (or groupings). The table will summarize volume that will be utilized as well as the volume that will not be utilized.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Licensee or Grouping (Optional):**
List the licensees (or groupings) that are expected to conduct harvesting. Where licensees are not known, groupings (e.g., tendered sale areas) shall be indicated. In the case of overlapping licences, all licensees or groupings should be shown. Where the SFL holder is the only licencee, identify the SFL name.

**Planned Harvest Area (ha):**
Enter the amount of planned harvest area (in hectares) that is expected to be harvested by the licensees (or groupings). Where overlapping licensees exist, the area may exceed the planned harvest area shown in FMP-11. Where only one licencee is identified, the area will be consistent with the planned harvest area shown in FMP-11.

**Volume Type:**
For the five-year planned harvest area, identify the net merchantable and undersize or defect volumes.

**Utilization:**
For the five-year planned harvest area, identify the volumes expected to be harvested as Utilized and the available volumes expected to be left standing in the cutover or at roadside as Unutilized. Although this table identifies volumes not expected to be utilized, approval of the plan does not condone wasteful practices.

**Product:**
Enter the anticipated product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, poles, veneer, biofuel, biopharmaceutical, bioenergy) where possible.

**Volume by Species ($m^3$):**
Enter the volume (in cubic metres) by species, product, volume type and utilization. If licensee (or grouping) is used, enter this information by licensee (or grouping). If licensee (or grouping) is used, the column totals in licensee (or grouping) will equal the column totals in the utilized and unutilized part.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-15: Planned Wood Utilization by Mill**

| Mill | Commitment Type | Committed Volume (m3) | Year | Product | Volume by Species (m3) | | | | | | | | | | | | | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | Conifer | | | | | | | Hardwood | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Subtotal | | | | | | Subtotal | |
| **Planned** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | Total | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-15: Planned Wood Utilization by Mill**

This table lists the mills and the anticipated volumes each will utilize from the planned harvest area for the five-year term. Volumes are summarized by species and product type. This table also shows volume commitments to each mill. The source of information for this table is FMP-13 and FMP-14 and a combination of known mill commitments and traditional mill levels previously supplied from the management unit.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Mill:**

List all mills known to be supplied from the management unit. If volume is to be made available on the open market, indicate "Open Market" in the list.

**Commitment Type:**

Enter the type(s) of volume commitment (i.e., supply agreement, memorandum of agreement, minister's directive) that applies to each mill.

**Committed Volume:**

For each commitment type, enter the total volume committed where applicable.

**Year:**

(Optional) Where the mill utilization is expected to change during the five-year term (e.g., new mill is expected to begin full production during the five-year term) enter mill utilization by year (e.g., 2000).

**Product:**

Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer, biofuel, biopharmaceutical, bioenergy) for each mill and year (where possible).

**Volume by Species:**

Enter the planned mill utilization volume ($m^3$) by species by mill, year and product type. Ensure the total volume by species planned is consistent with harvest volume in FMP- 14 (with appropriate modification).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume**

| Forest Unit | Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class | Contingency Harvest Area (ha) | Contingency Harvest Volume ($m^3$) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Conifer | Hardwood | Total |
| | | | | | |
| **Forest Unit Subtotal** | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-16: Contingency Harvest Area and Volume**

Table A summarizes the contingency harvest area and associated volume. The sources of information for this table are the long-term management direction and the results of the harvest selection process.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit as identified in FMP-2.

**Age Class or Stage of Management and Age Class:**

Enter the 20-year age class. Where stage of management is applicable (e.g., shelterwood, commercial thinning), enter stage of management and 20-year age class. Where the forest unit is managed under the selection system, leave this column blank.

**Contingency Harvest Area:**

Enter the contingency harvest area (in hectares, not including reserves) by forest unit and age class. If applicable, enter the contingency harvest area by forest unit, stage of management and age class. Include subtotal by forest units.

**Contingency Harvest Volume:**

**Conifer:**

Enter the conifer volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

**Hardwood:**

Enter the hardwood volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

**Total:**

Enter the total volume (in cubic metres) associated with the contingency harvest area by forest unit.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

## FMP-17: Planned Renewal and Tending Operations

| | Area (ha) Planned (10-Year) | | Area (ha) Planned (5-Year) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Renewal** | **Harvest** | **Natural Disturbance** | **Harvest** | **Natural Disturbance** |
| **Regeneration** | | | | |
| **Natural** | | | | |
| Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged) | | | | |
| Block Cut | | | | |
| Strip Cut | | | | |
| Seed Tree Cut | | | | |
| HARP/HARO/CLAAG | | | | |
| Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged) | | | | |
| Uniform Shelterwood - Seed Cut | | | | |
| Strip Shelterwood - Strip Cut | | | | |
| Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged) | | | | |
| **Subtotal Natural** | | | | |
| **Artificial** | | | | |
| Planting | | | | |
| Seeding | | | | |
| **Subtotal Artificial** | | | | |
| **Total Regeneration** | | | | |
| **Artificial - Retreatment** | | | | |
| Planting | | | | |
| Seeding | | | | |
| **Total Retreatment** | | | | |
| **Artificial - Supplemental** | | | | |
| Planting | | | | |
| Seeding | | | | |
| **Total Supplemental** | | | | |
| **Site Preparation** | | | | |
| Mechanical | | | | |
| Chemical – Aerial | | | | |
| Chemical – Ground | | | | |
| Prescribed Burn – High Complexity | | | | |
| Prescribed Burn – Slash Pile Burn | | | | |
| **Total Site Preparation** | | | | |
| | | | | |
| **Tending** | | | | |
| **Cleaning** | | | | |
| Manual | | | | |
| Mechanical | | | | |
| Chemical – Aerial | | | | |
| Chemical – Ground | | | | |
| Prescribed Burn – High Complexity | | | | |
| **Spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting** | | | | |
| Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged) | | | | |
| Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged) | | | | |
| **Other** | | | | |
| Cultivation | | | | |
| Pruning | | | | |
| **Total Tending** | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## FMP-17: Planned (10-year) and Planned (5-year) Renewal and Tending Operations

This table summarizes the area of renewal (regeneration and site preparation) and tending operations that are planned by disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural) and by treatment method. The source of information for this table is the long term management direction, the selection of silviculture operations and the current forest management plan.

Note: There is no requirement to plan natural regeneration for natural disturbances.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

Enter the area (in hectares) for ten year plan period by renewal and tending treatments.

**Harvest/Natural Disturbance**

Planned silvicultural treatments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance) and enter the area in hectares by treatment method. The treatment of natural disturbances where salvage harvest is completed is included under the natural disturbance columns.

**Renewal**

**Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Retreatment: Enter the area of artificial regeneration associated with retreatment of unsuccessfully regenerated areas by planting and seeding treatments.

Artificial - Supplemental: Enter the area of supplemental artificial regeneration associated with areas where natural regeneration is the primary goal, by planting and seeding treatments.

**Site Preparation:**

Enter the area of site preparation by treatment. Site preparation is the preparation of a seedbed for follow up artificial or natural regeneration and includes scarification. For slash pile burn, enter the net area only.

**Tending**

Enter the area of tending by treatment.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management**

| Road or Road Network Identifier | Plan Start Length (km) | Planned Construction 10 Year | Planned Construction This Term | Use Management | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Maintenance | Monitoring | Access Control | | Future Use Management | |
| | | | | | | Type | Year | Transfer Year | Management Intent |
| **A. Primary** | | | | | | | | | |
| **Subtotal** | | | | | | | | | |
| **B. Branch** | | | | | | | | | |
| **Subtotal** | | | | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | | | | |
| **C. Operational** | | | | | | | | | |
| **Subtotal** | | | | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## FMP-18: Road Construction and Use Management

This table summarizes planned road construction and use management for all primary, branch, and operational roads or operational road networks, for the ten year period and roads which will be constructed in this term. Existing roads that are the responsibility of the licensee are also identified.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Road or Road Network Identifier:**

For each primary, branch and operational road, or network of operational roads, enter the unique name or code by which a road or road network can be identified on the maps, in text, and in the supplementary documentation.

**Plan Start Length:**

For each road, enter the kilometres of existing road at the beginning of the plan period. For new roads, enter ”0”.

**Construction:**

**Planned 10 Year:**:
For each primary and branch road, enter the kilometres of planned construction (10 Year) where applicable.

**Planned This Term:**
For each primary and branch road, enter the kilometres of the planned construction (5 year), where applicable. For operational roads identify if the road will be constructed in this term (yes/no).

**Use Management:**

For each primary, branch and operational road or network of operational roads, complete the following columns.

**Maintenance:**
Provide a brief summary of the maintenance including emergency repairs to water crossings that is likely to occur during the ten-year period.

**Monitoring:**
Provide a schedule of monitoring activities, including monitoring of watercrossings, that is likely to occur during the ten-year period.

**Access Control:**
Type: If applicable, enter the type of access control (under the *Public Lands Act*, any other form of regulation, or forest management planning decision) or access provision that is to be established during the ten-year period.

Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2011/2012) in which access control is to be established during the ten year period.

**Future Use Management:**
Transfer Year: Indicate the expected operating year (e.g., 2016/2017) or five year term (e.g., 2012/2017) in which responsibility for the road or road network is anticipated to be transferred to MNR.

Management Intent: Indicate MNR’s management intent (e.g., MNR maintain, MNR transfer of responsibility to a third party, decommission, or no longer maintain).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____ [ ] Phase 1 (Year 1-5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6-10)

**FMP-19: Road Crossings, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits in Areas of Concern**

**A. Primary Roads, Branch Roads, and Landings**

| AOC Identifier | Road Identifier | Water Crossing | Planned or Existing | | Acceptable Variations | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Location | Conditions on Construction or Use | Location | Conditions on Construction or Use |
| | | | | | | |

**B. Operational Roads, and Landings**

| AOC Identifier | Public Comment | Planned or Existing |
|---|---|---|
| | | Conditions on Location, Construction or Use |
| | | |

**C. Forestry Aggregate Pits**

| AOC Identifier | Planned or Existing |
|---|---|
| | Conditions on Location, Construction or Use |
| | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## FMP-19: Road Crossings, Landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits in Areas of Concern

This table provides information on locations, conditions, use and acceptable variations for primary road, branch road, and operational road crossings of areas of concern, and landings, and Forestry Aggregate Pits in areas of concern. Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Part A: Primary Roads, Branch Roads, and Landings**

**AOC Identifier:**
Enter the individual area of concern identifier.

**Road Identifier:**
Enter the road name or other identifier.

**Water Crossing:**
Enter "yes" if the road crosses a stream.

**Planned or Existing:**
Location: Enter the location identifier for the 100 m wide crossing location.

Conditions on Construction or Use: Enter conditions (e.g., crossing structure, length of culvert, diameter of culvert, construction methods, mitigative measures, timing).

**Acceptable Variations:**
Location: Enter acceptable alternative 100 metre crossing location(s) or restrictions on crossing locations within the 1 kilometre wide corridor.

Conditions on Construction or Use: Enter acceptable variations to conditions (e.g. optional water crossing structures, alternative construction methods, alternative mitigative measures, timing).

**Part B: Operational Roads, and Landings**

**AOC Identifier:**
Enter the individual area of concern identifier.

**Public Comment:**
Enter yes/no if public comments have been received on the crossing.

**Conditions on Location, Construction or Use:**
Enter conditions (e.g., specified water crossings structures and methods of construction, timing restrictions, marking or flagging requirements, notification requirements).

**Part C: Forestry Aggregate Pits**

**AOC Identifier:**
Enter the individual area of concern identifier.

**Conditions on Location, Construction or Use:**
Enter conditions (e.g. timing restrictions).

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____[ ] Phase 1 (Year 1 – 5)
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____ [ ] Phase 2 (Year 6 – 10)

**FMP-20: Planned Expenditures**

| Expenditures | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Activity** | **Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)** | **Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $)** |
| **Natural Regeneration** | | |
| **Artificial Regeneration** | | |
| **Site Preparation** | | |
| **Tending** | | |
| **Renewal Support** | | |
| **Other Eligible Activities** | | |
| **Protection** | | |
| **Total** | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-20: Planned Expenditures (5-year)**

This table summarizes the planned expenditures to be made by activity and funding source for the five-year term. The source of information for this table is the forecast of operations summarized in FMP-17.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and check the applicable Phase box.

**Expenditures:**

Expenditures are estimated by activity and funding source.

**Activity:**

Estimate expenditures by the broad activities listed.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $):**

Enter the estimates of expenditures in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $):**

Enter the estimate of expenditures in thousands of dollars for approved projects only.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:

**Natural Regeneration -**Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.

**Artificial Regeneration -**Activities include tree planting (bareroot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial with site prep.)

**Site Preparation -** Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).

**Tending -** Activities include, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged).

**Renewal Support -** Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (bareroot, container, cuttings and other).

**Other Eligible Activities -** Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated).

**Protection -** Activities include insect pest control.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____

**FMP-21: Area Planned For Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year)**

| Forest Unit | Silvicultural Ground Rule | Projected Forest Unit | Area to be Assessed (ha) |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Harvest** | | | |
| **Salvage Harvest** | | | |
| | | **Forest Unit Subtotal** | |
| | | **Harvest Subtotal** | |
| | | | |
| **Natural Disturbance** | | | |
| | | **Forest Unit Subtotal** | |
| | | **Natural Disturbance Subtotal** | |
| | | **Total** | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**FMP-21: Area Planned For Assessment of Regeneration Success (10-year)**

This table summarizes the area (in hectares) to be assessed for regeneration success during the ten year period of the plan by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule. The source of information for this table is a record of applicable silvicultural ground rules, harvest and natural disturbance and silvicultural treatments. The amount of area to be assessed for success should be consistent with the level of regeneration success required to meet plan objectives and the long-term management direction as well as levels of past disturbance (i.e., harvest and natural).

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name and plan period.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest or natural disturbance.

**Harvest/Natural Disturbance:**

Forecast assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under the salvage harvest.

**Silvicultural Ground Rule:**

Enter the silvicultural ground rule (from FMP-4) that best describes the treatments that were implemented. In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was changed, enter only the final SGR implemented.

**Projected Forest Unit:**

Enter the projected forest unit as described in the silvicultural ground rule (FMP-4).

**Area to be Assessed:**

Enter the forecast area (hectares) to be assessed and subtotal by forest unit.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

1

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... 4**

**1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... 4**
**Phase-In Provisions** ..... 4

**2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS ..... 6**
2.1 Introduction ..... 6
2.2 Amendment Requests ..... 6
2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments ..... 7
2.3 Administrative Amendments ..... 8
2.4 Minor Amendments ..... 9
2.5 Major Amendments ..... 9
2.6 Amendment to the Long-Term Management Direction ..... 10
2.7 Amendment Documentation ..... 11
2.8 Amendment Availability ..... 12

**3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS AND FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS ..... 17**
3.1 Introduction ..... 17
3.2 Contingency Plans ..... 17
3.2.1 Planning Proposal ..... 17
3.2.2 Preparation of a Contingency Plan ..... 18
3.2.2.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan ..... 19
3.2.2.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan ..... 19
Before Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction ..... 20
After Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction ..... 20
3.2.2.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules ..... 20
3.2.2.4 Unscheduled Plan Renewal ..... 21
3.2.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Contingency Plan ..... 21
3.2.4 Contingency Plan Availability ..... 22
3.3 Forest Management Plan Extension ..... 22
3.3.1 Proposal ..... 22
3.3.2 Proposal Review and Approval ..... 24
3.3.3 Preparation of a Plan Extension ..... 24
3.3.3.1 Documentation Requirements ..... 25
3.3.3.2 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension ..... 25
3.3.3.3 Forest Management Plan Extension Availability ..... 26

**4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS ..... 28**
4.1 Introduction ..... 28
4.2 Proposal for Early Plan Renewal ..... 28
4.3 MNR Regional Director Review and Approval ..... 28

**5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... 29**

**6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION ..... 30**
6.1 General ..... 30
6.1.1 Public Notices ..... 30
6.1.2 French Language Services Act ..... 30
6.1.3 Environmental Bill of Rights ..... 30
6.1.4 Issue Resolution ..... 31
6.2 Minor Amendments ..... 31
6.2.1 Public Notice Requirements ..... 31
6.2.2 Information and Maps Available ..... 32
6.3 Major Amendments ..... 32
6.3.1 General ..... 32
6.3.2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ..... 32
6.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements ..... 33
6.3.2.2 Information and Maps Available ..... 33
6.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of Major Amendment ..... 33
6.3.3.1 Public Notice Requirements ..... 34
6.3.3.2 Information and Maps Available ..... 34
6.3.3.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment ..... 34
6.4 Contingency Plans ..... 35
6.4.1 General ..... 35
6.4.1.1 Public Notice Requirements ..... 36
6.4.1.2 Information and Maps Available ..... 36
6.5 Forest Management Plan Extension ..... 36
6.5.1 Public Notice Requirements ..... 36
6.5.2 Information and Maps Available ..... 37

**7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT ..... 38**
7.1 Introduction ..... 38
7.2 Minor Amendments ..... 38
7.3 Major Amendments ..... 38
7.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations ..... 38
7.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of Approved Major Amendment ..... 39
7.4 Contingency Plans ..... 39
7.5 Forest Management Plan Extension ..... 39

# LIST OF FIGURES

**Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page.... 13**
**Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page..... 14**
**Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page..... 15**
**Figure C-4: Long-Term Management Direction Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 16**
**Figure C-5: Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 23**
**Figure C-6: Forest Management Plan Extension - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 27**

# PART C – AMENDMENTS, CONTINGENCY PLANS, FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS, EARLY PLAN RENEWALS, DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS - SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual contains the planning requirements for amendments to forest management plans and contingency plans, contingency plans, forest management plan extensions, early renewals of forest management plans, and delay in approval of operations for the second five-year term.

**Phase-In Provisions**

The requirements of Part C will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, except as follows:

For Part C, Sections 2.0 of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the following phase-in provisions apply. For plan amendments categorized by the MNR District Manager prior to the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2004), except for the following: for plan amendments intended to provide consistency with the *Endangered Species Act*, *2007*, those amendments will be prepared in accordance with this Forest Management Planning Manual.

For plan amendments categorized by the MNR District Manager after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, those amendments will be prepared, to the extent reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0 of this Forest Management Planning Manual. However, table formats should remain consistent with the existing approved forest management plan. The plan author and appropriate MNR staff will assess the specific circumstances for the management unit, and with concurrence of MNR District Manager, will implement the phase-in provisions in a reasonable and practical manner. Phase-in provisions will be documented in the amendment request.

For Part C, Sections 3.1 and 3.2 of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the following phase-in provisions apply. If a planning proposal for a contingency plan has been provided to the Ministry of the Environment for endorsement prior to the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, the contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the FMPM (2004). For contingency plans proposed after the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, those contingency plans will be prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 3.0 of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

For Part C, Sections 6.1 to 6.4 and 7.1 to 7.4, the following phase-in provisions apply. Prior to the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, if the MNR District Manager has categorized an amendment or if a planning proposal for a contingency plan has been provided to the Ministry of the Environment for endorsement, the requirements regarding public consultation and Aboriginal involvement of Part C, Sections 6.1 to 6.4 and 7.1 to 7.4 of the FMPM (2004) will apply.

# 2.0 PLAN AMENDMENTS

## 2.1 Introduction

An amendment will be prepared for changes to a forest management plan or contingency plan. Part D, Section 3.5 identifies specific circumstances when changes during annual work schedule implementation do not require an amendment.

An amendment to a forest management plan will be consistent with the long-term management direction for the management unit. However, if there has been a change to legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g. *Endangered Species Act, 2007*), the Director of Forest Management Branch, Ministry of Natural Resources, may require an amendment to the long-term management direction prior to the forest management plan renewal date. An amendment to the long-term management direction will be approved by the MNR Regional Director. Figure C-4 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an amendment which includes changes to the long-term management direction.

An amendment to a contingency plan will be consistent with the planning proposal for the contingency plan previously endorsed by the Ministry of the Environment (Part C, Section 3.2.1).

The plan author will prepare and certify an amendment, and submit the amendment to MNR in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and Forest Information Manual. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to forest management plans. In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author.

The planning requirements for any amendment will depend on the nature of the proposed changes, but will normally involve the same technical planning requirements as would be required in the preparation of a forest management plan. However, the MNR review and approval requirements, and the opportunities for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, will differ dependent on the category of amendment.

## 2.2 Amendment Requests

Any person can request an amendment by submitting a written request to the MNR District Manager. The amendment request will contain the following information:

(a) a brief description of the need for, and nature of, the proposed amendment;
(b) the rationale for the proposed amendment and a discussion of its significance; and
(c) if new operations are proposed:

(i) a brief description of the proposed operations, and a description of the previously approved operations in the forest management plan or contingency plan which will be changed by the proposed amendment; and

(ii) an outline of the applicable planning requirements for the proposed operations, including public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, based on the planning requirements for similar operations in a forest management plan.

### 2.2.1 Review of Amendment Requests and Categorization of Amendments

The MNR District Manager, in consultation with the plan author and the local citizens committee, will decide if preparation of the proposed amendment should proceed, and the appropriate categorization of the amendment as administrative, minor or major. The MNR District Manager's decision, at a minimum, will consider the following factors:

(a) the amount of planning and public consultation and Aboriginal involvement required for the proposed amendment;

(b) whether there are legitimate time constraints which must be met for reasons of public safety, biological or industrial necessity, or public convenience and necessity;

(c) requests of a similar nature;

(d) the adequacy and relevancy of information available at the time of the request on natural resource features, land uses and values potentially affected;

(e) the anticipated potential effects of the proposed operations; and

(f) to provide protection for species at risk under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*.

When the MNR District Manager has made a preliminary determination that an amendment should be categorized as administrative, and the local citizens committee is not readily available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment, the MNR District Manager may instead consult the chair of the local citizens committee, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

If an amendment is proposed to provide protection to a species at risk under the *Endangered Species Act*, *2007* the MNR District Manager will act expeditiously to categorize the amendment to implement the protection for species at risk and to facilitate the continuation of operations. The amendment will normally be categorized as administrative. If an amendment is required to permit salvage harvest operations as a result of a natural disturbance, the MNR District Manager, in consultation with the local citizens committee, will categorize the amendment to facilitate the expeditious planning and implementation of salvage harvest operations to avoid waste of merchantable wood. If the local citizens committee is not readily available for consultation on the categorization of the amendment in the situations described above, the MNR District Manager may consult the chair of the local citizens committee, or his/her alternate, for the purpose of deciding on the categorization of the amendment.

The decision on the amendment request and the appropriate category of amendment will normally be made within 15 days of receipt of the request. The MNR District Manager will prepare a written decision, and if the local citizens committee disagrees with the categorization of the amendment, the MNR District Manager will record the nature of that disagreement in that written decision. The decision will be provided to the amendment requestor, the local citizens committee and the sustainable forest licensee. If the decision is to proceed with the amendment, the plan author will prepare and submit the amendment.

An amendment to provide protection for a species at risk must be prepared with the assistance of the Species at Risk Biologist. Amendments must be informed in part by the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction. Each species at risk may trigger different and unique concerns under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007,* and will be considered on a case by case basis.

## 2.3 Administrative Amendments

If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that a proposed amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is administrative, the necessary planning will be completed, the amendment prepared and the amendment will be certified by the plan author responsible for the preparation of the administrative amendment, and submitted to MNR.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will undertake an internal review of the administrative amendment. This review may recommend approval of the administrative amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. The MNR District Manager will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the administrative amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNR District Manager, as per the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The MNR District Manager or MNR Area Supervisor will certify and approve the administrative amendment. Figure C-1 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an administrative amendment. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to forest management plans. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

There are no formal public consultation requirements for the preparation of an administrative amendment. The approved administrative amendment will be available to the public (Part C, Section 2.8).

## 2.4 Minor Amendments

If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is minor, the public consultation requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.2 and 7.2 will apply. The amendment will be prepared in consultation with interested and affected persons and organizations, certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the minor amendment, and submitted to MNR.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will undertake an internal review of the minor amendment. This review may recommend approval of the minor amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. The MNR District Manager will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the minor amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNR District Manager, as per the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The MNR District Manager will certify and approve the minor amendment. Figure C-2 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a minor amendment. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to forest management plans. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee. The approved minor amendment will be available for public inspection (Part C, Section 2.8).

## 2.5 Major Amendments

If the MNR District Manager in consultation with the local citizens committee decides that the amendment should proceed, and that the appropriate category of amendment is major, the amendment will be prepared with the participation of interested and affected persons and organizations.

As described in Part C, Sections 6.3 and 7.3, formal opportunities for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment.

After Stage One of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement during the preparation of the proposed major amendment, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.2 and 7.3.1, the major amendment will be prepared. The major amendment will be certified by the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the major amendment, and submitted to MNR.

Staff from the appropriate MNR region and area or district offices will undertake an internal review of the major amendment, in accordance with the same procedure as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.4.4), with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances. This review may recommend approval of the major

amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. The MNR District Manager will forward the required alterations to the plan author.
After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the major amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNR District Manager, as per the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The MNR District Manager will certify and recommend the major amendment for approval by the MNR Regional Director, in accordance with the same procedure as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5.4), with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.

After approval by the MNR Regional Director, the MNR-approved major amendment is available for inspection at Stage Two of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, as described in Part C, Sections 6.3.3 and 7.3.2. Figure C-3 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a major amendment. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to forest management plans. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will prepare a brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the major amendment, in the form of an SEV consideration document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the major amendment when it is submitted to the MNR Regional Director for approval.

## 2.6 Amendment to the Long-Term Management Direction

If there is a change to legislation (e.g. *Endangered Species Act, 2007* or regulations thereunder), the Director of Forest Management Branch, Ministry of Natural Resources, may require an amendment to the long-term management direction of a forest management plan or contingency plan.

For amendments to the long-term management direction, to facilitate changes to the access, harvest, renewal and tending areas in the plan as the result of change to legislation, the MNR District Manager will act expeditiously to categorize the amendment to implement the protection for species at risk and to facilitate the continuation of operations.

The necessary planning will be completed and the amendment will be prepared, including the certification of the amendment, by the plan author responsible for the preparation of the amendment, and submitted to MNR.

Staff from the appropriate MNR regional and area or district office will undertake an internal review of the amendment. This review may recommend approval of the amendment as submitted, or identify required alterations and the reasons for them. The MNR District Manager will forward the required alterations to the plan author.

After satisfactory completion of the required alterations to the amendment, the plan author will certify and submit the amendment to the MNR District Manager, as per the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The amendment to the long-term management direction will be certified and recommended for approval by the MNR District Manager and approved by the MNR Regional Director. Figure C-4 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for an amendment which includes changes to the long-term management direction. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted amendments to forest management plans. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will prepare a brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the amendment to the long-term management direction, in the form of an SEV consideration document. The SEV consideration document will accompany the amendment to the long-term management direction when it is submitted to the MNR Regional Director for approval.

## 2.7 Amendment Documentation

Applicable documentation requirements for a forest management plan (Part B) will apply to the preparation of an amendment to a forest management plan or contingency plan. Documentation requirements for an amendment will include:

- (a) a title, certification and approval page;
- (b) amendment request;
- (c) MNR District Manager decision on classification and decision to proceed, including any comments from the local citizens committee and MNR District Manager rationale;
- (d) amended text; and if applicable,
  - (i) amended tables;
  - (ii) supplementary documentation; and
  - (iii) information products (e.g. maps).
- (e) comments from the local citizens committee, if applicable; and
- (f) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation, Aboriginal involvement and issue resolution, if applicable.

If applicable, information products associated with planned operations will be submitted with the amendment, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an amendment, those people will certify the parts of the amendment that they prepared, similar to a forest management plan (Part B, Figure B-1B).

If applicable, a List of Exceptions will be prepared, in the same format as for a forest management plan (Part B, Figure B-2), to identify prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides.
For a major amendment and an amendment to the long-term management direction, an SEV consideration document will be prepared by staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office, and will accompany the amendment when it is submitted to the MNR Regional Director for approval.

## 2.8 Amendment Availability

All approved amendments will form part of, and will be available with, the approved forest management plan at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centres in the appropriate communities of the MNR regional, district and/or area offices, and Toronto provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the amendment.

An up-to-date list of all approved amendments will also be available on the MNR website with the approved forest management plan. The list will include:

(a) the amendment number;
(b) the reason for the amendment;
(c) the amendment category; and
(d) the amendment approval date.

**Figure C-1: Administrative Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

Amendment #:

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

I hereby confirm that this Administrative Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: _____ _____
[if applicable] [date]

I hereby certify that this Administrative Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

_____ _____ _____
[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I approve this Administrative Amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that this Administrative Amendment has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this Administrative Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:

_____ _____
[MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:_____

**Figure C-2: Minor Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

| Amendment #: |
|---|
| |

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

I hereby confirm that this Minor Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: _____ _____
[if applicable] [date]

I hereby certify that this Minor Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

_____ _____ _____
[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I approve this Minor Amendment for implementation and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that this Minor Amendment has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this Minor Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Approved by:

_____ _____
[MNR District Manager] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:_____

**Figure C-3: Major Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

Amendment #:

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

I hereby confirm that this Major Amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: _____ _____
[if applicable] [date]

I hereby certify that this Major Amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

_____ _____ _____
[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I recommend that this Major Amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that this Major Amendment has been prepared using the forest management guides. In this Major Amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

_____ _____
[MNR District Manager] [date]

Approved by:

_____ _____
[MNR Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:_____

**Figure C-4: Long-Term Management Direction Amendment - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

Amendment #:

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the 10-year period from April 1, _____ to March 31, _____

I hereby confirm that this amendment has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

Prepared by: _____ _____
[if applicable] [date]

I hereby certify that this amendment has been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

_____ _____ _____
[R.P.F. seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I recommend that this amendment be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that this amendment has been prepared using the forest management guides. In this amendment, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

_____ _____
[MNR District Manager] [date]

Approved by:

_____ _____
[MNR Regional Director] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier:_____

# 3.0 CONTINGENCY PLANS AND FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSIONS

## 3.1 Introduction

A contingency plan is an interim forest management plan that is required when circumstances affect the implementation of a forest management plan. These circumstances are described in Part C, Section 3.2.2. The contingency plan will permit the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current forest management plan and the approval for implementation of the new forest management plan.

When a situation arises that requires a contingency plan, the MNR District Manager will notify the MNR Regional Director, and the Manager of MNR's Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch. Prior to preparing the contingency plan, a planning proposal must be endorsed by the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

A forest management plan extension is an extension of the period of the current forest management plan prepared under the Forest Management Planning Manual (1996) for up to two years. The circumstances are described in Part C, Section 3.3. The plan extension will permit a more complete implementation of the current forest management plan.

## 3.2 Contingency Plans

### 3.2.1 Planning Proposal

To initiate the planning process for a contingency plan, a planning proposal for a contingency plan will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with staff from the MNR District and Regional office and MNR's Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch.

The planning proposal will include:

(a) the name of the management unit;
(b) the reason for the contingency plan;
(c) the term of the contingency plan;
(d) an outline of the documentation requirements for the contingency plan, including supplementary documentation;
(e) a description of the consultation that has occurred to date, and provisions for additional public consultation and Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of the contingency plan;
(f) the schedule for the production, review and approval of the contingency plan;
(g) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the local citizens committee;
(h) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by operations that may be proposed in the contingency plan;

(i) major issues to be considered in the preparation of the contingency plan, if any;
(j) the effect on the planning schedule for the forest management plan;
(k) the coordination of the interrelationships between the forest management plan, the contingency plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
(l) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director.

Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNR Regional Director, it will be submitted to the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for endorsement. The planning proposal will be accompanied by a covering letter from the MNR Regional Director, including the requested timeframe for endorsement, to the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

The planning proposal will be submitted to the Director of the Environmental Assessment Branch, Ministry of the Environment, within a sufficient time period to permit the preparation, review and approval of the contingency plan by the required implementation date. The time period will depend on the circumstances surrounding the need for the contingency plan.

The Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment may require the MNR Regional Director to submit additional information related to the planning proposal prior to determining whether to endorse the planning proposal. The Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment will normally make a decision on endorsement of the planning proposal within 30 days of receipt of all necessary information.

Upon an endorsement of the planning proposal by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, production of the contingency plan will proceed.

### 3.2.2 Preparation of a Contingency Plan

The contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with the planning proposal endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment and the requirements in this section. The contingency plan will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a planning team and a local citizens committee. Contingency plans must be informed in part by the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction. Each species at risk may trigger different and unique concerns under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007,* and will be considered on a case by case basis.

The contingency plan will normally be prepared for a minimum term of 12 months. In addition to the documentation requirements identified in the endorsed planning proposal, contingency plan documentation will include:

(a) a title, certification and approval page;
(b) the planning proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;
(c) comments from the local citizens committee; and
(d) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation, Aboriginal involvement and issue resolution.

The requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement for contingency plans are described in Part C, Sections 6.4 and 7.4.

A brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the contingency plan must be included, in the form of an SEV consideration document.

#### 3.2.2.1 Delay in Approval of a Forest Management Plan

A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the approval of a forest management plan (i.e. after Stage Four of Phase I consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a short-term plan and enables the implementation of operations until the forest management plan is approved for implementation.

The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations in non-contentious areas from the draft forest management plan and may also include areas from the current forest management plan that have not yet been harvested, renewed or tended. Non-contentious areas will be determined based on comments received from the public and Aboriginal communities during the preparation and review of the draft forest management plan.

#### 3.2.2.2 Delay in Preparation of a Forest Management Plan

A contingency plan may be required when there is a delay in the preparation of a forest management plan (i.e. prior to Stage Four of Phase I consultation). This type of contingency plan is normally a one or two-year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the forest management plan is prepared and approved for implementation. The appropriate planning, public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

Before Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment before the MNR Regional Director's preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan, the contingency plan will be consistent with the long-term management direction in the current forest management plan. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current forest management plan that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and additional areas if required.

If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current forest management plan, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If additional area is required, operations will be planned in a manner that is consistent with the long-term management direction (or strategic direction) of the current forest management plan, and the public consultation and Aboriginal involvement described in the endorsed planning proposal. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

After Endorsement of Long-Term Management Direction

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment after the MNR Regional Director's preliminary endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan, the contingency plan will be consistent with that long-term management direction. The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the current forest management plan that have not yet been implemented, including contingency area, and additional areas if required.

If sufficient area is available for the contingency plan in the current forest management plan, and operations in those areas is consistent with the long-term management direction, the contingency plan will incorporate those areas, and no further planning of operations is required. If additional area is required, the contingency plan will normally incorporate non-contentious areas that have been identified during the development of the long-term management direction, and reviewed by the public and Aboriginal communities at Stage Two or Stage Three of Phase I consultation. The planning of operations for the additional area will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

### 3.2.2.3 Adjustment to Forest Management Planning Schedules

A contingency plan may be required when there is a rescheduling of the preparation of a forest management plan to balance the number of plans prepared in any particular year, or to accommodate management unit amalgamations. This type of contingency plan is normally a

one or two-year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the forest management plan is prepared and approved for implementation. The appropriate planning, public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment before the MNR Regional Director's endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan, the contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with Part C, Section 3.2.2.2.

If the planning proposal is endorsed by the Director of the Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment after the MNR Regional Director's endorsement of the long-term management direction for the forest management plan, the contingency plan will be prepared in accordance with Part C, Section 3.2.2.2.

#### 3.2.2.4 Unscheduled Plan Renewal

A contingency plan may be required if the MNR Regional Director endorses a year three management unit annual report that does not support the continuation of the long-term management direction of the current forest management plan (Part E, Section 3.0). This type of contingency plan is normally a three-year plan and enables the implementation of operations until the forest management plan is prepared and approved for implementation. The appropriate planning, public consultation and Aboriginal involvement, as described in the endorsed planning proposal, will be conducted.

The contingency plan will normally incorporate operations from the first five-year term of the current forest management plan that have not yet been implemented, and area selected from contingency area and/or the area identified for operations for the second five-year term. Areas will be selected consistent with the adjustments recommended in the year three annual report related to the long-term management direction of the current forest management plan. The planning of operations will be undertaken in accordance with the applicable planning and documentation requirements of Part A, Section 1.3 and Part B, Section 4.0.

### 3.2.3 Submission, Review and Approval of the Contingency Plan

The contingency plan will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by appropriate MNR staff, including regional staff, in a manner similar to the review of a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.4), as described in the endorsed planning proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNR review, the contingency plan will be certified and recommended for approval by the MNR District Manager, in accordance with the same requirements as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5.4). Figure C-5 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a contingency plan. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages

associated with electronically submitted contingency plan. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

#### 3.2.4 Contingency Plan Availability

The approved contingency plan will be available to the public at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centres in the appropriate communities of the MNR regional, district and/or area offices, and Toronto provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the contingency plan.

### 3.3 Forest Management Plan Extension

A forest management plan extension is an extension of the period of the current forest management plan prepared under the Forest Management Planning Manual (1996) for one or two years. The plan extension will permit a more complete implementation of the current forest management plan.

#### 3.3.1 Proposal

An extension to a forest management plan may be permitted:

(a) to provide for the implementation of requirements for the protection of species at risk under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*;
(b) to provide for the implementation of new policy (e.g. direction on landscape pattern); and
(c) to provide the opportunity to complete operations approved in the current forest management plan.

To be eligible for a plan extension there must be sufficient available harvest area that will not be completed by the end of the current plan to provide for at least one year of operations. The five-year available harvest area for the current forest management plan will not be exceeded.

Prior to submitting a proposal for a forest management plan extension the sustainable forest licensee will write a letter to each licensed resource-based tourism operator or other affected person in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or uses may be affected by the production and implementation of this forest management plan extension.

**Figure C-5: Contingency Plan - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

CONTINGENCY PLAN
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the period from _____ to _____

I hereby certify that I have prepared this Contingency Plan, including the silvicultural ground rules, to the best of my professional skill and judgement, with the assistance of an interdisciplinary planning team, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

| _____ | _____ | _____ |
|---|---|---|
| [R.P.F. seal] | [Plan Author] | [date] |

| Submitted by: | _____ | _____ |
|---|---|---|
| (where applicable) | [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR] | [date] |

I recommend that this Contingency Plan be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, the Forest Information Manual, and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that this Contingency Plan has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this Contingency Plan, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

| _____ | _____ |
|---|---|
| [MNR District Manager] | [date] |

Approved by:

| _____ | _____ |
|---|---|
| [MNR Regional Director] | [date] |

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: _____

The proposal will include:

(a) the name of the management unit;
(b) the reason for the plan extension;
(c) the period of the plan extension;
(d) a discussion of planning implications for the new forest management plan, including;
  (i) identification of the forest management planning manual to be used for the preparation of the long-term management direction;
  (ii) identification of how the requirements of the applicable guide(s) relating to natural disturbance pattern will be incorporated; and
  (iii) the schedule of plan preparation;
(e) an outline of the documentation requirements for the plan extension, including supplementary documentation;
(f) a map of the operations which will be carried forward in the plan extension;
(g) a description of public consultation and Aboriginal involvement;
(h) the comments and recommendations, if any, from the local citizens committee;
(i) the identification of other resource users or uses potentially affected by the plan extension;
(j) the effect on the planning schedule for the new forest management plan;
(k) the coordination of the interrelationships between the forest management plan, the annual work schedule(s), and management unit annual reports; and
(l) a title and approval page, signed by the plan author, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director.

### 3.3.2 Proposal Review and Approval

The MNR District and Regional staff will review the proposal to determine whether to proceed with the preparation the forest management plan extension. If MNR concurs with the proposal, the MNR District Manager will recommend the proposal for approval and the MNR Regional Director will review the proposal. The MNR Regional Director will notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Manager, Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch, once the proposal is approved.

Upon approval of the planning proposal by the MNR Regional Director, the documentation for the extension of the forest management plan will be prepared.

### 3.3.3 Preparation of a Plan Extension

The plan extension will be prepared in accordance with the proposal approved by the MNR Regional Director. The plan extension will be prepared by a plan author, who will be a registered professional forester, assisted by a planning team and a local citizens committee.

The plan extension will be prepared for a minimum term of one year. The plan extension will incorporate operations from the current forest management plan that have not been completed. Forest management plan extensions must be informed in part by the *Endangered Species Act, 2007*, including any applicable habitat regulations and relevant policy direction. Each species at risk may trigger different and unique concerns under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007,* and will be considered on a case by case basis.

The requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement for plan extensions are described in Part C, Sections 6.5 and 7.5.

#### 3.3.3.1 Documentation Requirements

In addition to the documentation requirements identified in the approved proposal, the plan extension documentation will include:

(a) a title, certification and approval page;
(b) the proposal, as part of the supplementary documentation;
(c) a statement that the current forest management plan (date) will be extended and that it will remain in force for the term of the extension;
(d) a description of the area of operations that will be available during the extension period;
(e) a map of the harvest area which will be carried forward in the plan extension;
(f) documentation from stakeholders or other users that the sustainable forest licensee had agreements with stating their support for the plan extension;
(g) comments from the local citizens committee; and
(h) a summary of the results of formal consultation, including public consultation, Aboriginal involvement and issue resolution.

#### 3.3.3.2 Submission, Review and Approval of the Forest Management Plan Extension

The forest management plan extension will be certified by the plan author and submitted for review by appropriate MNR staff, including regional staff, in a manner similar to the review of a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.4), as described in the endorsed proposal. Upon satisfactory completion of changes in response to the MNR review, the forest management plan extension will be certified and recommended for approval by the MNR District Manager, in accordance with the same requirements as for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 1.5.4). Figure C-6 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a Forest Management Plan Extension. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted plan extension. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

#### 3.3.3.3 Forest Management Plan Extension Availability

The approved forest management plan and extension will be available to the public at:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
(d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

**Figure C-6: Forest Management Plan Extension - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN EXTENSION
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the period from _____ to _____

I hereby certify that this Forest Management Plan Extension has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| _____ | _____ | _____ |
| [R.P.F. seal] | [Plan Author] | [date] |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Submitted by: | _____ | _____ |
| (where applicable) | [Senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR] | [date] |

I recommend that this Forest Management Plan Extension be approved for implementation, and certify that it has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and relevant policies and obligations (including any relevant MNR agreements with Aboriginal peoples). I also certify that this Forest Management Plan Extension has been prepared using the applicable forest management guides. In this Forest Management Plan Extension, prescriptions that differ from specific direction or recommendations in the applicable forest management guides are identified in the attached List of Exceptions.

Certified and Recommended for Approval by:

| | |
|---|---|
| _____ | _____ |
| [MNR District Manager] | [date] |

Approved by:

| | |
|---|---|
| _____ | _____ |
| [MNR Regional Director] | [date] |

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: _____

# 4.0 EARLY PLAN RENEWALS

## 4.1 Introduction

At any time during the implementation of a forest management plan, there may be circumstances which warrant preparation of a new forest management plan prior to the scheduled date.

## 4.2 Proposal for Early Plan Renewal

If preparation of a new forest management plan is warranted, a proposal will be prepared by the sustainable forest licensee, in conjunction with staff from the MNR District and MNR Regional office and submitted to the MNR Regional Director.

The proposal will contain the following information:

(a) the name of the management unit;
(b) the period for the current forest management plan and the proposed implementation date for the new plan;
(c) a description of the circumstances and rationale for the preparation of a new forest management plan;
(d) a discussion of additional planning that may be required (e.g., an amendment to the current forest management plan, a contingency plan); and
(e) the comments or recommendations, if any, from the local citizens committee.

## 4.3 MNR Regional Director Review and Approval

The MNR Regional Director will review the proposal, determine whether to proceed with the preparation of a new forest management plan, and notify the sustainable forest licensee, the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Manager, Forest Management Planning Section, Forest Management Branch.

# 5.0 DELAY IN APPROVAL OF OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

When there is a delay in the approval of the planned operations for the second five-year term, the first annual work schedule for the second five-year term may be prepared from the approved operations and contingency area in the current approved forest management plan. An amendment to the forest management plan will be required in order to include contingency area in the annual work schedule (Part A, Section 1.3.3.2). Alternatively, a contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2) may be prepared to provide continuation of operations in circumstances where operations from the second-five year term are proposed.

When the operations for the second five-year term are approved for implementation, the annual work schedule will be revised in accordance with Part D, Section 3.5.1, if any approved operations from the second five-year term will be scheduled within the annual work schedule.

If contingency area is included in the year six annual work schedule, the sustainable forest licensee will ensure that the planned harvest area for the ten-year period of the forest management plan does not exceed the available harvest area. If planned harvest area equivalent to the contingency area is not removed from the planned operations for the second five-year term prior to their approval, an amendment to the forest management plan will be required.

# 6.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

## 6.1 General

### 6.1.1 Public Notices

Public notices are required for minor and major amendments, contingency plans and forest management plan extensions. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, normally by the MNR District Manager. Media notices will be provided in advertisements in the local media.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

Each public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the location of the management unit;
(c) describe the subject matter of the amendment, contingency plan and plan extension;
(d) identify when and where information will be available; and
(e) include the name of a contact person(s).

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of public consultation for minor amendments, major amendments, contingency plans and forest management plan extensions are described in Part C, Sections 6.2, 6.3, 6.4 and 6.5.

### 6.1.2 French Language Services Act

The *French Language Services Act,* as amended from time to time, will govern the public consultation requirements for minor amendments, major amendments contingency plans and plan extensions in designated areas under the act. The *French Language Services Act* requirements for public consultation for forest management plans (Part A, Section 3.3.2.4) will apply.

### 6.1.3 Environmental Bill of Rights

Under the provisions of the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental

Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued for each stage of public consultation for a major amendment or a contingency plan.

For a major amendment, a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued at Stage One of public consultation. At Stage Two, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry.

For a contingency plan a Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry when the public notice is issued to advise the public of an opportunity to inspect the MNR-approved contingency plan (Part C, Section 6.4).

MNR's guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.

#### 6.1.4 Issue Resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of a minor or major amendment, or a contingency plan, the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1 will apply, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances (e.g., the specified schedule for issue resolution may be compressed).

### 6.2 Minor Amendments

One formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a minor amendment. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the proposed operations that the minor amendment has been accepted by the MNR District Manager and to invite the public to review the minor amendment.

#### 6.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

A public notice will be issued at least 15 days prior to approval and implementation of the minor amendment. Direct written notices will be issued to persons and organizations who have identified themselves as having an interest in, or who are known to be directly affected by the operations, which are proposed in the minor amendment.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within 15 days (to advise the public when comments are due, a specific date will be provided);
(b) a statement that further public consultation may be required if concerns are raised;
(c) a statement that the minor amendment will receive MNR approval (by a specific date) if no concerns are raised;
(d) an explanation of how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*; and
(e) a description of the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4).

#### 6.2.2 Information and Maps Available

The minor amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centres in the appropriate communities of the MNR regional, district and/or area offices, and Toronto provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the minor amendment.

### 6.3 Major Amendments

#### 6.3.1 General

Formal consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of a major amendment. A public notice will be issued for each stage of consultation.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, including those persons who are known to be directly affected by the operations, which are proposed in the major amendment.

#### 6.3.2 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

Stage One of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to an information centre. This information centre will be held as part of the detailed planning of operations for the major amendment. The public notice will normally be issued at least 30 days before the information centre.

The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is:

(a) for the public to review and comment on proposed operations for the major amendment, including:

(i) the proposed areas for harvest, renewal and tending operations;
(ii) the proposed corridor for each primary and branch road, if any, and proposed road locations/conditions; and

(b) to request additional contributions to the background information to be used in planning.

#### 6.3.2.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will:

(a) notify the public that comments are due by a specific date (30-day comment period);
(b) explain how comments will be handled under relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*;
(c) identify the opportunity for resolution of issues (Part C, Section 6.1.4); and
(d) include the names of the MNR, sustainable forest licensee, and local citizens committee contacts.

For each stage of public consultation that involves an information centre, a supplemental notice may be issued approximately seven days in advance to remind the public and Aboriginal communities of the information centre.

The plan author, members of the planning team and representatives from the local citizens committee will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

#### 6.3.2.2 Information and Maps Available

Information and maps available for public review at the information centre will be comparable to the information and maps available at Phase II: Stage One for a forest management plan (Part A, Section 3.3.4), with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.

### 6.3.3 Stage Two – Inspection of Major Amendment

Stage Two of public consultation will begin by issuing a public notice which invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved major amendment. The public notice will be issued upon approval of the major amendment by the MNR Regional Director.

#### 6.3.3.1 Public Notice Requirements

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.1.1, the notice will advise the public that there is an opportunity to make a written request by a specific date (30-day period) to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the major amendment (Part C, Section 6.3.3.3).

#### 6.3.3.2 Information and Maps Available

The MNR-approved major amendment will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centres in the appropriate communities of the MNR regional, district and/or area offices, and Toronto provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the major amendment.

#### 6.3.3.3 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

The opportunity to make a request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment applies to major amendments to forest management plans. For any request for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in a major amendment, the following process will apply:

1. There is a 30-day period following the public notice which invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved major amendment, for any person to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the major amendment.

2. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment shall notify the plan author, the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally have 15 days to respond to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment on the request.
3. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 30 days of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director may require MNR to submit additional necessary information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the documentation submitted by MNR.

4. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment has not decided on the request within 30 days of receipt of all necessary

information, the Director shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe for a decision to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager, the plan author and the person requesting an individual environmental assessment.

5. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.

6. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Director does not require an individual environmental assessment, the Director shall give written notice to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager, the plan author and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment that the request has been denied, with reasons.

If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment, the Director shall give written notice to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager, the plan author and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and approval under the Environmental Assessment Act. The specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are the subject of the individual environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment. Where the Director has given written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the management unit that are not the subject of the individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

## 6.4 Contingency Plans

### 6.4.1 General

The public consultation provisions for the preparation of a contingency plan will be described in the endorsed planning proposal. The public consultation provisions will be consistent with the requirements for a forest management plan, and may vary having regard for the extent of public consultation to date on the proposed operations. A minimum of one formal opportunity will be provided for public consultation on a contingency plan. For example, a contingency plan required when there is a delay in the approval of a forest management plan will have completed draft plan review (i.e. Stage Four of Phase I consultation). Public inspection

requirements similar to Stage Five of Phase I consultation (Part A, Section 3.3.3.5) will apply, with appropriate modifications (e.g. the timeframe for public inspection may be compressed). For contingency plans prepared for other reasons, the extent of public consultation to date in the preparation of the forest management plan will determine the required public consultation.

#### 6.4.1.1 Public Notice Requirements

Public notice requirements will be consistent with similar stages for a forest management plan, with appropriate modifications (e.g. the timeframe for notices may be compressed (15 days)).

#### 6.4.1.2 Information and Maps Available

The contingency plan will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centres in the appropriate communities of the MNR regional, district and/or area offices, and Toronto provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the contingency plan.

## 6.5 Forest Management Plan Extension

Upon approval of the forest management plan extension, the District Manager will issue a public notice to advise the public that the approved forest management plan extension is available for inspection. The notice will normally be issued at least 90 days before operations are scheduled to commence to provide time for the submission, review, approval and public inspection of the annual work schedule.

### 6.5.1 Public Notice Requirements

A direct written notice (Part C, Section 6.1.1) will be provided to persons who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the term of the forest management plan extension, and in particular those persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in specific areas. Reasonable efforts will be made to identify those persons who may be directly affected, including examination of registered traplines and mining activity within the areas scheduled for operations.

The public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify where the forest management plan will be available for inspection;
(c) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit; and

(d) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

### 6.5.2 Information and Maps Available

The approved forest management plan extension, approved forest management plan, and the forest management plan summary will be available at the following locations when the public notice is issued:

(a) the appropriate MNR district or area office;
(b) the office of the sustainable forest licensee;
(c) the appropriate MNR regional office; and
(d) a location in Toronto provided by MNR.

# 7.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT

## 7.1 Introduction

This section describes the consideration of Aboriginal interests, through the involvement of Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the production and implementation of a plan amendment or a contingency plan.

In those cases where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, and contains provisions for a plan amendment or a contingency plan, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to section 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.

For each notice required for a plan amendment or a contingency plan, a direct written notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and if requested at the time of the last forest management plan, in the Aboriginal language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications in the Aboriginal media.

## 7.2 Minor Amendments

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 6.2 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

## 7.3 Major Amendments

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Sections 6.1.1 and 6.3 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

### 7.3.1 Stage One – Information Centre: Review of Proposed Operations

The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community; provide the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values related to the proposed operations; and enquire whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.2, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) the time and location of the special information centre; and
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the proposed operations in the major amendment, and the preliminary Report on Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values related to the proposed operations.

A supplemental notice may be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

#### 7.3.2 Stage Two – Inspection of Approved Major Amendment

The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to provide a final Report on the Protection of Identified Aboriginal Values related to the operations in the MNR-approved major amendment.

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.3.3 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

### 7.4 Contingency Plans

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.4.1 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

The planning proposal for the contingency plan will describe any additional requirements for Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of the contingency plan (Part C, Section 3.2). If the planning proposal for the contingency plan includes provisions for an information centre(s), the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.

### 7.5 Forest Management Plan Extension

The public notice requirements described in Part C, Section 6.5.1 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

The planning proposal for the forest management plan extension will describe any additional requirements for Aboriginal involvement in the preparation of the forest management plan extension (Part C, Section 3.3). If the planning proposal for the forest management plan extension includes provisions for an information centre(s), the MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS ..... 4**

**1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... 4**

**Phase-in Provisions** ..... 4

**2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS ..... 5**

Silvicultural Ground Rules ..... 5

Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ..... 6

Conditions on Regular Operations ..... 6

Annual Work Schedules ..... 6

Annual Reports ..... 7

**3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE ..... 8**

3.1 Introduction ..... 8

3.2 Text Content Requirements ..... 8

3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 8

3.2.2 Introduction ..... 8

3.2.3 Harvest ..... 10

3.2.4 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection) ..... 10

3.2.5 Roads ..... 11

3.2.5.1 Water Crossing Construction ..... 11

Annual Work Schedule for the Year Prior to Construction ..... 11

Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction ..... 11

3.2.5.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern ..... 12

3.2.5.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning ..... 12

3.2.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 13

3.2.6 Fire Prevention and Preparedness ..... 13

3.2.7 Monitoring and Assessment ..... 13

3.2.8 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map ..... 13

3.3 Information Products ..... 14

3.3.1 Harvest Area ..... 14

3.3.2 Renewal and Maintenance ..... 15

3.3.3 Roads ..... 15

3.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 16

3.4 Submission, MNR Review and Approval of the Annual Work Schedule ..... 17

3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation ..... 18

3.5.1 Revisions ..... 18

3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments ..... 18

3.5.3 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern ..... 19

3.5.3.1 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist ..... 19

3.5.3.2 Incorrectly Located Natural Resource Feature or Values ..... 19

3.5.3.3 New Natural Resource Features or Values ..... 20

3.5.3.4 Incorrectly Identified Natural Resource Feature or Values ..... 20

3.5.4 Changes to Road Crossings of Areas of Concern ..... 20

3.5.4.1 Water Crossings ..... 20

Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Streams .....20
Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions.....21
Streams That Do Not Exist .....21
3.5.4.2 Non-Water Crossings.....21
Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Natural Resource Features or Values .....21
Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions.....22
Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist.....24
Changes to Conditions on Existing Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits .24
3.5.5 Documentation for Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation 24
3.6 Annual Work Schedule Tables .....25

**4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS .....30**

**5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS .....31**

**6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS .....33**
6.1 Introduction.....33
6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program.....33

**7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION .....35**
7.1 General.....35
7.1.1 Public Notices .....35
7.1.2 *French Language Services Act* .....35
7.1.3 *Environmental Bill of Rights*.....36
7.2 Annual Work Schedules .....36
7.3 Prescribed Burns .....37
7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects.....37
7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs .....38
7.5.1 General.....38
7.5.2 Stage One - Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program .....38
7.5.3 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection.....40
7.5.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment .40
7.5.4.1 Issue Resolution.....40
7.5.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment .....40

**8.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT.....43**
8.1 Introduction.....43
8.2 Annual Work Schedules, Prescribed Burns, and Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects.....43
8.3 Insect Pest Management Programs .....43
8.3.1 Stage One –Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program.....43
8.3.2 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection.....44

# LIST OF TABLES

**AWS – 1: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings To Be Replaced, Constructed/ Reviewed ..... 26**
**AWS – 2: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned..... 28**

# LIST OF FIGURES

**Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page..... 9**
**Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page ..... 23**

# PART D – ANNUAL OPERATIONS

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual describes the requirements for annual operations, including the preparation of forest operations prescriptions and annual work schedules, and the detailed project planning required prior to the implementation of forest operations.

The link between the prescriptions for operations in the forest management plan and the scheduled operations in the annual work schedule is the forest operations prescription. The requirements for the development of forest operations prescriptions are described in Section 2.0.

An annual work schedule identifies operations that are scheduled for implementation during the year. The requirements for the preparation, review, approval and inspection of an annual work schedule are described in Section 3.0.

When prescribed burns, aerial herbicide or aerial insecticide projects are scheduled in an annual work schedule, detailed project planning is required. Section 4.0 describes the planning requirements for prescribed burns. Section 5.0 describes the project planning requirements for aerial herbicide and aerial insecticide projects.

If insect pest management programs are required, the types and locations of insect pest management activities will be determined in accordance with the requirements of Section 6.0.

Section 7.0 describes the requirements for public consultation. Section 8.0 describes the requirements for Aboriginal involvement in the scheduling and/or planning of annual operations.

**Phase-in Provisions**

Part D, Sections 2.0, will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Part D, Sections 3.0 will apply to the preparation of, or changes to, an annual work schedule as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual, except as follows:

> The requirements of Part D, Section 3.2.6 (Fire Prevention and Preparedness Plan) of this Forest Management Planning Manual will be phased-in as follows. Until a Fire Prevention and Preparedness Plan is included in the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.8 of this Forest Management Planning Manual), the requirements of Part D, Section 3.2.7 of the FMPM (2004) will continue to apply to the preparation of the annual work schedule with necessary modifications (i.e., removal of personal information protected under FIPPA).

The requirements of Part D, Section 3.5 of this Forest Management Planning Manual will be phased-in as follows. Changes to existing annual work schedules will be prepared, to the extent reasonably possible, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 3.5 of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Part D, Sections 4.0, 5.0, 6.0, 7.0 and 8.0 will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

## 2.0 FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTIONS

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and tending activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to achieve the expected forest structure and condition (silvicultural ground rule). A forest operations prescription will be developed before operations can commence. Forest operations prescriptions are integral to the silvicultural effectiveness monitoring system. Forest operations prescriptions may also be operational prescription for areas of concern prepared to protect a natural resource feature, land use or value. Operational prescriptions for areas of concern may not be consistent with a silvicultural ground rule.

A forest operations prescription will be certified by a registered professional forester. If elements of the prescription (e.g., for an area of concern) are beyond the standard expertise of a forester, then certification by a suitably qualified person is also required. Forest operation prescription certification is provided through the certification of an annual work schedule, as described in Part D, Section 3.2.1.

The complete forest operations prescription for a particular area of operations, or portion of an area of operations, is comprised of a combination of:

(a) the assigned silvicultural ground rule or operational prescription for areas of concern in the forest management plan(s);
(b) the appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) from the applicable silvicultural ground rule or operational prescription for areas of concern; and
(c) the actual silvicultural ground rule and silvicultural treatments implemented on the area of operations, as identified in the applicable management unit annual report(s).

<u>Silvicultural Ground Rules</u>

For most of the areas of operations, the silvicultural ground rules in FMP-4 of the forest management plan are the forest operations prescriptions. FMP-4 will contain silvicultural ground rules that apply to all forest unit-ecosite combinations on the management unit. The most common silvicultural treatment package in the silvicultural ground rule identifies the suite of silvicultural treatments that will be used most frequently. However, any of the

acceptable alternative silvicultural treatments identified in the silvicultural ground rule may also be used.

During the preparation of the annual work schedule, the silvicultural ground rule for an area of operations will be confirmed or changed to reflect the actual site conditions. If the silvicultural ground rule is confirmed, an appropriate silvicultural treatment(s) will be identified in the annual work schedule. If a change to the silvicultural ground rule is required, an appropriate silvicultural ground rule from the forest management plan will be selected or a new silvicultural ground rule will be developed in an amendment to the forest management plan, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate silvicultural treatments will be identified in the annual work schedule.

Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

The operational prescriptions for areas of concern in a forest management plan may include modified operations developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. These modified operations, developed to provide protection that are not consistent with a silvicultural ground rule, are deemed to be the forest operations prescription.

In the preparation of the annual work schedule, the operational prescription for areas of concern will be confirmed or changed to reflect updated values information. If a change to the operational prescription for areas of concern is required, an appropriate operational prescription for an area of concern from the forest management plan will be identified or a new operational prescription for an area of concern will be developed in an amendment to the forest management plan, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate operational prescriptions for areas of concern will be identified in the annual work schedule.

Conditions on Regular Operations

Where a condition on regular operations has been developed through application of a forest management guide (e.g. MNR's forest management guides relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales), these conditions apply to all forest operations prescriptions.

Annual Work Schedules

The annual work schedule will include information products for areas scheduled for harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations in accordance with the requirements of Part D Section 3.0. Further direction on the requirements for information products is provided in the Forest Information Manual.

## Annual Reports

The management unit annual report will contain the information products for areas of harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations, in accordance with the requirements of Part E. Further direction on the requirements for information products is provided in the Forest Information Manual.

# 3.0 ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE

## 3.1 Introduction

An annual work schedule will be prepared and approved for the management unit before any operations may proceed, and will be consistent with the forest management plan. An annual work schedule is normally required for a one-year period that normally commences on April 1, but always ends on March 31. The annual work schedule will be submitted to the MNR District Manager at least three months prior to April 1 for MNR review and approval.

The annual work schedule identifies operations that were previously planned and approved in the forest management plan, and are scheduled for implementation during that year. In addition, there are planning and approval requirements for water crossings. Information products provide information that was previously provided in annual work schedule tables (FMPM, 2004). The information products will be submitted with the annual work schedule, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual.

Responsibility for the preparation of the annual work schedule normally rests with the plan author. If a person other than the plan author produces the document, the plan author will supervise its preparation and certify the document. In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, his/her organization will assign the plan author.

## 3.2 Text Content Requirements

### 3.2.1 Title, Certification and Approval Page

The first page of the annual work schedule is a title, certification and approval page in the format of Figure D-1. The title, certification and approval page will be signed by the person who prepared the annual work schedule, normally the plan author, the senior official of the sustainable forest licensee, where applicable, and the MNR District Manager.

If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an annual work schedule (e.g., water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the annual work schedule that they prepared.

### 3.2.2 Introduction

A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the annual work schedule. The introduction will include a statement that conditions on regular operations identified in the forest management plan will be followed in the implementation of the annual work schedule.

Figure D-1: Annual Work Schedule - Title, Certification and Approval Page

ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the one-year period from April 1, ____ to March 31, ____

I/We hereby confirm that this annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual, and is consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Prepared by: _____ _____
[date]

Submitted by: _____ _____
(where applicable) Plan Author [or senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR] [date]

I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are scheduled in this annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

_____ _____ _____
[R.P.F. Seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I have read this annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the approved forest management plan.

Approved by: _____ _____
[MNR District Manager] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: _____

### 3.2.3 Harvest

The average annual available harvest area for the ten-year period of the forest management plan will guide the amount of area scheduled for harvest in an annual work schedule. FMP-11 of the forest management plan is the source for this information. To provide flexibility for unforeseen circumstances, up to two years of average annual available harvest area by forest unit may be identified. A discussion of the area scheduled for harvest will be provided in the text. The discussion will compare the actual area intended for harvest by forest unit during the year, to the total area identified by forest unit in the harvest information product. If greater than two years average annual available harvest area is required, the rationale for additional harvest area will be provided in the text.

If details of how stand level residual requirements will be addressed during the implementation of operations were not provided in the forest management plan, a description will be provided in the text.

If harvest is scheduled as a result of insect pest management planning (Part D, Section 6.0) the text will refer to the applicable insect pest management program for details.

### 3.2.4 Renewal and Maintenance (Tending and Protection)

A discussion of the area scheduled for renewal will be provided in the text. The text will identify the area to be:

(a) site prepared (e.g. mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn);
(b) planted;
(c) seeded; and
(d) regenerated naturally.

A discussion of the area scheduled for tending activities (e.g. manual, mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn), spacing, pruning, pre-commercial thinning and improvement cutting will also be provided in the text.

If protection is scheduled during the year as a result of insect pest management planning (Part D, Section 6.0), the text will discuss the scheduled activities and reference the applicable insect pest management program for details.
Prescribed burn plans (Part D, Section 4.0), and project descriptions and project plans for aerial applications of herbicides or insecticides (Part D, Section 5.0), are normally prepared during the year of the annual work schedule. Following approval, these documents will be available with the approved annual work schedule.

### 3.2.5 Roads

A discussion of primary, branch and operational road construction will be provided in the text. The scheduled kilometres of primary and branch road construction will be provided. A discussion of roads scheduled to be decommissioned or have access controls established will also be provided in the text.

A discussion of road construction or maintenance activities scheduled for the purpose of creating or maintaining an airstrip along a road will be provided in the text.

#### 3.2.5.1 Water Crossing Construction

The planning of water crossings will occur in two successive annual work schedules, to enable the review of the water crossings with respect to the *Fisheries Act*.

<u>Annual Work Schedule for the Year Prior to Construction</u>

For each new primary or branch road water crossing, the 100 metre location and conditions on construction will be confirmed or changed consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.5.3 and FMP-19). For new operational road water crossings, a 100 metre crossing location and conditions on construction will be identified, consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.5.4 and FMP-19).

The following information will be provided in AWS-1 to enable the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*:

(a) a description of the proposed crossing structure;
(b) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and mitigative measures; and
(c) a recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the sustainable forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to MNR, and where MNR's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use.

<u>Annual Work Schedule for the Year of Construction</u>

The 100 metre location and conditions on construction for each water crossing will be confirmed or changed as a result of the review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act,* or operational considerations. Approval of the water crossing will be provided as part of the approval of the annual work schedule. If a change to a water crossing location or conditions on construction is proposed in the annual work schedule for operational considerations, the change will be consistent with the forest management plan, and a review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*, will be required prior to approval.

That approval will occur in the approval of the annual work schedule or the approval of a revision to the annual work schedule.

Each existing water crossing scheduled for replacement and conditions on construction will also be identified in AWS-1.

In an annual work schedule, or any subsequent revisions to an annual work schedule, the following information will be provided in AWS-1:

(a) results of the review of the water crossing with respect to the *Fisheries Act*;
(b) the description of the crossing structure;
(c) any conditions on the construction of the crossing, including preventive and mitigative measures; and
(d) the recommendation on the future removal of the crossing structure, if the sustainable forest licensee intends to transfer responsibility for the road to MNR, and where MNR's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use.

#### 3.2.5.2 Other Crossings of Areas of Concern

For each crossing of an area of concern that does not involve a water crossing, the conditions on the construction of the crossing will be confirmed or changed, consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.5). If the conditions have changed, the change will be documented in the text.

#### 3.2.5.3 Water Crossing Decommissioning

For roads where MNR's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, each water crossing will be examined using MNR's criteria for the removal of water crossings, to determine the appropriate decommissioning activities (e.g. removal of the crossing, establishment of a ford). Each water crossing scheduled to be decommissioned during the year will also be reviewed, with respect to the *Fisheries Act*. The review of each water crossing to be removed and the conditions on removal (e.g. sediment control plan) will be documented in AWS-2. Approval of the water crossing removal will be provided as part of the approval of the annual work schedule or the approval of a revision to the annual work schedule.

#### 3.2.5.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

A discussion of Forestry Aggregate Pit rehabilitation will be provided in the text. The text will identify pits scheduled for rehabilitation and discuss the rehabilitation activities that will be conducted prior to pit closure.

The text will also identify Forestry Aggregate Pits for which an application for a Category 9 permit will be prepared.

### 3.2.6 Fire Prevention and Preparedness

The forest fire prevention and preparedness measures described in the forest management plan will apply to the entire management unit and all licensees. The applicable section of the forest management plan will be referenced in the annual work schedule.

The annual work schedule will identify the resources available to carry out annual fire prevention and suppression operations. The MNR guideline for fire prevention planning will be used in preparing:

(a) an itemized list, in tabular format, that describes the fire suppression equipment that will be available and maintained on areas where operations are occurring; and
(b) a description of the fire prevention or fire response responsibilities of workers involved in forest operations.

### 3.2.7 Monitoring and Assessment

The annual component of the ten-year compliance strategy described in the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.7.1) will be provided in the text. The annual component of the compliance strategy will contain a description of the forest operations inspection program that will be implemented, as described in the Forest Compliance Handbook, and be included as part of the annual work schedule.

A discussion of the monitoring of exceptions to be undertaken by the sustainable forest licensee will be described in the text, if applicable (Part B, Section 4.7.2).
A discussion of the area scheduled for regeneration assessment will be provided in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.3).

A discussion of the scheduled program for monitoring roads and water crossings will be provided in the text (Part B, Section 4.7.4). The discussion will include the methods to be used to inspect the physical condition of roads and water crossings to determine if there are environmental or public safety concerns.

### 3.2.8 Annual Work Schedule Summary Map

An annual work schedule summary map of the areas that are scheduled for operations will be prepared, and will be available for public distribution. The map will portray:

(a) areas that are scheduled for harvest, renewal and maintenance operations;
(b) areas available for fuelwood;
(c) primary and branch roads to be constructed;
(d) roads and road networks with access controls; and
(e) roads and road networks to be decommissioned.

## 3.3 Information Products

### 3.3.1 Harvest Area

The areas scheduled for harvest will be identified (Part D, Section 3.2.3). The operational prescriptions for areas of concern (Part B, FMP-10) associated with the areas scheduled for harvest will also be identified.

In the annual work schedule for the first year of the forest management plan, areas of bridging operations (Part A, Section 1.3.4.1) will be identified.

If stand level residual requirements were identified in the forest management plan to be addressed during the implementation of operations, the area will be identified and portrayed.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will identify:

(a) the silvicultural system;
(b) the harvest category (e.g. regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected and accelerated);
(c) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(d) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained; and
(e) if applicable, stand level residual requirements.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for harvest will portray:

(a) the silvicultural system
(b) the harvest category (e.g. regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected and accelerated);
(c) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern;
(d) the locations where fuelwood can be obtained; and
(e) if applicable, the stand level residual requirements.

### 3.3.2 Renewal and Maintenance

The areas scheduled for renewal and maintenance (i.e. tending and protection) operations during the year will be identified. The operational prescriptions for areas of concern associated with the areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection operations (Part B, FMP-10), will be identified.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection will identify:

(a) the silvicultural treatments (e.g. site preparation, planting, seeding  tending); and
(b) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for renewal, tending and protection will portray:

(a) the silvicultural treatments (e.g. site preparation, planting, seeding  tending); and
(b) the operational prescriptions for areas of concern.

### 3.3.3 Roads

Primary road corridors, branch road corridors, and operational road boundaries, within which roads are scheduled to be constructed, will be identified. Each 100 metre wide road crossing of an area of concern will also be identified. Roads and water crossings scheduled for maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning, will be identified.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will identify:

(a) the corridors for primary and branch roads;
(b) the operational road boundaries;
(c) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
(d) the 100 metre wide crossing of each area of concern (for water crossings identify the year prior and year of construction);
(e) the roads that will be maintained;
(f) the roads and associated water crossings that will be monitored;
(g) the segments of roads that will have access controls implemented, and the type of access control activities;
(h) water crossings to be replaced;
(i) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned, and the type of decommissioning activities; and
(j) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.

Information products associated with all areas scheduled for road construction, maintenance, monitoring, access controls and decommissioning will portray:

(a) the corridors for primary and branch roads;
(b) the operational road boundaries;
(c) the areas of concern within the corridors and operational road boundaries;
(d) the 100 metre wide crossing of each area of concern (for water crossings identify the year prior and year of construction);
(e) the segments of roads that will have access controls implemented;
(f) water crossings to be replaced;
(g) the segments of roads that will be decommissioned; and
(h) the water crossings that will be decommissioned.

### 3.3.4 Forestry Aggregate Pits

Existing Forestry Aggregate Pits and new aggregate extraction areas will be identified.

Information products associated with each existing Forestry Aggregate Pit will identify:

(a) the unique aggregate pit identifier;
(b) the pit opening date;
(c) pits scheduled for rehabilitation;
(d) the projected date for either pit closure or an application for a Category 9 permit; and
(e) the areas of concern.

Information products for new aggregate extraction areas along existing forest access roads will identify:

(a) the new aggregate extraction areas; and
(b) the areas of concern.

Information products associated with Forestry Aggregate Pits and new aggregate extraction areas will portray:

(a) the location and unique pit identifier for each existing Forestry Aggregate Pit;
(b) the new aggregate extraction areas; and
(c) the areas of concern.

New Forestry Aggregate Pits are not required to be identified in the annual work schedule in which they will be established. The information products associated with new Forestry Aggregate Pits will be updated annually (i.e. Forestry Aggregate Pits opened during the current annual work schedule will be included in the annual work schedule for the following year).

### 3.4 Submission, MNR Review and Approval of the Annual Work Schedule

The person who prepared the annual work schedule, normally the plan author, will sign the annual work schedule title, certification and approval page (Figure D-1) to certify that the access, harvest, renewal, tending and protection operations in the annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and are appropriate for the actual site conditions. If a sustainable forest licensee has prepared the annual work schedule, a senior official of the sustainable forest licensee will also sign the title, certification and approval page. If the MNR District Manager directs other people with expertise beyond the standard expertise of a registered professional forester to develop parts of an annual work schedule (e.g., water crossings), those people will certify the parts of the annual work schedule that they prepared. The annual work schedule title, certification and approval page will note the Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier.

The annual work schedule will be submitted to the MNR District Manager for review and approval at least three months prior to its implementation that normally commences on April 1. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted annual work schedules.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will undertake an internal review of the annual work schedule over a period of thirty days commencing January 1st, or on the submission date if received after January 1st. The MNR District Manager will forward the required alterations, if any, to the plan author who is responsible for the preparation of the annual work schedule.

If alterations are required, a 30-day period is provided for the production of a revised annual work schedule that will be submitted for approval. Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will ensure that the required alterations have been made. After the alterations have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the local citizens committee will be provided an opportunity to inspect the annual work schedule.

Following the inspection by the local citizens committee, the MNR District Manager will approve the annual work schedule. As part of the annual work schedule approval, the MNR District Manager will approve each primary, branch and operational road water crossing that has had a *Fisheries Act* review completed. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted annual work schedules. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

Following approval, the annual work schedule will be available for inspection by the public and Aboriginal communities, as described in Part D, Sections 7.2 and 8.2 for 15 days or until April 1st, whichever is longer. Operations may commence once the period of inspection is complete.

The annual work schedule and any subsequent revisions to the annual work schedule will remain available for the one year duration of the annual work schedule at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in the appropriate communities of the MNR district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the annual work schedule.

## 3.5 Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

### 3.5.1 Revisions

Revisions to an annual work schedule may be required during the year. Revisions will be consistent with the forest management plan, including any amendments to the forest management plan. If new areas of operations from the forest management plan are added during the year, a revision to the annual work schedule will be required.

Where the habitat for species at risk receives protection under *Endangered Species Act, 2007* after the approval of the annual work schedule, a revision to the annual work schedule may be required to remove these operations until appropriate prescriptions to provide protection are developed and incorporated into the forest management plan.

A revision to an annual work schedule will be certified by a registered professional forester, normally the plan author. The annual work schedule revision title, certification and approval page will note the Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing and submitting approval pages associated with electronically submitted annual work schedule revisions. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

The revision will be reviewed by MNR district staff, approved by the MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor, and will be available with the approved annual work schedule. Figure D-2 provides the format for the title, certification and approval page for a revision. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted annual work schedule revisions. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

### 3.5.2 Changes to Silvicultural Treatments

During annual work schedule implementation, if there is a change to the silvicultural treatment for an area scheduled for harvest, renewal or tending operations, and:

a) the change is consistent with the silvicultural ground rule in the forest management plan, the change will be certified by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee;
b) the change is not consistent with the silvicultural ground rule in the forest management plan, an appropriate silvicultural ground rule from the forest management plan will be selected and the change will be certified by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee; or
c) the change is not consistent with any of the silvicultural ground rules in the forest management plan, a new silvicultural ground rule will be developed in an amendment to the forest management plan, in accordance with the requirements of Part C, Section 2.0. The appropriate silvicultural ground rule and silvicultural treatment(s) will be certified by the plan author and the documentation maintained by the sustainable forest licensee.

Sustainable forest licensees will be responsible for maintenance of records for forest operation prescriptions, including changes to silvicultural treatments during annual work schedule implementation.

The necessary documentation for changes to silvicultural ground rules will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

### 3.5.3 Changes to Operational Prescriptions for Areas of Concern

#### 3.5.3.1 Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist

During the implementation of operations, it may be determined that an identified natural resource feature or value no longer exists. In such a situation, the operational prescription for the associated area of concern in the forest management plan will no longer apply. The area within the planned harvest area associated with the operational prescription for the area of concern may be harvested as per the applicable silvicultural ground rule subject to conditions in the operational prescription for the area of concern (e.g. bald eagle restrictions). An amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

#### 3.5.3.2 Incorrectly Located Natural Resource Feature or Values

During the implementation of operations, the actual location of a natural resource feature or value in or adjacent to an area of operations may be different than the portrayed location in the forest management plan. The operational prescription for the area of concern in the forest management plan will be implemented in the actual location of the natural resource feature or value. An amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

#### 3.5.3.3 New Natural Resource Features or Values

During the implementation of operations, previously unidentified natural resource features or values may be encountered. If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the new feature or value is available in the forest management plan, that operational prescription will be implemented. An amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the annual work schedule will be required.

The necessary documentation for the change in values information that does not require an amendment will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

#### 3.5.3.4 Incorrectly Identified Natural Resource Feature or Values

During the implementation of operations, the actual natural resource feature or value in an area of operations may be different than the portrayed feature or value identified in the forest management plan (e.g. eagle nest instead of an osprey nest). If an applicable operational prescription for an area of concern for the actual feature or value is available in the forest management plan, the operational prescription for the area of concern in the forest management plan will be implemented for the feature or value. An amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required. If no applicable operational prescription is available in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the annual work schedule will be required.

### 3.5.4 Changes to Road Crossings of Areas of Concern

#### 3.5.4.1 Water Crossings

<u>Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Streams</u>

During the construction of a road, an unidentified stream may be encountered or the actual location of a stream may be different than the portrayed location in the forest management plan and annual work schedule. In these situations, a new 100 metre wide location of the water crossing and conditions on construction will be identified in a revision to the annual work schedule. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act,* will occur prior to the approval of the revision to the annual work schedule. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions

During the construction of a road, a change to a water crossing location and/or a change to the conditions on construction may be desired. If the change is consistent with the forest management plan (Part B, Section 4.5., FMP-10 and FMP-19), the new 100 metre wide location of the water crossing, and/or conditions on construction, will be identified in a revision to the annual work schedule. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act,* will occur prior to the approval of the revision to the annual work schedule. An amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. If the change is not consistent with the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the annual work schedule will be required. The review of the water crossing, with respect to the *Fisheries Act,* will occur prior to the approval of the revision to the annual work schedule.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Streams That Do Not Exist

During the construction of a road, it may be determined that a stream does not exist. In such a situation for a primary or branch road, the 100 metre wide location and conditions on construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. The road may be constructed within the approved one kilometre wide corridor. Similarly, in such a situation for an operational road, the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

#### 3.5.4.2 Non-Water Crossings

Unidentified and Incorrectly Identified Natural Resource Features or Values

During the construction of a road, a previously unidentified natural resource feature or value (i.e., other than a stream) may be encountered or the actual location of a natural resource feature or value may be different than the location portrayed in the forest management plan.

If a primary or branch road crossing of an area of concern for such a natural resource feature or value is necessary, an amendment to the forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the annual work schedule, will be required. In the amendment, a new 100 metre wide location of the area of concern crossing, and/or new conditions on construction, will be identified, in accordance with the planning requirements described in Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

If it is necessary to cross an area of concern for such a natural resource feature or value with an operational road, and applicable conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of the crossing are available in the forest management plan, those conditions will apply. An amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required. If no applicable conditions are available in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the annual work schedule, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to Crossing Locations or Conditions

During the construction of a road, a change to a crossing location or conditions on construction may be desired for a primary or branch road crossing of an area of concern. If the change is consistent with the acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location or conditions on construction identified in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan will not be required. A revision to the annual work schedule will be required.

If a change to a crossing location or conditions on construction is desired, and the change is not consistent with the acceptable variations to the 100 metre wide location or conditions on construction identified in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the annual work schedule, will be required.

If a change to the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction of a crossing is required for an operational road crossing of an area of concern, an amendment to the forest management plan (Part C, Section 2.0), and a revision to the annual work schedule, will be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

**Figure D-2: Annual Work Schedule Revision - Title, Certification and Approval Page**

REVISION TO THE ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]

[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the one-year period from April 1, ____ to March 31, ____

I/We hereby confirm that this revision to the annual work schedule has been prepared in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual, and the Forest Information Manual and is consistent with the forest management plan.

Prepared by: _____ _____
[date]

Submitted by: _____ _____
Plan Author [or senior official of plan author's organization, if other than MNR] [date]

I hereby certify that the access, harvest, renewal and maintenance operations which are scheduled in this revision to the annual work schedule have been developed in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual.

_____ _____ _____
[R.P.F. Seal] [Plan Author] [date]

I have read this revision to the annual work schedule, and found it to be complete and consistent with the forest management plan.

Approved by: _____ _____
[MNR District Manager or Area Supervisor] [date]

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: _____

Natural Resource Features or Values that no Longer Exist

During the construction of a road, it may be determined that an identified natural resource feature or value no longer exists. In such a situation for a primary or branch road, the 100 metre wide location and conditions on construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. The road may be constructed within the approved one kilometre wide corridor. Similarly, in such a situation for operational roads, the conditions on the location(s) and/or construction in the area of concern will no longer apply. An amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

Changes to Conditions on Existing Roads, Landings and Forestry Aggregate Pits

During the use of an existing road, landing or Forestry Aggregate Pit, a change to a condition may be required for a new value or if a value no longer exists. If the required change is consistent with an available condition for an area on concern identified in the forest management plan, an amendment to the forest management plan or a revision to the annual work schedule will not be required.

The necessary documentation will be provided to MNR, as described in Part D, Section 3.5.5.

### 3.5.5 Documentation for Changes During Annual Work Schedule Implementation

For all revisions to an annual work schedule, the necessary documentation will be prepared and, upon approval, will be available with the approved annual work schedule.

For all changes to operations that do not require an annual work schedule revision, updated information on the location and description of natural resource features or values that were previously unidentified or incorrectly portrayed, or that no longer exist, will be provided to the applicable MNR district or area office, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual.

The updated operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction, will be provided in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual.

Annual work schedule revisions will remain available for the one year duration of the annual work schedule at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. Changes to values information, operational prescriptions for areas of concern, and road crossing locations and conditions on construction, during annual work schedule implementation will remain available for the duration of the forest management plan at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in the appropriate communities of the MNR district and/or area offices

provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the annual work schedule revision.

## 3.6 Annual Work Schedule Tables

The tables in this section are required for each annual work schedule.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____
ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: _____ TO _____

**AWS – 1 Annual Schedule of Water Crossings To Be Replaced, Constructed/Reviewed**

| Year of Construction | Water Crossing Identifier | Road Identifier | Water Crossing Structure | Construction Conditions | Future Removal (Y/N) | *Fisheries Act* Review Completed (Y/N) | *Fisheries Act* Review Results |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| A. Current Year | | | | | | | |
| B. Future Year | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**AWS-1: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Replaced, Constructed/ Reviewed**

This table summarizes the scheduled water crossings to be replaced, constructed/reviewed. Each table entry represents a road crossing of areas of concern with a unique/common prescription. A source of information for this table is FMP-19.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Year of Construction:**
List individual water crossings by the anticipated year of construction (i.e., A. Current Year or B. Future Year).

**Water Crossing Identifier:**
Enter a unique code to identify each water crossing scheduled for installation or replacement.

**Road Identifier:**
Enter a unique name or code by which the road can be identified.

**Water Crossing Structure:**
Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) proposed.

**Construction Conditions:**
Enter conditions on the construction of the water crossing.

**Future Removal:**
Indicate the projected year of the water crossing removal. Enter NA if no removal is anticipated.

***Fisheries Act* Review Completed:**
Indicate if the water crossing has been reviewed (yes/no).

***Fisheries Act* Review Results:**
Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing, if completed. Include structural design risk.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____ TO _____
ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE: _____ TO _____

**AWS – 2 Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned**

| Water Crossing Identifier | Road Identifier | Water Crossing Structure | Decommissioning Activities/Conditions | *Fisheries Act* Review Results |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**AWS-2: Annual Schedule of Water Crossings to be Decommissioned**

This table summarizes the water crossings scheduled to be decommissioned. Each table entry represents a water crossing that will be decommissioned.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual work schedule year.

**Water Crossing Identifier:**
For each water crossing to be decommissioned, enter the unique code to identify the crossing.

**Road Identifier:**
For each road, enter the unique name or code by which the road can be identified.

**Water Crossing Structure:**
Enter a description of the type of water crossing structure (e.g., bridge, culvert, temporary bridge) to be decommissioned.

**Decommissioning Activities/Conditions:**
Enter conditions on the decommissioning of the water crossing.

***Fisheries Act* Review Results:**
Enter the results of the review of the proposed water crossing.

# 4.0 PRESCRIBED BURNS

For each prescribed burn that is scheduled during the year of the annual work schedule, a prescribed burn plan will be prepared. MNR's manual for prescribed burns describes the requirements for the preparation, review and approval of prescribed burn plans. Prescribed burn plans will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted prescribed burns. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

The local citizens committee will be provided an opportunity to inspect the prescribed burn plan prior to its approval. The approved prescribed burn plan will be available with the annual work schedule.

The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved prescribed burn plan are described in Part D, Sections 7.3 and 8.2.

Each prescribed burn area will be posted at least 14 days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at main roads into the prescribed burn area. Signs will be provided in English, and where applicable, in French and/or Ojicree. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of the burn, and a telephone number of a contact person who can provide more information.

# 5.0 AERIAL HERBICIDE AND INSECTICIDE PROJECTS

Projects that involve the aerial application of a herbicide are scheduled in the annual work schedule. Projects that involve the aerial application of an insecticide are determined during the planning of insect pest management programs (Part D, Section 6.0).

A project description and a project plan will be prepared for each project that involves the aerial application of a herbicide or insecticide.

The project description will include:

(a) a statement of the objectives to be achieved;
(b) a description of the forest in the proposed treatment area;
(c) the rationale for the proposed treatment including a discussion of the alternatives to herbicides or insecticides considered;
(d) the technical name, formulation and *Pest Control Products Act* registration number (PCP number) of the herbicide or insecticide;
(e) the proposed application rate;
(f) the type of aircraft to be used (rotary or fixed wing);
(g) the name of the project supervisor;
(h) the locations of the treatment areas, identified on maps;
(i) the proposed timing of the activity; and
(j) a description of the results of the application of the MNR/MOE Buffer Zones and their display on maps.

The project plan will include:

(a) the description of the methods that will be used to notify the public (i.e., a communications plan);
(b) an operations plan;
(c) a safety plan; and
(d) a security plan.

The project description and project plan for an aerial herbicide project will be approved by the MNR District Manager, and will be available with the annual work schedule. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial herbicide projects. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

The project description and project plan for an aerial insecticide project will be approved by the MNR Regional Director as part of the development of an insect pest management program (Part D, Section 6.0), and will be available with the annual work schedule. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted aerial insecticide projects. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

The requirements for a public notice for inspection of an approved project description and project plan for an aerial pesticide project are described in Part D, Sections 7.4 and 8.2. The Pesticide Permit approval from the Ministry of the Environment will be available for inspection at the appropriate MNR district or area office, and the office of the sustainable forest licensee, at the time of operations.

Each herbicide and insecticide spray block on Crown land will be posted not more than seven days before operations are scheduled to begin. Signs will be posted at all reasonable points of access and at known locations within or adjacent to the spray block where water is obtained for human consumption. Signs will remain in place for at least 30 days after the completion of the project (and normally removed by November 1 of the spray year), and will clearly advise the public of the specific pesticide used in that operation. Signs will be provided in English, and where applicable, in French and/or Ojicree. The signs will indicate the scheduled date of spraying, the pesticide to be used, the date when berries can again be consumed, and the telephone number of a contact person who can provide more information.

# 6.0 INSECT PEST MANAGEMENT PROGRAMS

## 6.1 Introduction

The occurrence and extent of insect infestations are determined annually. When there is a major insect pest infestation, an insect pest management program will be developed to determine the types and locations of insect pest management activities that are required.

## 6.2 Development of Insect Pest Management Program

When there is a major insect pest infestation, an insect pest management program will be developed by an interdisciplinary team, in consultation with a Forest Management Branch specialist. The team will be comprised of MNR district and regional staff, staff of the sustainable forest licensee(s) and a representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s). The representative(s) of the local citizens committee(s) will be a member(s) from the local citizens committee(s) in the affected area.

Areas eligible for insect pest management will be identified and portrayed on maps, and a range of management options will be considered and documented. The following management options will be considered:

(a) no treatment;
(b) accelerated harvest;
(c) redirected harvest;
(d) salvage harvest;
(e) the use of insecticides;
(f) other controls (e.g., bait traps); and
(g) combinations of options (a) to (f).

Each management option will be evaluated and the results will be documented. The evaluation will consist of:

(a) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option for forest management purposes;
(b) an assessment of the advantages and disadvantages of the management option as they relate to potential effects on non-timber values identified in the areas eligible for insect pest management;
(c) a discussion of the anticipated effectiveness of the management option; and
(d) an estimate of the operational costs related to the management option.

A specific course of action will be chosen, based on a comparison of the evaluations of the management options. The reasons for the selection of the specific course of action will be documented.

When considering the use of insecticides, where alternatives to chemical insecticides are commercially available, reasonably cost-effective, and approved federally and provincially for use, MNR will give preference to such alternatives.

If the selected course of action involves accelerated, redirected or salvage harvest operations, the MNR District Manager will determine if an amendment to a forest management plan(s) is required. If so, the planning requirements for amendments to forest management plans will apply (Part C, Section 2.0).

If the selected course of action involves the aerial application of insecticides, specific project proposals for the insect pest management program will be prepared for review, in accordance with the requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement described in Part D, Sections 7.5.1, 7.5.2 and 8.3.1. After the 30-day review period, a project description and a project plan will be prepared for each aerial insecticide project and submitted to the MNR Regional Director for approval, in accordance with the requirements of Part D, Section 5.0. The Forest Information Manual provides direction for signing approval pages associated with electronically submitted insecticide pest management programs. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee.

In accordance with the requirements for public consultation and Aboriginal involvement described in Part D, Sections 7.5.1, 7.5.3 and 8.3.2, the approved project description and project plan will be available for inspection by the public at the appropriate MNR district or area office.

As part of the documentation for the insect pest management program, a brief description of how MNR's Statement of Environmental Values (SEV) under the *Environmental Bill of Rights (EBR)*, as amended from time to time, has been considered in the development of the insect pest management program will be produced, in the form of an SEV consideration document.

# 7.0 PUBLIC CONSULTATION

## 7.1 General

### 7.1.1 Public Notices

Public notices are required for annual work schedules, prescribed burns, aerial herbicide and insecticide projects and insect pest management programs. Public notices include direct written notices and media notices, and will be written in concise, non-technical language. All references to numbers of days in the requirements for, and contents of, public notices are to consecutive calendar days.

Direct written notices will be issued to interested and affected persons and organizations, normally by the MNR District Manager. Media notices will also be provided in advertisements in the local media.

Direct verbal communication of the required information, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances, may serve as an additional form of notification.

The annual work schedule, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects will be available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in the appropriate communities of the MNR district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the annual work schedule, prescribed burn plans, project description and project plan for aerial herbicide and insecticide projects.

Insect pest management programs will be available at the appropriate MNR district or area office.

### 7.1.2 *French Language Services Act*

The *French Language Services Act*, as amended from time to time, will govern the public consultation requirements for annual operations in designated areas under the act. The translation requirements in Part A, Section 3.3.2 will apply to public notices for annual work schedules, and public notices and signage for prescribed burns and aerial herbicide and insecticide projects. The *French Language Services Act* requirements for public consultation for forest management plans (Part A, Section 3.3.2.4) will apply to insect pest management programs, with whatever modifications MNR considers necessary in the circumstances.

### 7.1.3 *Environmental Bill of Rights*

The requirements of the *Environmental Bill of Rights* apply to insect pest management programs, as described in Part D, Section 7.5.1.

## 7.2 Annual Work Schedules

Upon approval of the annual work schedule, at least 15 days before operations are scheduled to commence, a public notice will be issued, normally by the District Manager, to advise the public that the approved annual work schedule is available for inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple annual work schedules in an MNR district.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to persons who may be directly affected by forest management operations during the year of the annual work schedule, and in particular those persons who have requested notice of specific activities that will occur in specific areas. Reasonable efforts will be made to identify those persons who may be directly affected, including examination of registered traplines and mining activity within the areas scheduled for operations.

The public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify where the annual work schedule will be available for inspection;
(c) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit;
(d) indicate the opportunities for fuelwood;
(e) indicate the opportunities for tree planting jobs;
(f) identify that an annual work schedule summary map is available; and
(g) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

The following information and maps will be available when the public notice is issued:

(a) the approved annual work schedule; and
(b) an annual work schedule summary map that portrays the operations that are scheduled.

The approved annual work schedule (and any subsequent revisions to the annual work schedule) will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR web site for the one-year duration of the schedule. The Ontario Government Information Centres in the appropriate communities of the MNR, district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the annual work schedule.

### 7.3 Prescribed Burns

For prescribed burns, a public notice will be issued by the MNR District Manager not more than 30 days before the anticipated date of the burn to advise the public that the prescribed burn plan is available for inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple prescribed burns on the management unit.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided to persons who have requested notice of prescribed burns.
The public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify where the prescribed burn plan will be available for inspection;
(c) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit; and
(d) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

The approved prescribed burn plan will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR web site for the one-year duration of the schedule. The Ontario Government Information Centre in the appropriate communities of the MNR district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the prescribed burn plan.

### 7.4 Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

For aerial herbicide or insecticide projects, the MNR District Manager will issue a public notice at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to advise the public that the approved project description and project plan for the aerial herbicide or insecticide project is available for public inspection. A single notice may be issued for multiple aerial herbicide or insecticide projects on the management unit.

A direct written notice (Part D, Section 7.1.1) will be provided at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application to landowners or occupants within one kilometre of the proposed treatment area. The direct written notice will also be provided to Aboriginal communities and stakeholders who may be directly affected (e.g. tourism businesses with bear management areas).

The public notice will:

(a) identify the name of the management unit and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify where information will be available for inspection;
(c) identify the anticipated date(s) of aerial herbicide or insecticide application;
(d) include a map of the management unit, containing sufficient detail to allow for identification of the management unit ; and

(e) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

An additional notice for each aerial herbicide or insecticide project will be issued by the MNR District Manager at least seven days before the scheduled date of application, normally in the form of advertisements in the local media.

The approved aerial herbicide or insecticide project description and project plan will remain available for public inspection at the office of the sustainable forest licensee and on the MNR web site for the one-year duration of the schedule. The Ontario Government Information Centre in the appropriate communities of the MNR district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the aerial herbicide or insecticide projects.

## 7.5 Insect Pest Management Programs

### 7.5.1 General

When an insect pest management program results in a selected course of action that involves the aerial application of insecticides, formal public consultation opportunities will be provided at two stages in the preparation of specific project proposals.

A public notice for each stage will:

(a) identify the name of the MNR district and the purpose of the notice;
(b) identify when and where information will be available;
(c) include a map of the MNR district for which the insect pest management program is being prepared;
(d) include the name of a contact person and contact information.

Additional content requirements of the public notice for each stage of consultation are described in Part D, Sections 7.5.2 and 7.5.3.

Under the provisions of the *Environmental Bill of Rights* (EBR), as amended from time to time, MNR will place Registry Information Notices on the provincial EBR Environmental Registry at the same time as the public notice is issued in each stage of the public consultation process for the preparation of an insect pest management program. At each successive stage of the public consultation process, an updated Registry Information Notice will be placed on the EBR Environmental Registry. MNR's guide for the preparation of EBR Environmental Registry Notices for proposals for policies, acts and regulations provides guidance for MNR staff who will prepare these notices.

### 7.5.2 Stage One - Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

Stage One of the public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to an information centre. The purpose of the information centre is for the public to

review, and comment on, the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects. The public notice will normally be issued at least 15 days before the information centre.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.1, the notice will contain:

(a) a statement that the public are asked to provide comments within a 15-day review period (to advise the public when comments are due a specific date will be provided);
(b) a brief explanation of how comments that are received will be handled under relevant provisions of the *Freedom of Information and Protection of Privacy Act*; and
(c) a statement of the opportunities for resolution of issues (Part D, Section 7.5.4.1).

The following information and maps will be available at the information centre:

(a) insect infestation map(s) and population forecasts;
(b) maps of areas eligible for insect pest management;
(c) the current version of the values maps for the affected management unit(s) in the MNR district;
(d) the evaluation of management options;
(e) the selected course of action, with reasons;
(f) draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects, and associated maps;
(g) the results of the district insect pest management program for the same insect species in the previous year (if any); and
(h) a comment form.

The MNR District Manager, and representatives of the interdisciplinary team that developed the insect pest management program, will attend the information centre, and will be appropriately identified.

There will be a period of 15 days from the date of the information centre for the public to provide comments to the MNR District Manager.

### 7.5.3 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection

Stage Two of the public consultation process will begin by issuing a public notice that invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program and project descriptions and project plans for specific aerial insecticide projects. The notice will be issued upon approval of the insect pest management program by the MNR Regional Director. The purpose of this public consultation opportunity is to advise the public that the insect pest management program has been approved by the MNR Regional Director, and to provide an opportunity for the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program and project descriptions and project plans for specific aerial insecticide projects.

In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.1, the notice will contain a statement of the opportunity to make a request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the insect pest management program (Part D, Section 7.5.4.2).

This notice may serve as the public notice for aerial insecticide projects that will be issued at least 30 days before the anticipated date of application (Part D, Section 5.0), if the anticipated date of application is within 60 days.

In addition to the most current versions of the information and maps that were initially available at Stage One of public consultation, the approved project descriptions and project plans, and associated maps, for specific aerial insecticide projects will be available at the MNR district or area office.

### 7.5.4 Issue Resolution and Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

#### 7.5.4.1 Issue Resolution

If an issue arises during the preparation of an insect pest management program, the MNR Regional Director Stage of the issue resolution process described in Part A, Section 3.4.1.3 will apply.

#### 7.5.4.2 Requests for an Individual Environmental Assessment

The opportunity to make a request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment applies to insect pest management programs. For any request for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in an insect pest management program, the following process will apply:

1. There is a 30-day period following the public notice which invites the public to inspect the MNR-approved insect pest management program, for any person to make a written request to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment for an individual environmental assessment of specific proposed forest management activities in the insect pest management program.

2. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment shall notify the MNR District Manager and the MNR Regional Director of the request, and MNR shall normally have 15 days to respond to the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment on the request.

3. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment shall normally decide on the request within 30 days of the receipt of all necessary information from MNR. The Director may require MNR to submit additional necessary information if the Director considers that there are critical deficiencies in the documentation submitted by MNR.

4. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment has not decided on the request within 30 days of receipt of all necessary information, the Director shall provide the reason for the delay and the expected timeframe for a decision to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager and the person requesting an individual environmental assessment.

5. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment has not decided on the request at the time that approved forest management activities are scheduled for implementation, partial or conditional approval of activities may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, upon notice to the requestor and with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment, to permit appropriate operations to proceed in respect of activities and areas unaffected by the outstanding request.

6. The Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment may deny a request for an individual environmental assessment, and may or may not impose conditions. If the Director does not require an individual environmental assessment, the Director shall give written notice to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment that the request has been denied, with reasons.

7. If the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment requires an individual environmental assessment, the Director shall give written notice to the MNR Regional Director, the MNR District Manager and the person requesting the individual environmental assessment, that MNR will be required to prepare and submit an individual environmental assessment for review and approval under the Environmental Assessment Act. The specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the district that are the subject of the individual

environmental assessment shall be identified in the written notice from the Director, Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment. Where the Director has given written notice, partial or conditional approval of specific proposed forest management activities and the areas of the district that are not the subject of the individual environmental assessment, as identified in the written notice, may be granted by the MNR Regional Director, with the concurrence of the Director of Environmental Assessment and Approvals Branch, Ministry of the Environment.

# 8.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT

## 8.1 Introduction

This section describes the consideration of Aboriginal interests, through the involvement of Aboriginal communities in or adjacent to the management unit whose interests or traditional uses may be affected by the implementation of annual operations.

In those cases where a consultation approach with an Aboriginal community has been developed in accordance with Part A, Section 4.4, and contains provisions for annual operations, the provisions of that approach will apply. If a consultation approach has not been agreed upon, or the Aboriginal community chooses not to use the approach, the requirements described in this section will apply. Obligations arising pursuant to Section 35 of the *Constitution Act, 1982*, may be discharged differently depending on the circumstances.

For each notice required for an annual work schedule, prescribed burn, aerial herbicide and insecticide project, and insect pest management program, a direct written notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community in English, and upon request, in the Aboriginal language specified by the community. A media notice will also be placed in local publications in the Aboriginal media.

## 8.2 Annual Work Schedules, Prescribed Burns, and Aerial Herbicide and Insecticide Projects

The public notice requirements described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1, 7.2, 7.3 and 7.4 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

## 8.3 Insect Pest Management Programs

The public notice requirements described in Part D, Sections 7.1.1 and 7.5 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notices will be provided to the Aboriginal community, with the additional requirements described in this section.

### 8.3.1 Stage One –Review of Proposed Insect Pest Management Program

The MNR District Manager will contact the Aboriginal community to determine whether there is interest in having a special information centre. At the request of the community, a special information centre will be provided. In addition to the public notice content requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.2, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community, the notice to the Aboriginal community will contain:

(a) the time and location of the special information centre; and
(b) a request for the Aboriginal community to review and provide comments on the proposed insect pest management program and draft project proposals for specific aerial insecticide projects.

A supplemental notice will be issued by MNR approximately seven days in advance to remind the Aboriginal community of the upcoming information centre.

### 8.3.2 Stage Two – Insect Pest Management Program Inspection

The public notice requirements described in Part D, Section 7.5.3 will apply, with modifications that direct the notice to the Aboriginal community. The notice will be provided to the Aboriginal community.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... 4**

**1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... 4**

Phase-in Provisions ..... 4

**2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... 6**

2.1 Annual Report Text ..... 6

2.1.1 Title and Certification Page ..... 6

2.1.2 Introduction ..... 6

2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations ..... 6

2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment ..... 6

2.2 Annual Report Tables ..... 7

2.2.1 Wood Utilization ..... 7

2.2.2 Renewal Support ..... 7

2.2.3 Expenditures ..... 7

2.2.4 Pesticide Use ..... 7

2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections ..... 9

2.3 Prescribed Burns ..... 9

2.4 Annual Report Information Products ..... 9

2.4.1 Harvest ..... 9

2.4.2 Natural Disturbances ..... 10

2.4.3 Renewal and Maintenance ..... 10

2.4.4 Roads and Water Crossings ..... 10

2.4.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 11

2.4.6 Assessment of Regeneration Success ..... 11

**3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT ..... 12**

**4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND YEAR TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... 13**

4.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis ..... 13

4.1.1 Harvest Area ..... 13

4.1.2 Harvest Volume ..... 14

4.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance ..... 14

4.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration ..... 14

4.1.5 Forest Condition ..... 14

4.1.6 Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species ..... 14

4.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment ..... 14

4.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances ..... 15

4.3 Analysis of Renewal and Tending Activities ..... 15

4.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling ..... 15

4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement ..... 16

4.6 Determination of Sustainability ..... 17

**5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW ..... 19**
5.1 All Annual Reports ..... 19
5.2 Additional Requirements for Year Three, Year Seven and Year Ten Management Unit Annual Reports ..... 19
**6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES ..... 21**

# LIST OF TABLES – All Annual Reports

**AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee ..... 22**

**AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill ..... 24**

**AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support ..... 26**

**AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures ..... 28**

**AR-5: Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests ..... 30**

**AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and Remedies Applied ..... 32**

# LIST OF TABLES – Year Seven and Year Ten Annual Reports

**AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area ..... 34**

**AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume ..... 36**

**AR-9: Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations ..... 38**

**AR-10: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends ..... 40**

**AR-11: Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest ..... 42**

**AR-12: Summary of Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species ..... 44**

**AR-13: Summary of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success ..... 46**

**AR-14: Assessment of Objective Achievement ..... 48**

# LIST OF FIGURES

**Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page ..... 8**

# PART E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

## 1.0 INTRODUCTION

This part of the manual contains the requirements for management unit annual reporting. A management unit annual report will be prepared for each one-year period (i.e., April 1 to March 31) of the forest management plan, and will be submitted by the following November 15. The annual report will be certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. In those cases where the original plan author of the forest management plan is no longer employed on the management unit, the sustainable forest licensee will assign the plan author.

Additional requirements for reports to Pikangikum First Nation on the implementation of the forest management plan for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (E, Section 7.0) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Information products associated with all operations implemented during the year will be submitted in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual.

Annual Report Tables AR-1 to AR-6 are prepared for all Annual Reports. Annual Report Tables AR-7 to AR-14 are prepared for year seven and year ten Annual Reports.

The additional requirements for the year three, year seven and year ten annual reports are described in Part E, Sections 3.0 and 4.0. For the management unit annual report for the last year of implementation of a forest management plan, the requirements for the year ten annual report (Part E, Section 4.0) will apply.

**Phase-in Provisions**

Part E, Section 2.0 will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Part E, Section 3.0 will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual to year three annual reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with this Forest Management Planning Manual or the FMPM (2004).

Part E, Section 4.0 will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual to year seven and ten annual reports for forest management plans prepared in accordance with this Forest Management Planning Manual or the FMPM (2004). For forest management plans prepared in accordance with the FMPM (1996), Part E, Section 4.0 will apply to the annual report for the last year of the forest management plan, except as follows:

- The requirements with respect to objective achievement and sustainability in Part C, Sections 4.3 and 4.4 of the FMPM (1996) may be used in place of the requirements of Part E, Sections 4.5 and 4.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual. The plan author and appropriate MNR staff will assess the specific circumstances for the

management unit, and with the concurrence of the MNR District Manager, will implement this phase-in provision in a reasonable and practical manner.

Part E, Sections 5.0 and 6.0 will apply as of the effective date of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

# 2.0 CONTENT REQUIREMENTS FOR ALL MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

## 2.1 Annual Report Text

### 2.1.1 Title and Certification Page

The first page of the annual report is a title and certification page in the format of Figure E-1. This page identifies that the annual report has been prepared and certified by a registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author. The annual report title and certification page will be submitted to MNR in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The annual report title and certification page will note the Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier. The signed approval page will remain on file in the office of the MNR District and the sustainable forest licensee

### 2.1.2 Introduction

A brief introduction is required to identify the purpose of the annual report, and identify if the annual report is a year three, year seven or year ten annual report. The text will identify the relevant MNR area, district(s) and region(s), and the sustainable forest licensee.

### 2.1.3 Discussion of Forest Operations

A discussion of the implementation of forest operations will address:

(a) the progress towards harvest of the planned harvest area, and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply;
(b) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of renewal and tending, and any related concerns;
(c) the progress towards achievement of planned levels of road construction and maintenance, and any related concerns; and
(d) the progress towards utilization of the volume associated with the planned harvest area (AR-1) and achievement of the planned volume for each mill(AR-2), and any related concerns that may have implications for wood supply.

### 2.1.4 Monitoring and Assessment

The text will also include a discussion of:

(a) any significant events (e.g. natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the implementation of the forest management plan;

(b) areas harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system, based on the standards in the applicable guide relating to the emulation of natural disturbance patterns;
(c) the monitoring of roads and water crossings, including the effectiveness of access controls, and any related concerns;
(d) instances of non-compliance (AR-6), including:
  i the type(s) of non-compliance which occurred;
  ii the cause(s) of those occurrences;
  iii the remedies applied; and
  iv how the sustainable forest licensee will improve the conduct of forest operations to minimize instances of non-compliance.
(e) the monitoring of exceptions (Part B, Section 4.7.2), if any, that was undertaken; and
(f) the progress towards completing the planned assessments of regeneration success, and any related concerns.

## 2.2 Annual Report Tables

### 2.2.1 Wood Utilization

The annual report will include a table (AR-1) of harvest volume utilized, by harvest area, product species and harvest volume and a table (AR-2) of harvest volume utilized by mill.

### 2.2.2 Renewal Support

The annual report will include a table (AR-3) of information on seed collection, seed use and trees planted.

### 2.2.3 Expenditures

The annual report will include a table (AR-4) of information on expenditures for renewal, tending and protection activities from the Forest Renewal Trust Fund, Special Purpose Account, and Forestry Futures Fund.

### 2.2.4 Pesticide Use

The annual report will include a table (AR-5) of information for ground and aerial pesticide projects conducted during the current year (i.e., the part of the calendar year immediately preceding the due date of the annual report), required by Ministry of the Environment. If an incident occurred during the application of a pesticide, a separate report that describes the incident will be prepared, and included in the annual report. If a complaint on a pesticide project has been received, a separate report that describes the details of the complaint will be prepared, and included in the annual report.

**Figure E-1: Annual Report - Title and Certification Page**

YEAR ___ ANNUAL REPORT
for the
[NAME OF MANAGEMENT UNIT]
Plan Period _____ to _____
[MNR Administrative District and Region]
[Name of plan author's organization]
for the year April 1, ____ to March 31, ____

I hereby certify that this annual report is complete and accurate, and has been prepared to the best of my professional skill and judgement, in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Management Planning Manual and the Forest Information Manual.

| _____ | _____ | _____ |
|---|---|---|
| [R.P.F. Seal] | [Plan Author] | [date] |

Forest Information Portal Submission Identifier: _____

**For the Year Three Management Unit Annual Report Only:**

Recommended for Endorsement by:

| _____ | _____ |
|---|---|
| [MNR District Manager] | [date] |

Endorsed by:

| _____ | _____ |
|---|---|
| [MNR Regional Director] | [date] |

If pesticide application operations occur or are anticipated to occur beyond the November 15 submission requirement of the annual report, an update to the annual report will be submitted as soon as possible.

#### 2.2.5 Forest Operations Inspections

The annual report will include a table (AR-6) that summarizes forest operations inspections.

### 2.3 Prescribed Burns

Post-burn reports as required by MNR's manual for prescribed burns, will be prepared and submitted with the management unit annual report.

### 2.4 Annual Report Information Products

The forest operations that were implemented during the year of the annual report will be provided in information products in accordance with the Forest Information Manual.

#### 2.4.1 Harvest

Areas of harvest operations will be reported. Information products associated with areas of harvest will identify:

(a) the forest unit;
(b) the age class or stage of management;
(c) the silvicultural ground rule, if applicable;
(d) the silvicultural system;
(e) the harvest category (e.g. regular, bridging, second-pass, salvage, redirected, accelerated, road right of way);
(f) the harvest method; and
(g) the logging method.

The areas of bridging operations planned to be harvested will be identified in the year-ten annual report, and will be associated with the available harvest area of that forest management plan. The area of bridging operations conducted during the first year of a forest management plan will be reported in the year one annual report, but will be counted against the available harvest area for the previous forest management plan.

Areas harvested in two passes will be reported in two annual reports. The first-pass harvest area will be reported as regular harvest area and will contribute to the achievement of available harvest area. The second-pass harvest area will be reported in a subsequent annual report and will not contribute to the achievement of the available harvest area.

### 2.4.2 Natural Disturbances

The report of natural disturbances will contain net natural disturbance areas. MNR will provide information on the gross natural disturbance area to the sustainable forest licensee, as per the requirements of the Forest Information Manual. The sustainable forest licensee will examine the gross natural disturbance area, and determine the net natural disturbance area.

The information products associated with the net natural disturbance area will identify:

(a) the forest unit;
(b) the age class;
(c) the estimated conifer and hardwood volume; and
(d) the natural disturbance type ( e.g. blowdown, disease, drought, fire, insects).

### 2.4.3 Renewal and Maintenance

Area of renewal, tending and protection operations will be reported.

Information products associated with areas of renewal, tending and protection will identify:

(a) the disturbance group (i.e. harvest, natural disturbance);
(b) the silvicultural system;
(c) the regeneration treatment category (e.g. natural, artificial, artificial retreatment, artificial supplemental);
(d) the regeneration treatment (e.g., planting, seeding, tending, protection);
(e) the site preparation treatment (e.g., mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn);
(f) the tending treatment (e.g. cleaning, spacing, pre-commercial thinning, improvement cutting); and
(g) the protection treatment (e.g. harvest, manual, insecticide).

Areas harvested under the selection silvicultural system that are predominantly non-commercial improvement cuts will be identified as natural under regeneration treatment. The areas will also be identified as improvement cutting under tending.

Areas planned for natural regeneration will normally be reported in the year in which the disturbance (harvest or natural) occurred. If salvage harvest is being considered in areas of natural disturbance, reporting of natural regeneration may be delayed for one or two years.

### 2.4.4 Roads and Water Crossings

Road construction and use management (i.e. maintenance, monitoring, access control and decommissioning) will be reported. Water crossings constructed, monitored and decommissioned will be reported.

Information products associated with road construction and use management, and water crossings will identify:

(a) the road identifier;
(b) the road class;
(c) the road activity (e.g. construction, decommissioning, maintenance, monitoring, access control);
(d) the water crossing identifier;
(e) the water crossing type; and
(f) the water crossing activity (e.g. construction, monitoring, removal).

### 2.4.5 Forestry Aggregate Pits

Forestry Aggregate Pits that had aggregate extracted or rehabilitation activities will be reported.

Information products associated with Forestry Aggregate Pits will identify:

(a) the unique aggregate pit identifier;
(b) number of hectares requiring rehabilitation (current disturbed area);
(c) number of hectares rehabilitated and the date the pit was completely rehabilitated (latest date of complete rehabilitation as aggregate pit may be rehabilitated more than once); and
(d) number of tonnes of aggregate removed from the pit.

### 2.4.6 Assessment of Regeneration Success

The assessments of regeneration success that were undertaken will be reported.

Information products associated with the assessments of regeneration success will identify:

(a) the disturbance group (e.g. harvest, natural);
(b) the year of disturbance;
(c) the depleted forest unit;
(d) the silvicultural ground rule;
(e) the target forest unit;
(f) the free to grow indicator (e.g. successfully regenerated, not successfully regenerated);
(g) the free to grow forest unit;
(h) the species composition;
(i) height; and
(j) stocking/density.

# 3.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR THREE MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT

The year three management unit annual report will serve as the mid-plan review by describing progress on implementation of the forest management plan to date. In this report, the registered professional forester, who is normally the plan author, will report on his or her determination as to whether or not the long-term management direction remains valid for the second five-year term.

In addition to the requirements of each management unit annual report (Part E, Section 2.0), the year three annual report will include:

- (a) a summary of the discussions of the implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 2.1.3) from the first three annual reports for the forest management plan, including any implications on the achievement of the long-term management direction;
- (b) a discussion of how the analysis of renewal and tending activities from the year seven and ten annual report for the previous forest management plan has been implemented;
- (c) a summary of the discussions of the monitoring and assessment program to date (Part E, Section 2.1.3) from the first three annual reports for the forest management plan, including any implications on the achievement of the long-term management direction; and
- (d) one of the following recommendations relating to the validity of the long-term management direction of the forest management plan, with rationale based on the summaries in (a), (b) and (c):
  - (i) the long-term management direction remains valid, and planning of operations for the second five-year term proceeds;
  - (ii) the long-term management direction remains substantially valid, but requires minor adjustments to the level of renewal, tending and protection activities in the second five-year term, and planning of operations for the second five-year term proceeds, with appropriate modifications; or
  - (iii) the long-term management direction is no longer valid, and an early plan renewal is required (Part C, Section 4.0).

If the plan author's recommendation is that the long-term management direction remains substantially valid, the required minor adjustments will be documented in the text of the annual report.

# 4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND YEAR TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

In addition to the requirements for all annual reports described in Part E, Section 2.0, the requirements described in this section will apply to the year seven and year ten management unit annual reports. For the management unit annual report for the last year of implementation of a forest management plan, the requirements for the year ten annual report will apply.

Additional requirements for the year seven and year ten management unit annual reports for the Whitefeather Forest are described in Part F (E, Section 4.0) of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

The year seven annual report will include an assessment, analysis and review of the implementation of the first seven years of the forest management plan. The year seven annual report will identify any significant events (e.g. natural disturbances, markets, labour disruptions) that have affected the achievement of objectives in the forest management plan. The year seven annual report will be used in the development of the next forest management plan.

The year ten annual report will update the assessment, analysis and review in the year seven annual report to reflect the full implementation of the forest management plan. The year ten annual report will be used in the development of the planned operations for the second five-year term in the next forest management plan.

## 4.1 Implementation of Forest Operations - Trend Analysis

Tables AR-7 to AR-14 and the associated analysis will replace the similarly required tables and analysis in the applicable Independent Forest Audit Process and Protocol (IFAPP). Where these tables are not available for an independent forest audit, the requirements of the IFAPP will apply.

### 4.1.1 Harvest Area

The annual report will include a table (AR-7) of planned and actual harvest area for the current plan and the previous three plans. The trend analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous plans, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

The area of bridging operations identified in the first year of a forest management plan will be reported as harvested in the trend analysis in the year ten management unit annual report.

#### 4.1.2 Harvest Volume

The annual report will include a table (AR-8) of planned and actual harvest volume for the current plan and the previous three plans. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous plans, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

#### 4.1.3 Renewal and Maintenance

The annual report will include a table (AR-9) of planned and actual renewal, tending and protection area for the current plan and the previous three plans. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous plans, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

#### 4.1.4 Harvest and Regeneration

The annual report will include a table (AR-10) that summarizes areas of harvest and regeneration for the current plan and the previous three plans. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous plans, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

#### 4.1.5 Forest Condition

The annual report will include a table (AR-11) of forest condition for the current plan and the previous three plans. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous plans, and any implications on the achievement of objectives.

#### 4.1.6 Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species

The annual report will include a table (AR-12) of wildlife habitat for the current plan and the previous three plans. The analysis will discuss trends for the current and previous plans, and any implications on the achievement of objectives and any implications of statements summarizing the actions that the government intends to take in response to recovery strategies under the *Endangered Species Act, 2007* where applicable.

#### 4.1.7 Monitoring and Assessment

The annual report will include a summary of the discussions of the monitoring and assessment program (Part E, Section 2.1.4) from the annual reports to date, and assess progress made in implementing the planned program. Implications on the achievement of objectives will be discussed.

## 4.2 Analysis of Forest Disturbances

The text will describe any implications of the area harvested and new natural disturbances on the achievement of the targets and objectives for landscape pattern. Recommendations to be considered in the planning of future forest disturbances will be documented.

## 4.3 Analysis of Renewal and Tending Activities

An analysis of renewal and tending activities will be prepared by a registered professional forester, and documented in the text of the annual report. The annual report will include a table (AR-13) of assessment of regeneration and silvicultural success, and a table (AR-10) of harvest and regeneration trends.

The analysis will include a discussion of:

(a) the trends in renewal and tending (Section 4.1.3);
(b) the expenditures on renewal and tending operations, as reported in AR-4 of this annual report and equivalent tables in previous annual reports for the forest management plan;
(c) harvest and regeneration trends, as reported in AR-10; and
(d) the trends in silvicultural success and regeneration success, as reported in AR-13 of this annual report and previous annual reports for the forest management plan.

The analysis will include recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending operations. The recommended changes will be based on the information from this annual report, and reports of past forest operations or year ten annual reports for previous forest management plans.

## 4.4 Review of Assumptions in Modelling

In the preparation of a forest management plan, the development of the long-term management direction for the forest is based on a number of model assumptions (Part A, Section 1.2.4). The trend analysis for the implementation of forest operations (Part E, Section 4.1) and the analysis of renewal and tending activities (Part E, Section 4.3) will be reviewed. The text will discuss and compare assumptions and projections in the model with actual operations and results as reported in annual reports. Any issues identified with model assumptions, and conclusions and recommendations for modifications or refinements, will be documented in the text of the annual report.

## 4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement

An assessment of the achievement of management objectives in the forest management plan will be documented in the text of the annual report. The assessment of information provided in all of the annual reports for the current forest management plan will be considered. The independent forest audit action plan and associated status reports that describe progress towards addressing independent forest audit recommendations will be considered when assessing objective achievement.

A summary of the assessment of objective achievement will be reported in AR-14.

The assessment will examine management objectives, indicators and targets that were identified in the forest management plan for assessment at year seven and ten. The assessment will consider:

- (a) What is the difference between the target and the actual level achieved, and does the difference have implications on sustainability?
- (b) Has the target been achieved, or is progress being made on achievement of the target?
- (c) Is the difference a result of inaccurate predictions because of modeling assumptions and inputs?
- (d) Is the difference a result of unforeseen circumstances?
- (e) Do the differences infer that the modeling assumptions require modification to better represent the local forest?
- (f) Do the levels of objective achievement suggest a need to change objectives or make adjustments to the long-term management direction?

For appropriate management objectives in the forest management plan that are directly associated with one of the four categories of objectives required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, the assessment will consider:

- (a) Forest Diversity
  - (i) Was there a substantive change in forest structure and composition?
  - (ii) Do the forest condition trends in AR-11 indicate progress towards the desired forest condition?
  - (iii) Are the landscape pattern target(s) being achieved?
  - (iv) Are there any factors which may be interfering with forest diversity objective achievement?
- (b) Social and Economic
  - (i) Does the data in AR-1 and AR-2 of this annual report and in equivalent tables in previous annual reports for the forest management plan indicate that the available harvest area and associated volume are being fully utilized?
  - (ii) Do the trends in AR-11 indicate a concern with the area available for forest management?

(iii) Did implementation of the forest management plan contribute to mill and community stability?
(iv) Were the desired benefit targets achieved?

(c) Forest Cover
(i) Were the habitat targets for species at risk and selected wildlife species achieved?
(ii) Do the trends in AR-12 indicate a concern with the area of habitat for any species at risk and or selected wildlife species?

(d) Silviculture
(i) Were all planned renewal operations undertaken?
(ii) Did renewal treatments produce the anticipated results?
(iii) Did the forest grow and develop as projected?

If targets were not achieved, the assessment will provide reasons, a discussion of the management implications, and recommendations for future planning.

## 4.6 Determination of Sustainability

The determination of sustainability in the year seven and ten annual reports will conclude whether the implementation of the forest management plan has provided for the sustainability (i.e., long-term Crown forest health) of the Crown forest on the management unit, through a collective assessment of objective achievement. The determination of sustainability will conclude whether a balance of social, economic and environmental objectives is being achieved, and progress is being made towards the desired forest and benefits.

The determination of sustainability will consider:

(a) Are the levels of objective achievement within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators?
(b) Is there a relationship between the objectives that are not within, or moving towards, the desirable levels for the indicators (e.g., are the levels of objective achievement related to a common forest type, or a particular *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* objective category (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1))?
(c) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to limitations imposed by the current forest condition?
(d) Are the reasons the objective achievement levels are not moving towards the desirable levels, related to balancing the achievement of multiple objectives?
(e) Are actual operations and results as reported in annual reports consistent with assumptions and projections in the model and forest management plan?
(f) Have the components of the independent forest audit action plan that pertain to objective achievement and sustainability been implemented?

Documentation of the determination of sustainability will be included in the text of the annual report. The documentation will:

(a) discuss the collective achievement of management objectives, and provide rationale for any management objectives for which desirable levels are not achieved; and

(b) provide a conclusion as to whether the implementation of planned operations has provided for the sustainability of the Crown forest.

# 5.0 SUBMISSION AND REVIEW

## 5.1 All Annual Reports

The annual report will be submitted to MNR in accordance with the requirements of the Forest Information Manual and Part E of this manual. The MNR registered professional forester for the management unit will work with the plan author to ensure that a complete and accurate annual report is prepared and submitted to the MNR District Manager by November 15.

Staff from the appropriate MNR area or district office will have the opportunity to review the annual report for completeness and accuracy. The District Manager will provide the results of the review to the plan author within 30 days of receipt of the annual report. The plan author will address the comments and provide the MNR District Manager with documentation on how the comments have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15 or 60 days from the receipt of the MNR comments.

The plan author will present the completed annual report to the local citizens committee, in a manner determined by the MNR District Manager in consultation with the committee.

The annual report will remain available at the office of the sustainable forest licensee, the appropriate MNR district or area office, and on the MNR website. The Ontario Government Information Centre in the appropriate communities of the MNR district and/or area offices provide internet access. Interested and affected persons and organizations can arrange an appointment with MNR staff at the appropriate MNR district or area office to discuss the annual report.

## 5.2 Additional Requirements for Year Three, Year Seven and Year Ten Management Unit Annual Reports

Staff from the appropriate MNR area, district and regional office will review the year three, seven and ten annual reports, over a period of thirty days commencing November 15 or on the submission date if received after November 15. The District Manager will provide the results of the MNR district and regional review to the plan author. The plan author will address the comments and provide the MNR District Manager with documentation on how the comments have been addressed, and if necessary, a revised annual report will be submitted by February 15 or 60 days from the receipt of the MNR comments.

After the comments have been addressed to the satisfaction of the MNR District Manager, the year three annual report will be presented to the local citizens committee. The MNR District Manager will consider any comments from the local citizens committee, prior to providing a recommendation on endorsement of the annual report to the MNR Regional Director, normally by February 21. The MNR District Manager's signature on the Title and Certification Page (Figure E-1) certifies the acceptance of the annual report and the recommendation on endorsement.

The MNR Regional Director will review the year three annual report, and the MNR District Manager's recommendation on endorsement, and make a decision on acceptance of the recommendation. After the recommendation has been accepted, the MNR Regional Director will endorse the year three annual report, normally by March 1. The endorsement enables the planning of operations for the second five-year term (Part A, Section 2.0), or the preparation of an early plan renewal (Part C, Section 4.2), to proceed. The MNR Regional Director will sign the year three annual report – Title and Certification Page (Figure E-1) submitted by the plan author.

If the MNR Regional Director endorses a recommendation that the long-term management direction is no longer valid, the MNR Regional Director will notify the Director of MNR's Forest Management Branch, the MNR District Manager, and the sustainable forest licensee.

# 6.0 MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORT TABLES

The tables in this section are required for management unit annual reports. AR-1 to AR-6 are required for all annual reports. AR-7 to AR-14 are required for the year seven and ten annual reports.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee**

| | Licensee or Grouping | Harvest Area (ha) | Product | Harvest Volume by Species ($m^3$) | | | | | | | | | | | | Total |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | Conifer | | | | | | | Hardwood | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | Subtotal | | | | | Subtotal | |
| **A. Harvest** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| **Volume Utilized This Year** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | **Total** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| **B. Salvage** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| **Volume Utilized This Year** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | **Total** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-1: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Licensee

This table summarizes the actual volumes utilized by licensee (or grouping), and by product. The source of this information is the provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Part A. Harvest:**

Complete this section for all invoiced and undersize harvest volumes except salvage harvest volumes. All second-pass harvest volumes are included as well.

**Part B. Salvage**

Complete this section for invoiced and undersize salvage harvest volumes only.

**Licensee or Grouping:**

List all licensees (or groupings), if required, that conducted harvest operations. Where there are many small operators (e.g., fuelwood operators) as licensees, groupings are permitted. If individual licensees (or groupings) are not required, identify the SFL name.

**Harvest Area:**

Enter the area harvested in hectares by licensee (or grouping).

**Product:**

Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer, biofuel, biopharmaceutical, bioenergy) for the actual volumes utilized.

**Harvest Volume by Species:**

For Part A and Part B enter the utilized volume ($m^3$) by species and product utilized from harvest area by licensee (or grouping).

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill**

| Mill | Product | Volume by Species ($m^3$) | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Conifer | | | | | | | Hardwood | | | | | Total |
| | | | | | | | | Subtotal | | | | | Subtotal | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**AR-2: Annual Report of Wood Utilization by Mill**

This table summarizes actual volume (harvest and salvage) utilized by mills which received wood from the management unit, by product and species. The source of this information is the provincial scaling and billing system.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Mill:**

List all mills that received wood from the management unit.

**Product:**

Enter the product (e.g., pulp, sawlogs, veneer, biofuel, biopharmaceutical, bioenergy) utilized by each mill.

**Volume by Species:**

Enter the volume by species and product that was utilized by each mill. Ensure the total volume utilized by species is consistent with the volumes in AR-1.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

## AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support

**A. Seed Collected**

| Species | Seed Zone/ Breeding Zone | Source of Seed Collection | Seed (kg) or Cones (hl) Collected | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | This Year | To Date |
| | | | | |

**B. Seeding**

| Species | Seed Zone/ Breeding Zone | Source of Seed Collection | Number of Seed Used (000s) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | This Year | To Date |
| | | | | |

**C. Tree Planting**

| Species | Seed Zone/ Breeding Zone | Stock Type | Number of Trees Planted (000s) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | This Year | To Date |
| | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-3: Annual Report of Renewal Support

This table summarizes renewal support, including volume of seeds and cones collected, the number of seeds used for direct seeding, and the number of trees planted. Seeds used and trees planted are recorded for renewal and retreatment/supplemental treatment.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**A. Seed Collected/B. Seeding/C. Tree Planting**

Complete applicable table section for seed collected, seed used for seeding, and trees planted.

**Species:**

Enter the tree species.

**Seed Zone/Breeding Zone:**

Enter the seed zone/breeding zone for the seed collected, seed used for direct seeding, or the source of the seed for planting (i.e., nursery) stock.

**Source of Seed Collection or Stock Type:**

Identify the source of the seed collected and used (e.g., bulk stand, seed collection area, seed production area or seed orchard) or the nursery stock type, as applicable.

**A. Seed Collected: Seeds (kg)or Cones Collected (hl):**

This Year: Enter the amount of seeds or cones collected by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the amount of seeds or cones collected by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type from the start of the plan period.

**B. Seeding: Number of Seed Used (000s):**

This Year: Enter the amount (000's) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection for the annual report year. Do not include seed used to produce nursery stock.

To Date: Enter the number (000s) of seeds used in direct seeding by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection from the start of the plan period.

**C. Tree Planting: Number of Trees Planted (000s):**

This Year: Enter the number (000s) of trees (i.e., Nursery Stock) planted by species, seed zone, and source of seed collection type for the annual report year.

To Date: Enter the amount (000s) of trees (i.e., Nursery Stock) planted by species, seed zone, and stock type from the start of the plan period.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures**

| Expenditures ($) | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Activity** | **Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $)** | | **Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $)** | |
| | **This Year** | **To Date** | **This Year** | **To Date** |
| **Natural Regeneration** | | | | |
| **Artificial Regeneration** | | | | |
| **Site Preparation** | | | | |
| **Tending** | | | | |
| **Renewal Support** | | | | |
| **Other Eligible Activities** | | | | |
| **Protection (Insect Pest Control)** | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-4: Annual Report of Expenditures

This table summarizes expenditures made by activity and funding source.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Expenditures:**

Enter expenditures by the broad activity categories listed. Protection expenditures are not an eligible expense from the Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account.

**Forest Renewal Trust Fund or Special Purpose Account (000s $):**

Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

**Forestry Futures Trust Fund (000s $):**

Enter the expenditures by activity in thousands of dollars.

Enter actual for the report year, and actual to date from plan start.

Enter all totals as required.

Notes for Expenditures:

**Natural Regeneration -** Activities include tree marking (boundary marking ineligible), harvest and regeneration option, modified cutting.

**Artificial Regeneration -** Activities include tree planting (bareroot, container, cuttings and other) and seeding (aerial and with site prep.).

**Site Preparation -** Activities include mechanical, chemical (includes cost of chemicals) and prescribed burn. Also includes site preparation for natural (scarification).

**Tending -** Activities include cleaning, spacing, thinning (pre-commercial only), improvement cut (even-aged and uneven-aged).

**Renewal Support -** Activities include cone collection and transport; seed extraction, storage, testing, and transport; tree improvement; stock purchase and delivery (bareroot, container, cuttings and other).

**Other Eligible Activities -** Activities include silvicultural surveys (e.g., free-to-grow, not sufficiently regenerated).

**Protection -** Activities include insect pest control.

## AR-5: Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests

**This document satisfies the data reporting requirements of both the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* and the *Pesticides Act* with regared to aerial pesticde applications in Crown Forests**

# Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests

**Management Unit Name:**
**Plan Period:**
**Annual Report Term:**
**Year of Application:**

**Application Type:**
**Purpose of Application:**
**Pesticide / PCP Number:**
**Concentration grams/litre:**

**Operator:**
**Operator Licence #:**
**MOE Regional Office:**
**MOE Permit Number:**

| Spray Period | | Site of Application | | Pesticide Used | | | | | Exterminator | | Aircraft | Incidents / Complaints | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Start Date | End Date | 1: 20,000 Scale OBM Map Sheet Zone, East, North | Block | # of Applications | Application Rate in kg per ha. | Proposed Size of Treatment Area (ha) | Actual Size of Treatment Area (ha) | Total Quantity of Pesticide product used in kg ai | Name | Number | Registration Number | Y/N | Reference Number (Supplied by MOE Pesticides Specialist) |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-5: Annual Summary of Planned and Completed Pesticide Applications in Ontario Crown Forests

This table summarizes planned and completed pesticide applications, including spray period, site of application, pesticide used, exterminator, aircraft and incidents/complaints.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period annual report year, year of application, application type, purpose of application, pesticide/PCP number, concentration (in grams/litre), operator, operator licence #, MOE regional office, and MOE permit number.

**Spray Period:**

Enter the start and end date for each application site.

**Site of Application:**

Enter the OBM map sheet zone, easting and northing, and block number for each application site.

**Pesticide Used:**

Enter the number of applications, application rate (in kilograms/hectare), proposed size of treatment area (in hectares), actual size of treatment area(in hectares), and the total quantity of pesticide product used (in kilograms active ingredient).

**Exterminator:**

Identify the name and number of the exterminator.

**Aircraft:**

Enter the aircraft registration number.

**Incidents / Complaints:**

Indicate if incidents occurred or complaints were received (yes/no). For incidents or complaints enter the reference number (supplied by MOE Pesticides Specialist)

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances and Remedies Applied**

| Forest Operations Inspected | Industry Submitted Reports | | | MNR Submitted Reports | | | Industry + MNR Total | | | Total Number of Non SFL Related Reports | Non-Compliance | | Remedy Applied | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Number in Compliance | Number Not In Compliance | Total Number | Number in Compliance | Number Not In Compliance | Total Number | In Compliance | Not In Compliance | Total Number Reports | | Activity | Number Non-Compliance | Written Warning | Remedy Order(s) Issued | | | s. 58 Penalty Levied | s. 64 Offence Levied | s.59 License Suspended/ Cancelled |
| | | | | | | | | | | | | | | s. 55 | s. 56 | s. 57 | | | |
| Access | | | | | | | | | | | Aggregates | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Area of Concern | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Fire Prevention | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Road Construction | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Water Crossing | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Other | | | | | | | | |
| Harvest | | | | | | | | | | | Area of Concern | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Cutting | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Fire Prevention | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Wasteful Practice | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Wood Measurement/ Movement | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Other | | | | | | | | |
| Renewal | | | | | | | | | | | Fire Prevention | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Pesticide Application | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Renewal | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Other | | | | | | | | |
| Maintenance | | | | | | | | | | | Fire Prevention | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Pesticide Application | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Tending | | | | | | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | | | Other | | | | | | | | |
| Total | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |

Note: Remedies are not always applied the same year in which the non-compliance occurred. Numbers for Reports and Non-Compliance are not comparable to the numbers for Remedies Applied.

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-6: Annual Report of Forest Compliance Inspection Reports, Non-Compliances And Remedies Applied

This table summarizes the forest operations inspection reports information collected by the SFL holder and MNR, and the Activities in which non-compliances occurred. It also summarizes the remedies applied during the fiscal year. The requirements for forest operations compliance inspections and reporting are described in the Forest Compliance Handbook. The inspections reported in this table are those which were conducted and submitted to FOIP during the period of he Annual Report regardless of the year in which the operation was conducted. The remedies reported in this table are those which were applied during the period of the Annual Report regardless of the year in which the non-compliance for which they were applied, occurred.

Complete the table for each forest operation type as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Industry Submitted Reports** by Operation Type (Access, Harvest, Renewal and Maintenance):
Enter the number of reports determined to be In Compliance, the number of reports determined to be Not In Compliance reports and complete the totals.

**MNR Submitted Reports** by Operation Type (Access, Harvest, Renewal and Maintenance):
Enter the number of reports determined to be In Compliance reports, the number of reports determined to be Not In Compliance reports and complete the totals.

The SFL holder will add together the numbers from the industry and MNR submitted reports to populate the columns for the **Industry + MNR Total Reports**.

MNR will provide the Total Number of MNR Non SFL Related Reports and the SFL holder will add these numbers to the industry Non SFL Related Reports to populate the column for **Non SFL Related Reports**. The SFL holder will complete the column totals.

**Non-Compliances**
MNR will provide the number of non-compliances for each activity by operation type.

**Remedy Applied**
MNR will provide the total number of written warnings, orders issued, administrative penalties paid, and offence fines paid, and licences suspended or cancelled.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area**

| | Area (ha) - Annualized | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PLANNED HARVEST | | | ACTUAL HARVEST | | | | | | |
| | Past Plans | | | Past Plans | | | Current Plan | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | Projections | |
| **Forest Unit** | **<year>** | **<year>** | **<year>** | **<year>** | **<year>** | **<year>** | **Planned Harvest** | **Actual Harvest** | **Medium-Term <year+20>** | **Long-Term <year+100>** |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-7: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Area

This table summarizes planned and actual harvest area by forest unit for the current and previous plans, as well as the projected harvest area for the current plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2.

**Area (ha) - Annualized:**

Enter the average annual planned and actual harvest area (in hectares) by forest unit for the applicable past plans and current plan.

**Planned Harvest:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available. For the current plan, enter the planned harvest.

**Actual Harvest:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available. For the current plan, enter the actual harvest.

**Projected Harvest Area:**

Include information from the current plan to reflect projections from the plan long-term management direction.

Enter all totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume**

| | Volume ('000 $m^3$) - Annualized | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PLANNED HARVEST VOLUME | | | ACTUAL HARVEST VOLUME | | | | | | |
| | Past Plans | | | Past Plans | | | Current Plan | | | |
| | | | | | | | | | Projections | |
| Species | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | Planned Harvest | Actual Harvest | Medium-Term <year+20> | Long-Term <year+100> |
| | | | | | | | | | | |
| Total | | | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-8: Summary of Planned and Actual Harvest Volume

This table summarizes forecast and actual harvest volume by species for the current and previous plans, as well as the projected volume by species for the current plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Species:**

Enter the species.

**Volume ('000 $m^3$) - Annualized:**

Enter the average annual planned and actual harvest volume (in '000 cubic meters) by species for the applicable past plans and the current plan.

**Planned Harvest Volume:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available. For the current plan, enter the planned harvest volume.

**Actual Harvest Volume:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available. For the current plan, enter the actual harvest volume.

**Projected Harvest Volume:**

Include information from the current plan to reflect projections from the plan long-term management direction.

Enter all totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-9: Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations**

| Operation | Area (ha) - Annualized | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | PLANNED | | | ACTUAL | | | PLANNED | ACTUAL |
| | Past Plans | | | Past Plans | | | Current Plan | Current Plan |
| | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> |
| **Renewal** | | | | | | | | |
| Natural Regeneration | | | | | | | | |
| Clearcut Silvicultural System (even-aged) | | | | | | | | |
| Shelterwood Silvicultural System (even-aged) | | | | | | | | |
| Selection Silvicultural System - Selection Harvest (uneven-aged) | | | | | | | | |
| Artificial Regeneration | | | | | | | | |
| Planting | | | | | | | | |
| Seeding | | | | | | | | |
| Scarification | | | | | | | | |
| **Total Renewal** | | | | | | | | |
| **Site Preparation** (mechanical, chemical, prescribed burn) | | | | | | | | |
| Mechanical | | | | | | | | |
| Chemical | | | | | | | | |
| Prescribed Burn | | | | | | | | |
| **Total Site Preparation** | | | | | | | | |
| **Tending** | | | | | | | | |
| Cleaning | | | | | | | | |
| **Spacing, Pre-Commercial Thinning, Improvement Cutting** | | | | | | | | |
| Clearcut and Shelterwood Silvicultural Systems (even-aged) | | | | | | | | |
| Selection Silvicultural System (uneven-aged) | | | | | | | | |
| **Total Tending** | | | | | | | | |
| **Protection (Insect Pest Control)** | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-9 Summary of Planned and Actual Renewal, Tending and Protection Operations

This table summarizes the annualized area of renewal, tending and protection operations, including those associated with tree improvement. Planned and actual area from past plans and actual area from the current plan are included.

Complete the table as follows:

**Area (ha) - Annualized:**

Enter the average annual planned and actual silvicultural treatment area (in hectares) by treatment method for the applicable past plans. Enter the average annual projected silvicultural treatment area (in hectares) by treatment method for the current plan.

**Planned:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

**Actual:**

Enter information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available. Include information from the current plan to reflect actual for plan start year.

**Renewal**

**Regeneration:**

Natural: Enter the area of natural regeneration by silvicultural system and harvest method. Selection harvest includes those areas where stand improvement has been the primary objective.

Artificial: Enter the area of artificial regeneration by planting, seeding and scarification treatments.

**Site Preparation:**

Enter the area treated. Site preparation for natural regeneration is included in the area reported. For slash pile burns, report the area associated with the burned piles, rather than the total area that provided the source of the slash.

**Tending:**

Enter the area treated by tending method. Areas reported as selection cut harvest under regeneration, that are predominantly non-commercial, will also be reported as improvement cuts under tending.

**Protection (Insect Pest Control)**

Enter the area treated by protection method.

Enter all totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-10: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends**

| | | Term | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Forest Unit** | | **<year> to <year>** | **<year> to <year>** | **<year> to <year>** | **<year> to <year>** | **<year> to <year>** | **<year> to <year>** | **<year> to <year>** |
| | **Harvest/Salvage (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Surveyed (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Regenerated (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Unavailable for Regeneration (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Un-surveyed (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Percent FU Successfully Regenerated** | | | | | | | |
| | **Harvest/Salvage (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Surveyed (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Regenerated (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Unavailable for Regeneration (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| | **Un-surveyed (ha)** | | | | | | | |
| **Total** | **Percent Successfully Regenerated** | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-10: Summary of Harvest and Regeneration Trends

This table summarizes harvest, including salvage, and regeneration level trends over multiple five-year terms by forest unit. The regenerated area will be updated with the preparation of successive year seven and year ten annual reports.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest. For past plans, use the forest unit in FMP-2 that best describes those used in the applicable past plan.

**Year to Year:**

Enter the start year and end year (e.g. 1995 to 2000) of the applicable five-year term as column headings. The applicable term is the term during which the area was harvested, not the term in which regeneration was assessed.

**Harvest/Salvage (ha):**

Enter the total actual harvest and salvage area for the applicable term. This information is summarized from the applicable annual reports. The total harvest and salvage area should equate to the total area surveyed, regenerated, unavailable for regeneration, and un-surveyed.

**Surveyed (ha):**

Enter the total area surveyed for free-to-grow, by forest unit for the applicable term.

**Regenerated (ha):**

Enter the total area successfully regenerated by forest unit for the applicable term.

**Unavailable for Regeneration (ha):**

Enter the total area unavailable for regeneration (e.g. roads and landings) for the applicable term.

**Un-surveyed (ha):**

Enter the total un-surveyed area by forest unit for the applicable term.

**Percent FU Successfully Regenerated:**

Enter the percent of the area successfully regenerated by forest unit for the applicable term. Percent successfully regenerated = regenerated area / (harvest+salvage area - unavailable for regeneration).

Enter all totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-11: Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest**

| | | Area (ha) | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Past Plans | | | Current Plan <year> | | | |
| | | | | | | | Projections | |
| **Forest Unit** | **Age/Condition Class** | **<year>** | **<year>** | **<year>** | **Plan Start <year>** | **Plan End <year>** | **Medium-Term <year+20>** | **Long-Term <year+100>** |
| | Depleted | | | | | | | |
| | Below Regen Standard | | | | | | | |
| | 0-20 | | | | | | | |
| | 21-40 | | | | | | | |
| | 41-60 | | | | | | | |
| | 61-80 | | | | | | | |
| | 81-100 | | | | | | | |
| | 101-120 | | | | | | | |
| | 121-140 | | | | | | | |
| | 141-160 | | | | | | | |
| | 161-180 | | | | | | | |
| | 181-200 | | | | | | | |
| | 201+ | | | | | | | |
| **Forest Unit Subtotal** | | | | | | | | |
| **Total** | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-11: Summary of Forest Condition for the Available Managed Crown Productive Forest

This table summarizes the Crown productive forest area (ha) by forest unit and age over time. The source of the information is the planning inventory from past and current plans as reflected in the applicable FMP tables. The source of the current plan end data is the planning inventory and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2. For past plans, use the forest unit in FMP-2 that best describes those used in the applicable past plan.

**Age:**

Enter the age (e.g., 20-year age class, seral stage). This column is left blank for forest types managed under the selection silvicultural system.

**Area (ha)**

Enter the area of the Crown productive forest (in hectares) by forest unit and age for the applicable past and current plans.

**Past Plans:**

Enter past plan start year information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

**Current Plan:**

Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-12: Summary of Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species**

| | Area of Habitat (ha) | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Past Plans | | | Current Plan <year> | | | | |
| | | | | Plan Start | Projections | | | Plan End |
| Wildlife Species | <year> | <year> | <year> | <year> | Short-Term <year+10> | Medium-Term <year+20> | Long-Term <year+100> | <year> |
| | | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

**AR-12: Summary of Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species**

This table summarizes the area (in hectares) of habitat for species at risk and selected wildlife species over time. The source of the information is the model outputs from past and current plans. The source of the current plan end data is the model outputs and applicable FMP table prepared for the next plan.

Complete the set of tables as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Wildlife Species:**

Enter the common names of the species at risk and selected wildlife species.

**Area of Habitat (ha)**

Enter the area of habitat (in hectares) for the species at risk and selected wildlife species for the applicable past and current plans.

**Past Plans:**

Enter past plan start year information from at least three past plans, and insert the past plan start year as the sub-column heading. Include additional past plans if reliable data is available.

**Current Plan:**

Include information from the current plan to reflect plan start and specific required projections from the plan start year. Insert the plan start year or the projection year as part of the sub-column heading. Include current plan end information and insert the plan end year as part of the sub-column heading as well.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-13: Summary of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success**

| | | Area Assessed | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Area Successfully Regenerated | | | Area Not Successfully Regenerated | Total Area Assessed |
| Forest Unit | Silvicultural Ground Rule | Projected Forest Unit | Other Forest Unit | Total | | |
| Harvest | | | | | | |
| | Forest Unit Subtotal | | | | | |
| | Harvest Subtotal | | | | | |
| | | | | | | |
| Natural Disturbance | | | | | | |
| | Forest Unit Subtotal | | | | | |
| | Disturbance Subtotal | | | | | |
| | Total | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-13: Summary of Assessment of Regeneration and Silvicultural Success

This table provides a summary, by forest unit and silvicultural ground rule, of the area assessed and regenerated successfully. This table reports assessments for harvest and natural disturbance (including salvage). Assessments of regeneration of natural disturbance areas, which have been salvage harvested, are required. Assessments are not required for areas of natural disturbance that have not been salvage harvested, but may be included in the table when conducted.

Complete the table as follows:

Enter the management unit name, plan period and annual report year.

**Forest Unit:**

Enter the forest unit identified in FMP-2 that best describes the stands at the time of harvest.

**Harvest/Natural Disturbance:**

Report assessments by original disturbance (i.e., harvest or natural disturbance). The assessment of natural disturbances, where salvage harvest has been completed, is included under natural disturbance.

**Silvicultural Ground Rule:**

Enter the silvicultural ground rule from the current forest management plan that best represents the silvicultural ground rule that was implemented. In the case where an original silvicultural ground rule was revised, enter only the final ground rule implemented.

**Area Assessed (ha):**

**Area Successfully Regenerated:**

Enter the area (in hectares) that is successfully regenerated as either regenerated to projected FU (e.g., silvicultural success) or to another FU (e.g., regeneration success). Enter the total area regenerated as well.

**Area Not Successfully Regenerated:**

Enter the area (in hectares) that does not meet regeneration standards.

**Total Area Assessed:**

Enter the total area (in hectares) assessed.

Enter all subtotals and totals as required.

MANAGEMENT UNIT NAME: _____
PLAN PERIOD: _____TO_____
ANNUAL REPORT: _____TO_____

**AR-14: Assessment of Objective Achievement**

| | | | | | | LTMD - Projections | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Management Objective** | **Indicator** | **Plan Start Level** | **Desirable Level** | **Timing of Assessment** | **Target** | **Medium** | **Long** | **Assessment** |
| **Quantitative Objectives** | | | | | | | | |
| **Qualitative Objectives** | **Assessment:** | | | | | | | |

# INSTRUCTIONS

## AR-14: Assessment of Objective Achievement

This table summarizes management objectives, indicators, targets and achievement, and includes an assessment of achievement for each objective at the end of the plan period.

Enter the management unit name, the plan period and annual report year.

**Management Objective:**

Enter each management objective in the appropriate section of the table (i.e., quantitative or qualitative objectives) in text form. If the text of the objective is long, it may be paraphrased.

For each Quantitative Objective:

**Indicator/Measure:**

Enter the indicator used as a measure (e.g., preferred habitat in hectares, volume of wood by species group in cubic metres) for levels, targets and projections.

**Plan Start Level:**

Enter the plan start level for the indicator. This may represent a level for a point in time (e.g., selected species habitat) or a level for the ten-year period (e.g., available harvest volume)

**Desirable Level:**

Enter the desirable level for the indicator. The desirable level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

**Timing of Assessment;**

Enter the timing of assessment for the indicator (i.e. plan preparation, and/or plan implementation),

**Target:**

Enter the target level for the indicator. The target level may be a specific quantity, a range or a trend (i.e., increase, maintain, decrease).

**Plan End:**

Enter the actual plan end level (may be to date activity levels from the annual report or plan start levels for next plan).

**Long-Term Management Direction Projections**

Enter the level of objective achievement, from forest modelling for the long-term management direction, for the target year and for the short, medium and long term.

**Assessment:**

Enter a brief text description of the assessment of the level of achievement of each management objective. The assessment will consider the plan start, desirable, target and plan end achievement levels, as well as the trend of the indicator over time.

For each Qualitative Objective:

Enter each management objective with a qualitative measure. Provide a text assessment of achievement of each management objective.

1

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

**PART F – ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE WHITEFEATHER FOREST ..... 3**

**A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS ..... 3**
**1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN ..... 3**
1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning ..... 3
1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders ..... 3
1.1.2 Planning Team ..... 3
1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference ..... 4
1.1.2.2 Project Plan ..... 4
1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information ..... 4
1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction ..... 4
1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge ..... 4
1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction ..... 5
1.2.1 Introduction ..... 5
1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors ..... 5
1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations ..... 6
1.3.1 Introduction ..... 6
1.3.6 Roads ..... 6
**2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... 6**
2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations ..... 6
2.1.1 Introduction ..... 6
2.1.2 Planning Team ..... 7
2.1.2.1 Terms of Reference and Project Plan ..... 7
2.1.5 Background Information ..... 7
2.1.9 Roads ..... 7
**4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING .. 8**
4.1 Introduction ..... 8
4.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders ..... 8
4.2 Planning Team ..... 8
4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning ..... 8
4.6 Documentation ..... 9
4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report ..... 9

**B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS ..... 9**
**3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION ..... 9**
3.6 Long-Term Management Direction ..... 9
**4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS ..... 9**
4.1 Introduction ..... 9
4.5 Roads ..... 9
4.7 Monitoring and Assessment ..... 10
4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections ..... 10

4.7.2 Exceptions ..... 10
4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration Success ..... 10
**6.0 DOCUMENTATION ..... 10**
6.1 Supplementary Documentation ..... 10
**8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM ..... 11**
8.1 Introduction ..... 11
8.5 Roads ..... 11
8.9 Supplementary Documentation ..... 11

**E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... 11**
**1.0 INTRODUCTION ..... 11**
**4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS ..... 12**
4.1 Implementation of Forest Operations – Trend Analysis ..... 12
4.1.6 Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species ..... 12
4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement ..... 12
**7.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION ..... 12**
7.1 Introduction ..... 12
7.2 Annual Report on Plan Implementation ..... 12
7.3 Summary Report on Plan Implementation ..... 13
7.3.1 Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Five ..... 13
7.3.2 Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight ..... 14
7.4 Final Summary Report on Plan Implementation ..... 14

# PART F – ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE WHITEFEATHER FOREST

Part F describes requirements for the Whitefeather Forest that are additional to requirements described in Parts A, B and E of this Forest Management Planning Manual.

Section numbers of Part F correspond to the related sections of Parts A, B and E. New section numbers are introduced in Part F if no such related section exists.

## A – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING PROCESS

## 1.0 PHASE I: PREPARING FOR THE TEN-YEAR FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN

### 1.1 Preparing for Stage One – Organizing for Planning

1.1.1.2 Role of Pikangikum Elders

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest, and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum's customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, in order to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the Local Citizens Committee. Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve MNR of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

1.1.2 Planning Team

For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNR District Manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. The MNR District Manager will appoint the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation to the planning team.

#### 1.1.2.1 Terms of Reference

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team terms of reference will also contain:

(g) a description of the process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, in order to seek their guidance (Part A, Section 1.1.1.2).

#### 1.1.2.2 Project Plan

For the Whitefeather Forest, the project plan will describe responsibilities and specific tasks that are assigned to the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation on the planning team.

### 1.1.8 Assembly and Update of Background Information

For the Whitefeather Forest, the background information that will be available for the period of plan preparation will also include:

(m) Pikangikum indigenous knowledge.

#### 1.1.8.1 Sources of Direction

For the Whitefeather Forest, the documents that provide direction and guidance for decision-making will also include:

(k) the existing approved land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest (Keeping the Land: A Land Use Strategy for the Whitefeather Forest and Adjacent Areas), or its successor.

#### 1.1.8.14 Pikangikum Indigenous Knowledge

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum indigenous knowledge will be part of the background information that will be available for use in planning, in order to support the incorporation of Pikangikum customary stewardship practices. Pikangikum indigenous knowledge is defined as the integrated body of wisdom, values, perceptions and teachings that emerges out of the practices of everyday life of Pikangikum people.

Pikangikum indigenous knowledge speaks to a range of subject matters, including but not limited to: geography, the locations of natural resource features and cultural heritage sites, ecosystem dynamics, and teachings that direct certain kinds of behaviour, including appropriate ways of relating to other beings on the land. Some of this knowledge will be documented on the values map (Part A, Section 1.1.8.9), and some may be documented in the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1).

Many aspects of Pikangikum indigenous knowledge are more conceptual in nature, and are intimately tied to language. Pikangikum indigenous knowledge is transmitted largely through demonstration on the land, and through oral traditions and teachings. To ensure Pikangikum indigenous knowledge is available for use in planning, another source of information will be the Pikangikum people, particularly the elders.

The approach to incorporating Pikangikum indigenous knowledge in forest management planning will be described in the Aboriginal Background Information Report (Part A, Section 4.6.1).

## 1.2 Preparing for Stage Two – Proposed Long-Term Management Direction

### 1.2.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the development of the long-term management direction, the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for woodland caribou (forest-dwelling boreal population) on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning team will be guided by MNR policy direction for woodland caribou, and the strategic land use direction for woodland caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to time.

A description of how the long-term management direction provides for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan will contain an updated description of how the long-term management direction provides for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest.

### 1.2.6 Primary Road Corridors

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary road corridors for the ten-year period of the forest management plan through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

### 1.3 Preparing for Stage Three – Planning of Proposed Operations

#### 1.3.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the planning of forest operations for the first five-year operational term, the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning team will be guided by MNR policy direction for woodland caribou, and the strategic land use direction for woodland caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to time.

A description of how the planned operations for the first five-year operational term provide for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan will contain an updated description of how the planned operations for the first five-year operational term provide for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest.

#### 1.3.6 Roads

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads for the first five-year operational term through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the first five-year operational term has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the first five-year operational term has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

## 2.0 PHASE II: PLANNING OF OPERATIONS FOR SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

### 2.1 Preparing for Stage One – Planning of Proposed Operations

#### 2.1.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, in the planning of forest operations for the second five-year operational term, the planning team will seek to provide a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest. The planning

team will be guided by MNR policy direction for woodland caribou, and the strategic land use direction for woodland caribou in *Keeping the Land*, as amended from time to time.

A description of how the planned operations for the second five-year operational term provide for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest will be prepared. The supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year operational term will contain an updated description of how the planned operations provide for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest.

### 2.1.2 Planning Team

#### 2.1.2.1 Terms of Reference and Project Plan

For the Whitefeather Forest, the review and update of the terms of reference will also address changes in the process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group. The review and update of the project plan will also address changes in the description of responsibilities and specific tasks that are assigned to the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation on the planning team.

### 2.1.5 Background Information

For the Whitefeather Forest, the background information that will be reviewed and updated will also include:

(k) Pikangikum indigenous knowledge.

### 2.1.9 Roads

For the Whitefeather Forest, the planning team will plan primary, branch and operational roads for the second five-year operational term through a strategic access planning approach. The planning team will be guided by the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the second five-year operational term has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be prepared. The supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year operational term will contain an updated description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

# 4.0 ABORIGINAL INVOLVEMENT IN FOREST MANAGEMENT PLANNING

## 4.1 Introduction

### 4.1.1 Role of Pikangikum Elders

For the Whitefeather Forest, Pikangikum First Nation elders will play a guiding role in forest management planning. The guiding role will be a continuation of the role that the elders played in the development of the land use strategy for the Whitefeather Forest, and includes provision of strategic advice, communication with the Pikangikum community, and building Pikangikum community consensus. The guiding role of the elders is a part of Pikangikum's customary decision-making approach, and is associated with the role of the elders as senior stewards of the land who are responsible for passing on Pikangikum customary stewardship traditions.

Pikangikum First Nation elders will be represented through the Whitefeather Steering Group, or its successor. The process for planning team communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group, in order to seek their guidance, will be described in the terms of reference for the planning team (Part A, Section 1.1.2.1).

The guiding role of the Whitefeather Steering Group is separate from, and additional to, any Pikangikum First Nation representation on the planning team and the Local Citizens Committee. Communication with the Whitefeather Steering Group does not relieve MNR of the obligation to consult with Pikangikum First Nation.

## 4.2 Planning Team

For the Whitefeather Forest, the MNR District Manager will offer an opportunity to Pikangikum First Nation to select one or more representatives to participate on the planning team. The MNR District Manager will appoint the representatives of Pikangikum First Nation to the planning team.

## 4.4 Development of a Consultation Approach for Forest Management Planning

For the Whitefeather Forest, the consultation approach for Pikangikum First Nation will provide an opportunity for Pikangikum First Nation to build community consensus prior to each formal public consultation opportunity, and prior to any corresponding consultation opportunity that may be developed for an adjacent Aboriginal community. The consultation approach will describe the approach to incorporating Pikangikum indigenous knowledge in forest management planning and an appropriate means for documentation of Pikangikum community input.

### 4.6 Documentation

4.6.1 Aboriginal Background Information Report

For the Whitefeather Forest, the Aboriginal Background Information Report will also include:

(e) a description of the approach to incorporating Pikangikum indigenous knowledge in forest management planning.

# B – FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN CONTENT REQUIREMENTS

## 3.0 DEVELOPMENT OF THE LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION

### 3.6 Long-Term Management Direction

A description of how the long-term management direction provides for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan

## 4.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS

### 4.1 Introduction

A description of how the planned operations for the first five-year operational term provide for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan.

### 4.5 Roads

A description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the ten-year period, and primary, branch and operational roads for the first five-year operational term, has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan.

### 4.7 Monitoring and Assessment

4.7.1 Forest Operations Inspections

For the Whitefeather Forest, the ten-year compliance strategy will also describe the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members, in order to gather and record Pikangikum indigenous knowledge.

4.7.2 Exceptions

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for exceptions will also include:

(e) the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members, in order to gather and record Pikangikum indigenous knowledge.

4.7.3 Assessment of Regeneration Success

For the Whitefeather Forest, the monitoring program for the assessment of regeneration success will also include:

(e) the opportunities for participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members, in order to gather and record Pikangikum indigenous knowledge.

## 6.0 DOCUMENTATION

### 6.1 Supplementary Documentation

For the Whitefeather Forest, the supplementary documentation of the Forest Management Plan will also include:

(q) a description of how the long-term management direction provides for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest;

(r) a description of how the planned operations for the first five-year operational term provide for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest;

(s) a description of how the planning of primary road corridors for the 10-year period has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest; and

(t) a description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the first five-year operational term has addressed the direction for access development

and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

# 8.0 PLANNED OPERATIONS FOR THE SECOND FIVE-YEAR TERM

## 8.1 Introduction

A description of how the planned operations for the second five-year operational term provide for a continuous supply (i.e., spatially and temporally) of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest will be provided in the supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year operational term.

## 8.5 Roads

A description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads for the second five-year operational term has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest, will be provided in the supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year operational term.

## 8.9 Supplementary Documentation

For the Whitefeather Forest, the supplementary documentation for the planned operations for the second five-year operational term will also contain:

(n) a description of how the planned operations provide for a continuous supply of habitat for woodland caribou on the Whitefeather Forest; and

(o) a description of how the planning of primary, branch and operational roads has addressed the direction for access development and management in *Keeping the Land*, and the objective in *Keeping the Land* to maintain remoteness as a defining feature of the Whitefeather Forest.

# E – MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

# 1.0 INTRODUCTION

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on plan implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Part E, Section 7.0 describes the requirements for the reports.

# 4.0 ADDITIONAL REQUIREMENTS FOR THE YEAR SEVEN AND TEN MANAGEMENT UNIT ANNUAL REPORTS

## 4.1 Implementation of Forest Operations – Trend Analysis

4.1.6 Habitat for Species at Risk and Selected Wildlife Species

For the Whitefeather Forest, woodland caribou will be one of the wildlife species included in AR-12. The analysis of the information in AR-12 will include a discussion of trends for woodland caribou habitat, and any implications for the achievement of the management objective for woodland caribou habitat in the current forest management plan.

## 4.5 Assessment of Objective Achievement

For the Whitefeather Forest, the management objective for woodland caribou habitat in the current forest management plan will be one of the objectives included in AR-14. The summary of the assessment of objective achievement in the text of the annual report will include a discussion of the achievement of the habitat target for woodland caribou in the current forest management plan, and any concerns arising from the analysis of trends for woodland caribou habitat (Part E, Section 4.1.6).

# 7.0 REPORTS TO PIKANGIKUM FIRST NATION

## 7.1 Introduction

For the Whitefeather Forest, additional reports on plan implementation will be prepared for Pikangikum First Nation. Those reports include:

(a) an Annual Report on Plan Implementation each year (Part E, Section 7.2);

(b) a Summary Report on Plan Implementation in each of the fifth and eighth years (Part E, Section 7.3); and

(c) a Final Summary Report on Plan Implementation in the year after completion of plan implementation (Part E, Section 7.4).

## 7.2 Annual Report on Plan Implementation

In November of each year, the sustainable forest licensee will prepare an Annual Report on Plan Implementation for the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group. The Management Unit Annual Report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNR in November of each year will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

(a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Pikangikum First Nation during the year, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;

(b) the amount of area harvested during the year;

(c) the amount of area site prepared, renewed and tended during the year; and

(d) the names of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members who participated in monitoring of plan implementation during the year.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Pikangikum Chief and Council and the Whitefeather Steering Group, which may involve an oral presentation. The information products in the Management Unit Annual Report for the applicable year of plan implementation will be available to assist with communication of the report.

## 7.3 Summary Report on Plan Implementation

In addition to the Annual Report on Plan Implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNR, will prepare summary reports for Pikangikum First Nation in each of the fifth and eighth years.

### 7.3.1 Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Five

In the fifth year of plan implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNR, will prepare a Summary Report on Plan Implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The Year Three Management Unit Annual Report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNR in November of the fourth year of plan implementation will serve as a source of information.

The contents of the report will include:

(a) the amount of forest management-related employment for members of Pikangikum First Nation to date, including employment in forest operations, wood-processing facilities, and management and administration;

(b) identification of the Pikangikum First Nation traplines affected by forest operations to date;

(c) the amount of forest operations to date, including:

(i) kilometres of road construction;
(ii) area of harvest;
(iii) area of site preparation, by treatment type (e.g., prescribed burn, mechanical, herbicides);
(iv) area of renewal, by treatment type (e.g., natural, seeding, planting);
(v) area of tending, by treatment type (e.g., manual, herbicides); and

(vi) area of insect pest management, by treatment type (e.g., Bt);

(d) identification of the roads and road networks that have controls on public access to date, and the roads and road networks that have been decommissioned to date;

(e) a summary of the participation of Pikangikum First Nation elders, trappers and other community members in monitoring of plan implementation to date, including a summary of the information recorded by Pikangikum First Nation participants; and

(f) a summary of the forest management-related educational opportunities that have been provided for Pikangikum First Nation (e.g., training, tours), and a summary of the participation of members of Pikangikum First Nation in those educational opportunities.

The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation in the early stages of the planning of forest operations for the second five-year operational term in Year Five (Part A, Section 2.0). The information products in the Year Three Management Unit Annual Report will also be available.

#### 7.3.2 Summary Report on Plan Implementation - Year Eight

In the eighth year of plan implementation, the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNR, will prepare an updated Summary Report on Plan Implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The Year Seven Management Unit Annual Report that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNR in November of the eighth year of plan implementation will serve as a source of information.

The report will update the information that was included in the Summary Report on Plan Implementation – Year Five. In addition, the report will include:

(a) a summary of how plan implementation to date has contributed to the achievement of the management objectives of the forest management plan, and achievement of the goals and objectives in *Keeping the Land*; and

(b) a summary of the analysis of renewal and tending activities, and the recommended changes to improve the effectiveness of renewal and tending operations (Part E, Section 4.3).

The report will be made available to Pikangikum First Nation in the early stages of the planning of the next forest management plan, which begins in Year Eight. The information products in the Year Seven Management Unit Annual Report will also be available.

### 7.4 Final Summary Report on Plan Implementation

In the year after completion of plan implementation (i.e., Year Eleven), the sustainable forest licensee, with the assistance of MNR, will prepare a Final Summary Report on Plan Implementation for Pikangikum First Nation. The Year Ten Management Unit Annual Report

that the sustainable forest licensee submits to MNR in November of the first year after completion of plan implementation will serve as a source of information.
The report will update the information and summaries that were included in the Summary Report on Plan Implementation – Year Eight, to reflect the full implementation of the forest management plan.

The sustainable forest licensee will determine the method of communication of the report to the Pikangikum Chief and Council, the Whitefeather Steering Group and the Pikangikum community. The information products in the Year Ten Management Unit Annual Report will be available to assist with communication of the report.

1

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Appendix I: Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking and the Whitefeather Forest ..... 2
Appendix II: Analysis Package Contents ..... 4
Appendix III: Social and Economic Description ..... 6
Appendix IV: List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps ..... 9
Appendix V: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form ..... 11
Appendix VI: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form ..... 17
Appendix VII: Operatinal Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits ..... 23

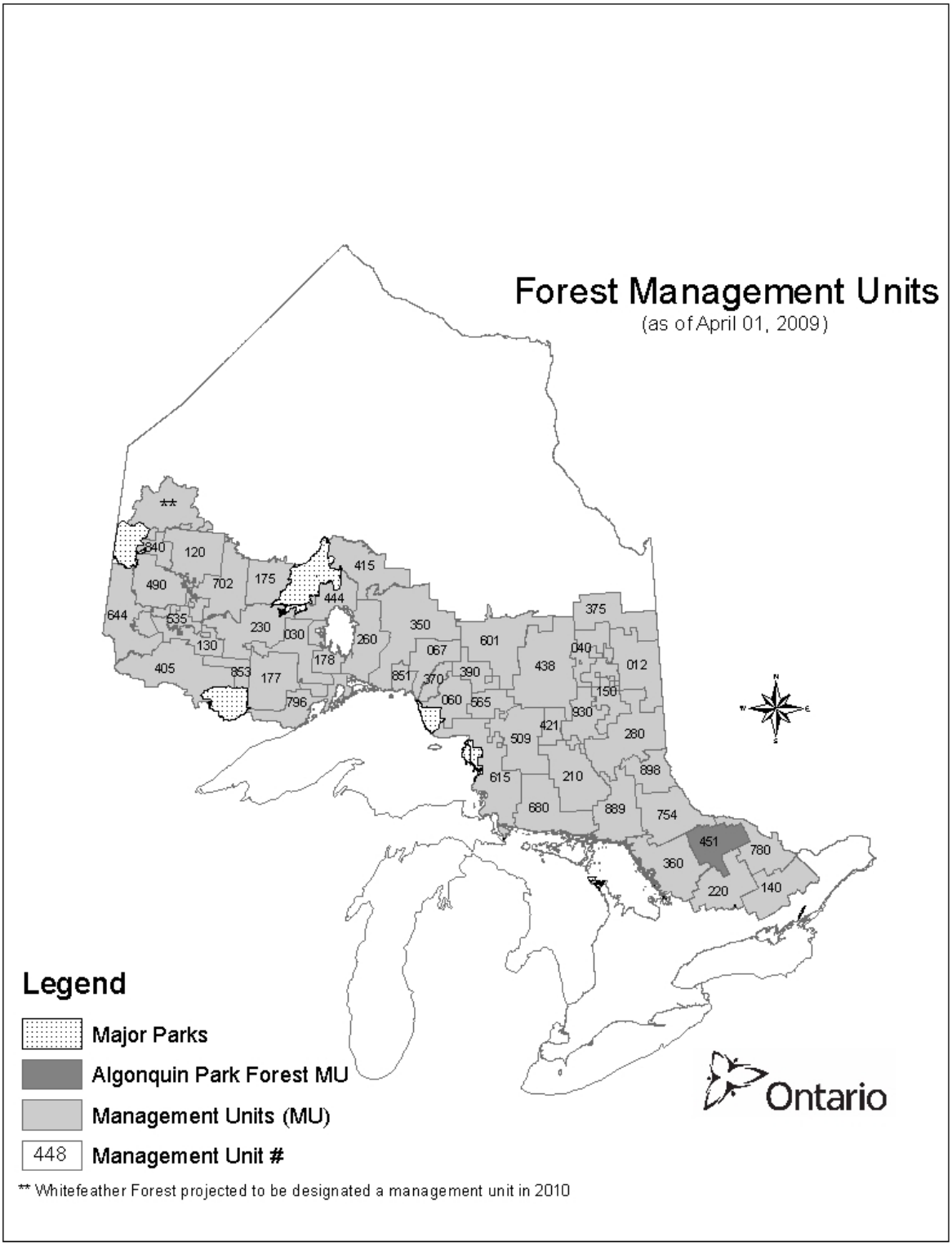
# Appendix I: Management Units within the Area of the Undertaking and the Whitefeather Forest

**Figure APP-1: List of Management Units (April 1, 2009)***

| MU # | MU Name | MU # | MU Name |
|---|---|---|---|
| 615 | Algoma Forest | 140 | Mazinaw-Lanark Forest |
| 451 | Algonquin Park Forest | 390 | Nagagami Forest |
| 444 | Armstrong Forest | 150 | Nighthawk Forest |
| 220 | Bancroft-Minden Forest | 754 | Nipissing Forest |
| 067 | Big Pic Forest | 680 | Northshore Forest |
| 370 | Black River Forest | 415 | Ogoki Forest |
| 178 | Black Sturgeon Forest | 780 | Ottawa Valley Forest |
| 175 | Caribou Forest | 851 | Pic River Ojibway Forest |
| 375 | Cochrane-Moose River | 421 | Pineland Forest |
| 405 | Crossroute Forest | 840 | Red Lake Forest |
| 177 | Dog River-Matawin Forest | 930 | Romeo Malette Forest |
| 535 | Dryden Forest | 853 | Sapawe Forest |
| 230 | English River Forest | 040 | Smooth Rock Falls Forest |
| 360 | French-Severn Forest | 210 | Spanish Forest |
| 438 | Gordon Cosens Forest | 030 | Spruce River Forest |
| 601 | Hearst Forest | 889 | Sudbury Forest |
| 012 | Iroquois Falls Forest | 898 | Temagami |
| 350 | Kenogami Forest | 280 | Timiskaming Forest |
| 644 | Kenora Forest | 120 | Trout Lake Forest |
| 702 | Lac Seul Forest | 130 | Wabigoon Forest |
| 260 | Lake Nipigon Forest | 490 | Whiskey Jack Forest |
| 796 | Lakehead Forest | ** | Whitefeather Forest |
| 565<br>509 | Magpie Forest<br>Martel Forest | 060 | White River Forest |

* (as designated under the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, Section 7)
** (projected to be designated in 2010)

**Figure APP-2: Map of Management Units (April 1, 2009)**



# Appendix II: Analysis Package Contents

The analysis package will be used to document the information, assumptions, and decisions made during the strategic analysis conducted to support the development of the long-term management direction, and will consist of text, tables, maps and other information. The analysis package will be included in the supplementary documentation of the forest management plan.

The satisfactory completion of each progress checkpoint will be documented in the analysis package and will include the following documentation:

**Planning Inventory (Part A, Section 1.1.8.5);**

(a) Development of the planning inventory products and the manner in which forest description information is updated, projected, or forecasted.
(b) Documentation of Planning Inventory Checkpoint

**Current Forest Condition (Part A, Section 1.2.2);**

(a) Results of the planning team's review of forest classifications from the current forest management plan including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise existing classifications;
(b) Development of the base model inventory and forest classifications:
  (i) the manner in which the planning inventory products are combined, classified and updated in the base model inventory.
  (ii) the assumptions used to update and forecast forest classification information (e.g. management decision attributes);
  (iii) the assumptions, methodologies and rationale for the classification of forest units, landscape biodiversity indicators and other classifications.
(c) Documentation of Current Forest Condition Checkpoint

**Base Model Inventory and Base Model (Part A, Section 1.2.4);**

(a) Results of the planning team's review of base model assumptions from the current forest management plan including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise existing model assumptions;
(b) how background information, specifically recommendations from the year-seven management unit annual report, was considered and incorporated into the model assumptions;
(c) if applicable, the manner in which management zones have been classified in the base model inventory and represented in the base model;
(d) the manner in which reserves, anticipated reserves and modified harvest areas are represented in the base model inventory and base model;

(e) methods and results for any sensitivity analysis conducted in the development of the base model assumptions;
(f) growth projections and yield curves, and the source(s) of information used in their development;
(g) forest dynamics (e.g., growth and yield, succession assumptions, disturbance assumptions);
(h) strategic silviculture options;
(i) management assumptions (e.g., including harvest flow rules, operability);
(j) a digital copy of the model run for the base model;
(k) Documentation of Base Model Inventory and Base Model Checkpoint

**Management Objectives (Part A, Section 1.2.5.1);**

(a) results of the planning team's review of management objectives from the current forest management plan including rationale for decisions to confirm, update or revise existing management objectives.
(b) how background information, specifically recommendations from the year seven management unit annual report and forest management guides, was considered in the development of management objectives;
(c) Summary of scoping investigations and significant conclusions or results including:
    (i) changes and/or additions that are made to base model inputs and assumptions;
    (ii) results and conclusions that provide rationale for specific management objectives, indicators and desired levels and;
    (iii) a digital copy of a selected model run(s) that best represents each investigation;
(d) Documentation of Management Objectives Checkpoint

**Proposed Long-term Management Direction (Part A, Section 1.2.7);**

(a) how management objectives were represented in the analysis;
(b) how the achievement of objectives was interpreted from the model results;
(c) a summary of changes to the base model and rationale for those changes;
(d) a summary of modelling results including:
    (i) key results and conclusions that provide rationale for adjustment to targets, if applicable; and
    (ii) the conclusions of the analysis, with a digital copy of the model run for the proposed long-term management direction.
(e) Documentation of Support for the Proposed Long-Term Management Direction, Determination of Sustainability and Primary Road Corridors Checkpoint

# Appendix III: Social and Economic Description

## Part 1: Demographic Profiles

The profile of each community identified in Part B Section 2.2.1 will contain the following data:

- population and labour force;
- community diversity and official language (diversity is an indicator of community resilience);
- household characteristics;
- individual income by gender;
- household income;
- educational accomplishment (education is also an indicator of community resilience); and
- labour force dependency ratios.

The standardized demographic profile is derived from Statistics Canada census data, and the most recent census data that are available are often several years old or more. The Ministry of Northern Development, Mines and Forestry Regional Economic Development Branch is also a source for community profile information. Other community data can be found on the Statistics Canada web site (http://www.statcan.ca) under Community Profiles. A planning team representative(s) is required to contact economic development officers in the communities identified in the social and economic context for the management unit, and ask them if they would review the profile, update it where they can, and add further relevant insight. Additional or updated information will be added to the profile in the most reader-friendly format, which may simply be as text.

## Part 2: Description of the Industrial and Non-Industrial Uses of the Forest

Information describing the industrial and non-industrial uses of the forest provides the baseline information on the social and economic environment affected by management decisions in a forest management plan. The information in the description will be considered in the development of management objectives and the long-term management direction, and the planning of forest operations.

The planning team will collect and summarize information described in this section, where this information is available. The availability of this information will vary between management units. Sources of this information include government, the private sector and members of the public. Information may also be available from web sites, reports, databases or other media. The sources of information used will be referenced in the description. If businesses are not willing to disclose information, the planning team will document, in the description, the efforts made to obtain the information.

The description should be organized by sector.

***Timber***

1. List the holders of overlapping licences and forest resource licences and describe wood supply commitments in force.

2. For each year over the past five years, show the volume of wood from the forest, by conifer, intolerant hardwood, and tolerant hardwood, utilized by each receiving mill.

3. Describe the destinations of chips produced by local sawmills that use wood from the forest.

4. For the mills that receive a substantial amount of wood from the management unit, describe:

   - the types of products made;
   - employment (includes woodlands and woodlands contractors);
   - ownership of the mill over the past five years;
   - recent major upgrades; and
   - any events such as strikes, fires, etc that caused significant downtime.

5. Provide, on an annual basis for each of the last five years, the actual harvest volume, the value of stumpage (sub-divided by timber dues, payments to the forest renewal trust and payments to the forestry futures trust), and the average stumpage paid per cubic metre.

***Recreation and Tourism***

1. Describe the provincial parks and conservation reserves, within and adjacent to the management unit.

2. For each lodge within or adjacent to the forest management unit, list the name of the business, capacity, type of lodge (e.g., hunting/fishing, snowmobile, etc.), and number of outpost camps. Where possible, also provide, the occupancy levels, the location of origin of the clients, seasonality of operations, and other such relevant information. Discuss trends of interest. Also describe how the lodge can be accessed.

3. Where available, discuss the revenue generated from tourist lodges and employment (direct, indirect and induced).

4. Describe the amount of direct local employment in the sector, and provide a breakdown of the seasonality of this employment. Determine indirect and induced employment.

5. Describe the recreational facilities available on the management unit such as campgrounds, and trails for snowmobiles, all terrain vehicles, hiking, mountain biking, cross country skiing.

6. Describe Crown land recreation activities (e.g., hunting, fishing, Crown land camping, use of trails, snowmobiling, etc) on the unit.

7. Describe any enhancements to quality or capacity of tourism lodges made during the past five years.

8. Describe any relevant tourism expenditure data, willingness to pay information, etc.

9. Describe any relevant commercial tourism activities on the unit that are not associated with lodges (e.g., ecotourism or adventure tourism), provide the number of clients such businesses bring to the forest, and their impact on the local and provincial economies.

10. Provide hunting and fishing data relevant to the management unit (e.g., the number of resident and non-resident licences issued).

11. Provide available data on use of Crown land within the forest management unit for recreation.

***Mining, Aggregate and Hydro Generation***

1. Describe any mining, aggregate and hydro facilities on or adjacent to the forest management unit. Where mining operations are found, describe the amount of mineral produced, reserve capacity, and expected mine life. Where available, discuss the revenue generated from the mine and employment (direct, indirect and induced). Discuss the economic contribution of mineral exploration activity on the unit.

2. Where aggregates are produced, describe the number of pits and the amount produced, as well as revenue and employment information where available.

3. Where hydro facilities are present, describe the employment and the economic impact of the operation on the local area.

***Other***

1. Discuss the number of traplines on the forest management unit, the number of trappers and estimate the trapping revenue.

2. Describe the number of baitfish operations and their economic impact.

3. Indicate how many people are employed by the MNR District office(s) associated with the management unit.

# Appendix IV: List of Information to be Portrayed on Values Maps

| | |
|---|---|
| **Natural Resource Features such as:** | |
| **Fisheries** | |
| • major fish communities by lake/stream<br>• bait fish lakes<br>• spawning areas<br>• nursery areas | • migration areas<br>• headwater lakes and streams<br>• food supply areas |
| **Wildlife** | |
| • moose concentration areas (early & late winter)<br>• moose aquatic feeding areas<br>• mineral licks<br>• calving sites<br>• deer wintering areas (yards)<br>• raptor nests (e.g., eagles, ospreys, red-shouldered hawks, Cooper's hawks) | • heronries<br>• waterfowl nesting areas<br>• important habitats of special concern, threatened and endangered species *<br>• caribou migration routes<br>• caribou calving/high summer use areas<br>• caribou wintering areas |
| **Forests** | |
| • tree improvement areas *<br>• seed orchards *<br>• seed collection areas | • genetic test areas *<br>• research plots (e.g., growth and yield plots) * |
| **Forest Resources Uses/Values such as:** | |
| **Tourism Establishments** | |
| • main base lodges<br>• outpost camps | • commercial boat caches<br>• potential tourism areas |
| **Cottaging/Residential Sites or Areas** | |
| • existing development<br>• remote cottage sites | • proposed development (from lakeshore management plans) |
| **Mineral/Aggregate/Quarry Developments** | |
| • pit or quarry permits or licences | • active mining claims |
| **Commercial Fur** | |
| • registered trapline areas | • trapper cabins |
| **Crown Land Recreation** | |
| • access points<br>• canoe routes<br>• portage trails<br>• hiking/nature trails | • snowmobile trails<br>• cross-country ski trails<br>• approved boat caches<br>• land use permit hunt camps |
| **Bear Management Areas** | |
| **Wild Rice Production Areas** | |
| **Enhanced Management Areas** | |
| **Existing and Planned Infrastructure Features such as:** | |
| • roads and railways<br>• utilities (pipelines, hydro lines)<br>• waste and sewage disposal sites<br>• airports/airstrips<br>• communications towers | • logging camps<br>• mills<br>• potable water supply sources, including sites on lakes, rivers and streams identified by any person as being used for water supplies |

| **Cultural Heritage Sites and Features*, such as:** | |
|---|---|
| • archaeological sites and resources<br>• cemeteries/burial grounds, including Aboriginal peoples' cemeteries<br>• areas of archaeological potential | • built heritage resources<br>• traditional use sites<br>• cultural heritage landscapes |
| **Other Special Land Uses of Local Significance as identified by any person, such as:** | |
| • areas of significance to local communities such as areas used for traditional or recreational activities<br>• Reserves and other Aboriginal communities<br>• Areas which have been identified as being required as reserve lands or for economic or capital development projects<br>• Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest<br>• Evaluated wetlands and evaluated wetland complexes | • registered trapline areas<br>• areas used for fuelwood or building materials<br>• sites of local archaeological, historical, religious and cultural heritage significance, including Aboriginal graveyards, spirit sites and burial sites *<br>• medicinal plants<br>• Significant ecological area (e.g., significant woodland, significant flora)<br>• old growth red and white pine forest communities |
| **Exclusions from the Land Base of the Management Unit, including:** | |
| • Federal lands (e.g., Indian Reserves, Department of National Defence Bases, National Parks)<br>• Provincial parks, conservation reserves and approved provincial park candidates (provincial parks, conservation reserves and forest reserves recommended in the relevant land use plan or subject to interim protection)<br>• Crown land leases (e.g., land use permits, licenses of occupation) | • patented lands<br>• cemeteries/burial grounds, including Aboriginal cemeteries and burial grounds *<br>• Areas of Natural and Scientific Interest which have been designated as exclusions from the management unit |

** Publicizing the location of certain values may be detrimental to conservation, in which case information would not normally be shown on the public values maps*

No listing of values can be definitive. For the purposes of forest management planning, it can be any feature, entity or forest condition that could be impacted by forest operations. Base features can be considered values; lakes are an example. The list of values considered in forest management planning varies by forest management unit, landscape features, and stakeholders involved. The lists provided in Appendix IV and the Forest Information Manual technical specifications are not all inclusive; they are a guide to the types of values considered.

# Appendix V: Roads Supplementary Documentation Form

This appendix is organized into four parts:

A: Primary Road Corridors
B: Branch Road Corridors
C: Operational Roads
D: Existing Roads or Road Networks

Complete Part A, Sections 1 to 6 for each new primary road that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part A, Section 7 for each confirmed primary road corridor that is required for the next 20 years, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.2.6, 1.3.6.1 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads, that is required for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.2 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part C for each new operational road boundary, or a group of new operational road boundaries, for each five-year term, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.4 and 1.3.6.7.

Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road networks, that is the responsibility of the forest resource licensee, if a use management strategy does not exist, or an existing use management strategy is being changed, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Sections 1.3.6.5 and 1.3.6.7.

# A: Primary Road Corridors

Complete Part A for each new primary road.

**ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER: _____**

## 1. Alternative Corridors

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Two of consultation**.**

Considerations which support the reasonable range of practical alternative corridors for analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):

## 2. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Corridors

Complete this section for each alternative corridor prior to Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

(a) Identify each alternative corridor (number) and provide a description and attach map at stage two and three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map in the draft and final plan:
(b) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.2.6):
  (i) discuss relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors:
  (ii) identify use management strategy(s) and if the use management strategy(s) differ discuss the relative advantages and disadvantages of the alternative corridors (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (f)):
  (iii) discuss the relative costs of construction and use management of the alternative corridors:

## 3. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Two of consultation.

## 4. Proposed Corridor

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

(a) Identify the proposed corridor (number) and provide a description and attach map at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map in the draft and final plan:
(b) Rationale:
(c) Use management strategy:

**5. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

**6. Selected Corridor**

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 4(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.

**7. Changes to a Confirmed Primary Road Corridor Road Use Management Strategy**

**Use Management Strategy** (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (f)):

Provide the rationale for the change in road use management strategy.

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Two (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

**Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Two and Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

**Use Management Strategy**

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.

# B: Branch Road Corridors

Complete Part B for each new branch road, or a group of new branch roads with both a common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

**ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER(S):**

Provide the branch road name or a list of branch roads names, with both a common rationale for the proposed corridors and a common use management strategy.

**1. Proposed Corridor**

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

(a) Identify the proposed corridor(s) and provide a description and attach map(s) at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s) in the draft and final plan:
(b) Rationale (Part A, Section 1.3.6.2, items (a) – (c)):
(c) Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (f)):

**2. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of consultation.

**3. Selected Corridor**

If the proposed corridor and use management strategy are selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected corridor and/or use management strategy is different from the proposed corridor and/or use management strategy, complete the applicable requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected corridor and/or use management strategy.

# C: Operational Roads

Complete Part C for each new operational road boundary, or group of new operational road boundaries with networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy.

**OPERATIONAL ROAD BOUNDARY NAME/IDENTIFIER: _____**

Provide an **operational road boundary name or** a list of **operational road boundaries** with networks of operational roads with a common use management strategy and attach map(s) at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s) in the draft and final plan.

**1. Proposed Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network**

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (f)):

**2. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

**3. Use Management Strategy for Operational Road Network**

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.

# D: Existing Roads or Road Networks

Complete Part D for each existing road or road network, or a group of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy.

**ROAD or ROAD NETWORK NAME/IDENTIFIER: _____**

Provide a list of existing roads or road networks with a common use management strategy (attach map(s) at stage three of public consultation and/or reference the appropriate map(s) in the draft and final plan)

**1. Proposed Use Management Strategy**

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

Use management strategy (Part A, Section 1.3.6.7, items (a) – (f)):

**2. Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

**3. Use Management Strategy**

If the proposed use management strategy is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the use management strategy is different from the proposed use management strategy, complete the requirements of section 1 for the changed use management strategy.

# Appendix VI: Area of Concern Supplementary Documentation Form

This appendix is organized into five parts:

- A: Area of Concern Description
- B: Operational Prescription
- C: Conditions on Operational Roads
- D: Primary or Branch Road Crossings
- E: Monitoring Program

Complete Part A, Part B, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC) or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values for which an operational prescription is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

Complete Part A, Part C, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC) or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values which will be crossed by an operational road(s), that has received public comment at stage three of public consultation, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.4.

Complete Part A, Part D, and if applicable, Part E for each individual area of concern (AOC) which is crossed by a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

# A: Area of Concern Description

Complete Part A for each individual area of concern (AOC), or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values, prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

**1. Area of Concern (AOC) Identifier**: _____

The area of concern (AOC) identifier may be numeric, alphabetic or any combination, and will uniquely identify either an individual AOC or a group of AOCs with a common natural resource feature, land use or value.

In order to link the supplementary documentation form, FMP-10 and the detailed operations maps for the five-year term, the AOC identifier will be entered in the first column of FMP-10, and will also appear on the operations maps.

**2. Description of Natural Resource Feature, Land Use or Value**

(a) Description of natural resource feature(s), land use(s) or value(s) (listed in order of importance):

(b) Dimensions of area of concern:

# B: Operational Prescription

Complete Part B for each individual area of concern (AOC), or a group of areas of concern with common natural resource features, land uses or values, for which an operational prescription is prepared with consideration and environmental analysis of alternative operational prescriptions, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1.

## 1. Environmental Analysis of Alternative Operational Prescriptions

Complete this section for each alternative operational prescription prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

(a) Alternative identifier/number:
(b) Description of proposed operational prescription:
(Specify dimensions of reserve, if applicable, and/or modifications to regular harvest, renewal and/or tending operations, if applicable.)
(c) Environmental analysis (Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, Operational Prescriptions Developed by the Planning Team, items (a) & (b)):

## 2. Proposed operational prescription

Complete this section for the proposed operational prescription prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

(a) Description:
(b) Rationale:
(c) Exception: (Specify if the operational prescription is an exception, and identify applicable forest management guide, section and page reference.)

## 3. Summary of public comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

## 4. Selected prescription

If the proposed operational prescription is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected operational prescription is different from the proposed operational prescription, complete the requirements of sections 1(a), (b) and (c) for the selected operational prescription.

# C: Conditions on Operational Roads

Complete Part C for each individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common natural resource feature, land uses or values, which will be crossed by an operational road(s), that has received public comment at Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

**Summary of Public Comments**

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

# D: Primary or Branch Road Crossing

Complete Part D for each individual AOC which is crossed by a new primary or branch road, in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.6.3.

**ROAD NAME/IDENTIFIER:** _____

## 1. Proposed Crossing Location

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

(a) Identification of 100 metre wide location ( ie. individual AOC identifier) for the road (cross reference to applicable map); and
(b) Rationale for the crossing location (Part A, Section 1.3.6.3):

## 2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three of (and Phase II: Stage One) consultation.

## 3. Selected Crossing Location

If the proposed location is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the selected location is different from the proposed location, complete the requirements of Section 1 for the selected location.

# E: Monitoring Program

Complete Part E if the operational prescription for the individual AOC, or a group of AOCs with a common natural resource feature, land uses or values, which was prepared in accordance with the requirements of Part A, Section 1.3.5.1, is an exception to the specific direction or recommendation in a forest management guide, or if special requirements of a forest operations inspection(s) are prescribed. (NOTE: Do not complete Part E if the regular forest operations inspection program applies.)

## 1. Proposed Monitoring Program

Complete this section prior to Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

(a) Description:
(b) Methods to monitor effectiveness of exception prescription:

## 2. Summary of Public Comments

Complete this section after Phase I: Stage Three (and Phase II: Stage One) of consultation.

## 3. Monitoring Program

If the proposed monitoring program is selected, no further documentation is required.

If the monitoring program is different from the proposed monitoring program, complete the requirements of section 1 for the monitoring program.

# Appendix VII: Operational Standards for Forestry Aggregate Pits

The following operational standards apply to the extraction of aggregate resources for Forestry Aggregate Pits:

1. Topsoil and overburden, where present, must be stripped and stored on site.

2. Aggregate material may be removed only within areas where access, harvest, renewal, or aggregate extraction has been planned and approved, with no removal occurring within 15 metres of the boundary of any planned area.

3. Aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern, except:

    a. for a cultural heritage landscape or historic Aboriginal value, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, if,
        i. FMP-19 of the forest management plan documents conditions on location, construction or use of the Forestry Aggregate Pit, as per the advice of a qualified individual as defined by the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values, and
        ii. the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions; and
    b. for all other values, if,
        i. FMP-19 of the forest management plan documents conditions on location, construction or use of the Forestry Aggregate Pit, and
        ii. the aggregate material is removed in accordance with such conditions.

4. Notwithstanding standard 3 above, aggregate material must not be removed from an area of concern or within 15 metres of the boundary of an area of concern for the following values, as defined in the Forest Management Guide for Cultural Heritage Values:
    a. archaeology site;
    b. cemetery; or
    c. archaeological potential area.

5. When operating within 15 metres of a proposed roadside ditch, no excavation is to take place below the elevation of the planned depth of the proposed ditch; all excavations must be immediately sloped to no steeper than a 2:1 (horizontal: vertical) angle.

6. During extraction, no undercutting of the working face is permitted and:
    a. the working face must be sloped at the angle of repose; or
    b. the vertical height of the working face must not be more than 1.5 metres above the maximum reach of the equipment.

7. All trees within 5 metres of the excavation face must be removed.

8. The maximum pit area must not exceed 3 ha. When a pit or a portion of a pit is rehabilitated, it is no longer part of the pit.

9. When the site is inactive, all pit faces must be sloped at the angle of repose.

10. Within the excavation area, no ponding is allowed and offsite drainage must be designed to prevent sediment from entering any water feature.

11. Unless an aggregate permit (e.g. Category 9) has been issued, by the end of the 10-year period starting from the commencement of the Forestry Aggregate Pit:
    a. buildings, structures, or processing equipment must be removed from the site; and
    b. rehabilitation of the site must be completed.
12. Notwithstanding standard 11 above, MNR may direct that a Forestry Aggregate Pit be rehabilitated prior to the end of the above-noted 10-year period where the responsibility for the road and associated Forestry Aggregate Pit is being transferred back to MNR.

13. Final rehabilitation must include:
    a. sloping of all pit faces to a minimum of 3:1(horizontal:vertical);
    b. re-spreading of any topsoil and overburden that was stripped from the site; and
    c. mitigative measures, to the satisfaction of MNR, to prevent erosion (e.g. establishment of vegetation).

14. Existing or proposed Forestry Aggregate Pits within areas of concern, or in the vicinity of features that are addressed by conditions on operations, as described in MNR's forest management guide(s) relating to conserving biodiversity at the stand and site scales, must not be constructed or operated except in circumstances as identified in the conditions on operations in the forest management plan. This includes any restrictions on the construction of new Forestry Aggregate Pits and timing of aggregate extraction, rehabilitation, or other associated operations in existing pits.

15. Progressive rehabilitation of the site must be ongoing during the 10-year period, starting from the commencement of the Forestry Aggregate Pit.

# GLOSSARY OF TERMS

The purpose of this glossary is to define and to explain terms, used in forestry or otherwise, which appear and are of importance in the text of the *Forest Management Planning Manual*. The definitions provided in this glossary have been taken fully, modified or adapted from an already existing source, as indicated. References for these entries are abbreviated as follows:

| | |
|---|---|
| Aird | Aird, Paul L., "Conservation for the sustainable development of forests worldwide: A compendium of concepts and terms" The Forestry Chronicle. 70(6) (1994) |
| ARM | Access Roads Manual (August 1992) |
| CBS95 | Canadian Biodiversity Strategy. Canada's Response to the Convention on Biological Diversity (1995) |
| CFIT | A Guide to Canadian Forest Inventory Terminology and Usage (1978) |
| CFSA | *Crown Forest Sustainability Act* (1995) |
| EAA | *The Environmental Assessment Act* (1975) |
| EA Decision | Environmental Assessment Board's *Reasons for Decision and Decision: Class Environmental Assessment by the Ministry of Natural Resources for Timber Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (EA-87-02)* (1994) |
| EA Dec Order | Environmental Assessment Declaration Order MNR-71 regarding MNR's Class Environmental Assessment Approval for Forest Management on Crown Lands in Ontario (2003) |
| EALS | An Ecosystem Approach to Living Sustainably. A Perspective for the Ministry of Natural Resources (September, 1995) |
| FIM | OMNR. Forest Information Manual (April 2007) |
| FITC | Forest Inventory Terms in Canada. Canadian Forest Inventory Committee, Forestry Canada (1988) |
| FMM | Forest Management Manual for the Province of Ontario (1980) |
| FMPM (1996) | Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests (1996) |
| FMPM (2004) | Forest Management Planning Manual for Ontario's Crown Forests dated June 2004, as amended by the Addendum dated February 2007 |

| | |
|---|---|
| Forman | Forman, R. T. T. and M. Godron. Landscape Ecology. John Wiley and Sons, New York, N.Y. (1986) |
| FOSM | Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual (1995) |
| FRI | Forest Inventory Procedure for Ontario (1978) |
| FRWCI | Forest Roads and Water Crossings Initiative, Task Team Report (2003) |
| Kimmins | Oct. 3, 1993, Module 2. |
| MFM | Manual of Forest Management Plan Requirements for the Province of Ontario (1977) |
| MNR 1997 | A Silvicultural Guide to Managing for Black Spruce, Jack Pine and Aspen on Boreal Forest Ecosites in Ontario (1997) |
| MNR 1998 | A Silvicultural Guide for the Tolerant Hardwood Forest in Ontario (1998) |
| MNR 2009 | Forest Management Guide for Conserving Biodiversity at the Stand and Site Scales (2009) |
| Morrison | Morrison, Michael L., B.G. Marcot and R.W. Mannan. Wildlife-Habitat Relationships: Concepts and Applications. The University of Wisconsin Press, Madison (1992) |
| OG | Old Growth Policy for Ontario's Crown Forest (2003) |
| PA | *The Pesticides Act*, Revised Statutes of Ontario, 1990, Chapter P.11. Printed by the Queen's Printer for Ontario (1993) |
| SFR | State of the Forest Report (2001) |
| SM | Scaling Manual (1995) |
| STC | Silvicultural Terms in Canada. Science and Sustainable Development Directorate, Forestry Canada, Ottawa. 2nd Edition (1995) |
| TCEA | MNR's Timber Class Environmental Assessment Review (July 2002) |
| Trenhaile | Trenhaile, Alan S. The Geomorphology of Canada. Oxford University Press, Ontario (1990) |
| URN | Items from Terminology of Forest Science: Technology Practice and Products are listed by Universal Reference Number (1971) |

WD Webster's Ninth New Collegiate Dictionary. Miriam-Webster Inc., Thomas Allen and Sons Ltd., Markham (1983)

***NOTE: Underlined words within definitions are also defined in the glossary.***

**ABORIGINAL**

Aboriginal persons, according to Section 35 of *Constitution Act*, *1982*, include Indian, Inuit and Metis People of Canada.

**ACCESS CONTROL (roads)**

The closure of a road to public travel or the restricted access to a road for certain specified uses for given periods of time. (Modified ARM)

**AGE CLASS**

One of the intervals into which the age range of forest stands is divided for classification and use. (Adapted URN 87)

**AGGREGATE EXTRACTION AREA**

An individual polygon depicting a planned forestry aggregate pit location within 500 meters of an existing forest access road and is outside of an area of operations.

**ANALYSIS TOOL (FOREST)**

A computer-based tool used to model, project, simulate or forecast data and information. Forest analysis tools are used in the development and evaluation of the long-term management direction in a forest management plan.

**ANNUAL WORK SCHEDULE**

A document mainly in the form of tables and maps, which identifies the type and extent of forest operations to be carried out during one year, consistent with the forest management plan. (Adapted URN 4417)

**AREA CHARGES**

The charges to be paid in respect of the area under a Forest Resource Licence, as required by the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act*, the Regulations, and the licence.

**AREA OF CONCERN (AOC)**

A geographic area associated with an identified natural resource feature, land use or value that may be affected by forest management activities.

**AREA OF OPERATIONS**

A geographic area comprised of individual, groups and/or portions of forest stands selected for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of a forest management plan.

**AREA OF THE UNDERTAKING**

The area of Crown land, on which forest management activities may be conducted in accordance with the requirements of EA Dec Order MNR 71/2 in Ontario. Forest management plans are prepared for management units within this area. (Modified EA Dec Order), the Area of the Undertaking is depicted in Appendix I of this manual.

**ARTIFICIAL REGENERATION**

Renewal of a forest, by seeding or planting seedlings or cuttings. (STC)

**BIOFIBRE**

Forest resources harvested from Crown forests that are not utilized for conventional forest products (pulp, paper, sawlogs, etc.) and are made available under an approved forest management plan. Forest biofibre includes tree tops/branches/limbs, cull trees or portions of trees, individual and stands of merchantable and unmarketable trees, and trees that may be salvaged as a result of a natural disturbance (wind, fire, insects, disease and flooding).

**BIOLOGICAL DIVERSITY (syn: Biodiversity)**

The variety and variability among living organisms from all sources, including terrestrial, marine and aquatic ecosystems, and the ecological complexes of which they a part. (OG)

**Biodiversity:** includes diversity within species, between species and of ecosystems. (CBS95)

**BIOPRODUCT**

There are four categories of Bioproducts :

1. Cogeneration – fibre that is used to generate electricity or heat to a facility or the power grid;
2. Bio-fuels – fibre used in the manufacturing of bio-oil, methane, ethanol fuel, lubricants, etc.;
3. Bio-chemicals – fibre used in the manufacturing of pharmaceuticals, plastics, fertilizers, dyes, resins, varnish, paint additives, soap, etc.;
4. Wood pellets – used in power generation, wood stoves, etc..

**CLEANING**

An operation in a young forest stand, not past the sapling stage, to free the favoured trees from undesirable individuals of similar age or size which overtop them or are likely to do so. Cleaning may be accomplished by hand or by mechanical or chemical means. (Modified MFM)

**CLEARCUT**

Noun.

1. An area harvested under the clearcut silvicultural system.
2. An area of forest land from which all (or most) merchantable trees have recently been harvested.

Verb. To harvest the merchantable trees in an area, normally in one operation. (Modified STC)

**CLEARCUT SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

A method of harvesting and regenerating an even-aged forest stand(s) in which new seedlings become established in fully exposed microenvironments after removal of all

(or most) of the merchantable trees. Regeneration can originate naturally or artificially. Clearcutting may be done in blocks, strips, or patches. (Modified STC)

**CONIFER**

Trees and shrubs belonging to the order Coniferales, usually evergreen with cones and needle-shaped leaves.

**CONSERVATION**

Management of the human use of the biosphere so that it may yield the greatest sustainable benefit to present generations while maintaining its potential to meet the needs and aspirations of future generations, and includes the preservation, maintenance, sustainable utilization, restoration and enhancement of the environment. Modern conservation theory incorporates the notion that what is to be conserved is not so much the physical state of an ecological system as the ecological processes by which that state is created and maintained. (Aird)

**CONTINGENCY AREA**

Harvest areas identified and planned for, in the event that circumstances arise which cause selected harvest areas to be no longer available for operations. Contingency area will serve as replacement for selected harvest areas, and will only be used if needed.

**CONTINGENCY PLAN**

An interim forest management plan that is required when special circumstances affect the implementation of a forest management plan. An approved contingency plan permits the implementation of operations for the period between the expiry of the current approved forest management plan and the approval for implementation of the renewed forest management plan.

**CORRIDOR**

An area of uniform width bordering both or one side of a lineal feature such as a stream or route. (FITC)

**CRITERIA**

**Harvest:** A distinguishing set of characteristics that allows the identification of areas that are eligible for harvest, renewal and tending operations for the ten-year period of the forest management plan, and the selection of areas for the five-year term.

**Sustainability:** See Criterion

**CRITERION**

1. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are monitored periodically to asses change. (SFR 2001)
2. A category of conditions or processes by which sustainable forest management may be assessed. A criterion is characterized by a set of related indicators that are measured or assessed periodically to assess change.

3. A distinguishable characteristic of sustainable forest management; a value that must be considered in setting objectives and in assessing performance. (SFR 2001)

**CROWN FOREST**

A forest ecosystem or part of a forest ecosystem that is on land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario and under the management of the Minister of Natural Resources. (CFSA)

**CROWN FOREST SUSTAINABILITY ACT**

An Act of the Ontario legislature to provide for the sustainability of Crown forests and, in accordance with that objective, to manage Crown forests to meet social, economic and environmental needs of present and future generations.(Modified CFSA)

**CROWN LAND**

Land vested in Her Majesty in right of Ontario.

**CUTTING CYCLE**

The planned interval between partial harvests in an uneven-aged stand. (STC)

**DECISION SUPPORT SYSTEM**

Information systems that utilize analysis tools (decision modules), databases and a decision maker's own insight in an interactive analytical modeling process to reach a specific decision.

**DECOMMISSIONING (roads)**

For roads or road networks identified for transfer to MNR where MNR's management intent is to not maintain the road for public use, the physical work that will be undertaken to render the road impassable to vehicular traffic, enhance public safety and reduce potential environmental damage (e.g., removal of a water crossing(s)). The roadway will degenerate over time.

**DESIRED FOREST AND BENEFITS**

The forest structure and composition and the goods and services, which are desired from the forest to achieve a balance of social, economic and environmental needs. The long-term management direction for the management unit is developed to achieve the desired forest and benefits.

**DESIRABLE LEVEL**

The measurable amount for an indicator, expressed as a specific number, a range or a trend, used in the assessment of sustainability.

**DISEASE**

Harmful deviation from normal functioning of physiological processes, generally abiotic or biotic in origin. (STC)

**ECOSITE**

An ecological landscape unit (ranging in resolution from thousands to hundreds of hectares) comprised of relatively uniform geology, parent materials, soils, topography and hydrology, occupied by a consistent complex of successionally-related vegetation conditions.

**ECOSYSTEM**

The sum of the plants, animals, environmental influences and their interactions, within a particular habitat. (STC)

**ENDANGERED SPECIES**

A native species, that is at risk of extirpation or extinction throughout all or a significant portion of its Ontario range.

**ENVIRONMENT**

In Ontario, the environment is described as:

1. air, land, or water;
2. plant and animal life, including man;
3. the social, economic, and cultural conditions that influence the life of man or a community;
4. any building, structure, machine, or other device or thing made by man
5. any solid or liquid, gas, odour, heat, sound, vibration or radiation resulting directly or indirectly from the activities of man; or
6. any part or combination of the foregoing and the interrelationships between any two or more of them (EAA).

**EXCEPTION**

A silvicultural treatment in the silvicultural ground rules which differs from the recommendations in the applicable silvicultural guide, or an operational prescription for an area of concern which differs from the specific direction or recommendations (standards and guidelines) in the applicable forest management guide.

**FISH HABITAT**

Spawning grounds and nursery, rearing, food supply and migration areas on which fish depend directly or indirectly in order to carry out their life processes. (section 34(1) of the *Fisheries Act*)

**FOREST**

1. (Ecology) A plant community predominantly of trees and other woody vegetation, growing more or less closely together (URN 2441);
2. (Silvicultural Management) An area managed for the production of timber and other forest products, or maintained under woody vegetation for such indirect benefits as protection of site or for recreation (URN 2442).
3. (Forest Diversity) An aggregate of forest stands.

**FOREST COVER**

All of the trees as described by the Forest Resources Inventory.

**FOREST DISTURBANCE**

A natural (e.g. fire) or anthropogenic (e.g. timber harvest) event in the forest that alters the natural succession of a forest stand or stands.

**FOREST DYNAMICS**

The natural processes involved in the development of a forest, and associated with growth and changes to its structure and composition through time.

**FOREST ECOSYSTEM**

An ecosystem in which trees are, or are capable of being, a major biological component. (CFSA)

**FOREST HEALTH**

The condition of a forest ecosystem that sustains the ecosystem's complexity while providing for the needs of the people of Ontario. (CFSA)

**FOREST MANAGEMENT**

Generally, the practical application of scientific, economic and social principles to the administration and working of a forest for specified management objectives; more particularly, that branch of forestry concerned with the overall administrative, economic, legal and social aspects, and with the essentially scientific and technical aspects, especially silviculture, protection and forest regulation. (Aird)

**FOREST MANAGEMENT PLAN**

A document, prepared for a management unit in accordance with the Forest Management Planning Manual and section 8 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994*. A forest management plan contains pertinent information and prescriptions by means of which forest policy, aims and objectives are translated into a continuous sequence of specific treatments on a management unit for a specified period of years.

**Current Plan:** An approved forest management plan that is being implemented.

**Past Plan or Previous Plan:** The expired forest management plan for the plan period immediately preceding the current plan.

**FOREST OPERATIONS**

The harvesting of a forest resource, the use of a forest resource for a designated purpose, or the renewal or maintenance of a forest resource, and includes all related activities. (CFSA)

**FOREST OPERATIONS PRESCRIPTION**

A forest operations prescription is a site-specific set of harvest, renewal and maintenance activities that will be used to ensure that the current forest is managed to

achieve the expected forest structure and condition.

**FOREST RENEWAL TRUST FUND**

The trust which provides for reimbursement of silvicultural expenses incurred after March 31, 1994 in respect of Crown forests in which forest resources have been harvested and for such other matters as may be specified by the Minister, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister. (CFSA, section 48)

**FOREST RESOURCE**

Trees in a forest ecosystem, and any other type of plant life prescribed by the regulations that is in a forest ecosystem, (CFSA, section 3)

**FOREST RESOURCES INVENTORY**

A composite information product which is assembled from a collection of individual geographic information coverages that contain descriptive information about the timber resource on each management unit (e.g., stand age, stand height, species composition, stocking level). The forest resources inventory for a management unit divides the area into a number of components, such as water, non-forested, non-productive forest and productive forest, and further classifies each component by ownership/land use categories. (Adapted FIM)

**FOREST STAND(S)**

An aggregation of trees occupying a specific area and uniform enough in composition (species), age and arrangement to be distinguishable from an adjacent aggregation of trees. (Modified MNR 1998)

**FOREST TYPE**

A general term to describe a group of forested areas or forest stands of similar composition. (Modified STC)

**FOREST UNIT**

A classification system that aggregates forest stands for management purposes that will normally have similar species composition, will develop in a similar manner (both naturally and in response to silvicultural treatments), and will be managed under the same silvicultural system.

**FORESTRY AGGREGATE PIT**

An aggregate pit which is exempt from the requirement for an aggregate permit under the *Aggregate Resources Act*, as the criteria set out in Part A, Section 1.3.6.6 of this Forest Management Planning Manual are satisfied (formerly referred to as category 14 aggregate pits).

**FORESTRY FUTURES TRUST FUND**

The trust which provides for the following matters, on such terms and conditions as may be specified by the Minister:

1. The funding of silvicultural expenses in Crown forests where forest resources have been killed or damaged by fire or natural causes.
2. The funding of silvicultural expenses on land that is subject to a forest resource licence, if the licensee becomes insolvent.
3. The funding of intensive stand management and pest control in respect of forest resources in Crown forests.
4. Such other purposes as may be specified by the Minister.

(CFSA)

**FREE-TO-GROW (Syn.: free growing)**

Stands that meet stocking, height and/or height growth rate, as specified in the silvicultural ground rules, and are judged to be essentially healthy and free from competing vegetation. (Adapted FMM)

**GUIDE (forest management)**

A Ministry of Natural Resources forest management guide described in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual* and any forest management guide that is adopted by reference in the *Forest Operations and Silviculture Manual.* Forest management guides provide direction for forest management practitioners that must be used in the development and implementation of forest management plans. (Modified EA Dec. Order)

**GUIDELINE**

A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction, but requires professional judgment for it to be applied appropriately at the local level. (MNR 2009)

**HABITAT**

An area on which the species depends, directly or indirectly, to carry on its life processes including life processes such as reproduction, rearing, hibernation, migration, or feeding and includes places in the area that are used by membes of the species as dens, hibernacula or other residences. (Endangered Species Act 2007)

**HARDWOOD**

Trees that have broad leaves, in contrast to the needle–bearing conifers. Also, the wood produced by broad leaved trees, regardless of texture or density.

**HARVEST AREA**

**Available:** The area (in hectares) for each forest unit, as determined in the development of the long-term management direction, which serves as a limit for harvest area by forest unit, for the ten-year period of the forest management plan.

**Contingency:** see Contingency Area

**Eligible**: The areas, as determined by criteria consistent with the long-term management direction that could reasonably be harvested during the ten-year period.

**Optional:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are not preferred or selected harvest areas.

**Planned:** The portion of the forecast harvest area (in hectares) required to meet projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments that is expected to be harvested in each five year term plus surplus harvest area.

**Preferred:** The areas from the eligible harvest areas which are favoured for harvest during the ten-year period, up to the level of the available harvest area (with consideration for retained areas), by forest unit.

**Surplus:** The areas from the selected harvest areas that are in excess of the projected industrial wood requirements and wood supply commitments for the ten-year period.

**HARVESTING**

The removal of forest products for utilization, comprising cutting and sometimes initial processing and extraction. (Adapted URN 2944)

**HARVEST METHOD**

A modification of one of the basic silvicultural systems which describes the harvest technique (e.g., *strip* clearcut, *group* shelterwood). (Modified FMPM 1996)

**HERBICIDE**

Any chemical preparation used to kill or inhibit the growth of forbs, grasses, woody plants, and their seeds. (STC)

**INDEPENDENT FOREST AUDIT**

An independently led review of the adequacy of forest management practices, controls and processes to ensure that the management organization continues to be in control and in compliance with relevant legislation, policies and directives.

**INDIVIDUAL ENVIRONMENTAL ASSESSMENT**

An environmental assessment that is subject to the requirements set out in Part II of the *Environmental Assessment Act* (RSO 1990, chapter E.18, as amended).

**INDICATOR**

A systematically measured and assessed quantitative or qualitative variable, which when observed periodically, demonstrates trends. Indicators are identified in each forest management plan to assess the effectiveness of forest management activities in achieving management objectives, and to assess the sustainability of the forest.

**INSECTICIDE**

Any chemical or biological preparation used to kill or disrupt the development of insects. (STC)

**LANDSCAPE**

A heterogeneous land area composed of a cluster of interacting ecosystems that is repeated in similar form throughout. (Forman)

A landscape is normally defined by geomorphology or climate.

**LICENSEE**

A person or company to whom a Forest Resource Licence has been granted. (SM)

**LOCAL CITIZENS COMMITTEE**

A standing advisory committee of local citizens representing a range and balance of interests, appointed by the Ministry of Natural Resources to participate in the forest management planning process. (EA Decision)

An advisory committee of local citizens established under section 13 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994*.

**LOGGING METHOD**

A term which indicates the process used to move wood products from stump to roadside during a harvesting operation (e.g., full tree, tree length, shortwood).

**LONG-TERM MANAGEMENT DIRECTION**

The management objectives, indicators, assessment of sustainability, social and economic assessment, and levels of activities required to achieve the desired forest and benefits and provide for the sustainability of the forest for the management unit.

**MAINTENANCE (forestry)**

The forest management activities of tending and protection, which are carried out to ensure the survival and development of a forest to maturity.

**MAINTENANCE (roads)**

**Routine:** Those activities necessary to maintain or upgrade a road and right of way for the traffic using it. Routine maintenance may include minor road re-alignment within the right of way.

**Emergency:** Road maintenance that requires immediate attention to restore access and reduce the chance of personal injury, damage to equipment, inconvenience to road users and further road damage (e.g., major washouts, blocked culverts, damaged bridges, etc.). (ARM)

**MANAGED FOREST**

Crown forest for which there is no legal or land use planning decision which prevents the land from being managed for forest management purposes.

**MANAGEMENT OBJECTIVE**

A statement of quantitative or qualitative desired future benefits or conditions, developed specifically for the management unit, that are to be achieved through the manipulation of forest cover.

**MANAGEMENT UNIT**

An area of Crown forest designated under section 7 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.*

**MERCHANTABLE TIMBER**

A descriptor for a tree or forest stand that has attained sufficient size, quality, and/or volume to be suitable for harvest.

A hardwood poplar or white birch log of which more than one-half of the total content is sound wood when the content is measured in cubic metres; or

A conifer, log other than poplar or white birch of which more than one-third of the total content is sound wood when the content is measured in cubic metres. (SM)

**MODIFIED OPERATIONS**

Harvest, renewal and tending operations, where prescriptions have been developed to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values. Modified operations may be regular operations with conditions (e.g., timing, equipment), or unique prescriptions to protect or manage specific natural resource features, land uses or values.

**MONITORING**

The collection and analysis of data over extended periods of time. It provides information on past and present ecological, social, cultural, and economic trends, and a basis for predictions about future conditions. (EALS)

**NATURAL REGENERATION**

Renewal of a forest, by natural seeding, sprouting, suckering or layering. (STC)

**NATURAL RESOURCE**

A renewable (forest, water, wildlife, soil, etc.) or non-renewable (oil, coal, iron, etc.) resource that is a natural asset. (Aird)

**OLD GROWTH**

A functional condition (e.g. stand productivity, nutrient cycling, and wildlife habitat) of a forest ecosystem, in a dynamic state, that embodies a set of physical features and characteristics that typically include:

1. a complex forest stand structure (e.g. old trees for the ecosite, large tree size and wide spacing, multiple canopy layers and gaps, and rates of change in species composition);
2. large dead standing trees (snags), accumulations of downed woody material, up-turned stumps, root and soil mounds, and accelerating tree mortality.

**OPERATIONAL PRESCRIPTION FOR AREAS OF CONCERN**

An operational prescription for areas of concern is a prescription prepared for harvest, renewal and tending and protection activities to prevent, minimize or mitigate adverse effects of forest management operations on a natural resource feature, land use or value.

**OPERATIONAL ROAD BOUNDARY**

The operational road boundary is the perimeter of, the planned harvest area plus the area from an existing road or planned road corridor to the harvest area within which an operational road is planned to be constructed.

**OWNERSHIP (land)**

Classification of the provincial land base into the categories of Crown, patent and other vested interest.

**PATENT LAND**

Land transferred from Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Ontario to an individual, company or corporation in perpetuity.

**PESTICIDE**

Any organism, substance or thing that is manufactured, represented, or sold or used as a means of directly or indirectly controlling, preventing, destroying, mitigating, attracting, or repelling any pest or of altering the growth, development or characteristics of any plant life that is not a pest and includes any organism, substance or thing registered under the *Pest Control Products Act* (Canada). (PA)

**PLAN AMENDMENT**

Any change to a forest management plan or a contingency plan which is normally consistent with the long term management direction for the management unit. If there is a change to legislation and/or associated regulations (e.g. Endangered Species Act, 2007), the Director of Forest Management Branch, Ministry of Natural Resources, may request an amendment to a forest management plan or contingency plan that is not consistent with the long-term management direction. Amendments could range from simple corrections to the text of an approved forest management plan to changes requiring comprehensive planning, public consultation and Aboriginal involvement.

**PLAN AUTHOR**

The registered professional forester licensed to practice professional forestry, under *The Ontario Professional Foresters Association Act*, 2000 who is responsible for the preparation and certification of a forest management plan. Where the original plan

author of the forest management plan no longer has that responsibility, his/her successor is deemed to be the plan author.

**PLANNED CLEARCUT**

Clearcuts that will be created during a plan consistent with the MNR's spatial and temporal standards.

**PLAN PERIOD**

The ten-year timeframe of a forest management plan for which long-term management direction is established, and forest sustainability is determined.

**PLAN RENEWAL**

The time in the planning cycle marked by the approval of a forest management plan. Forest management plans are normally renewed every ten years.

**PRESCRIBED BURN**

The knowledgeable application of fire to a specific land area to accomplish predetermined forest management or other land use objectives. (STC)

**PRODUCTION FOREST**

Productive forest land, at various stages of growth, with no obvious physical limitations on the ability to practice forest management. (Modified EA Decision)

**PRODUCTIVE FOREST**

All forest areas which are capable of growing commercial trees, irrespective of planning decisions, and which is further sub-divided into "protection forest" and "production forest".(Modified EA Decision)

**PRODUCTIVITY**

A change in biomass (volume) per unit area and time (yield, increment). (Kimmins)

**PROVINCIAL FOREST TYPE**

An aggregation of forest types used to describe forest cover at broad planning levels. Provincial forest types are defined in the *Forest Resource Assessment Policy.*

**PROTECTION**

Forest management operations which are carried out to prevent, control or manage the spread of, and/or the damage caused by insects and diseases. Protection may involve the use of insecticides or manual treatments.

**PROTECTION FOREST**

Productive forest land on which forest management activities cannot normally be practised without incurring deleterious environmental effects because of obvious physical limitations such as steep slopes and shallow soils over bedrock. (Modified EA Decision)

**REGENERATION**

The renewal of a forest, by natural or artificial means. This term may also be used to describe the young forest itself. (Adapted URN 4843, 4844, 4846, 4848)

Also see Artificial and Natural Regeneration

**REGENERATION CUT**

Removal of trees in a mature stand to create openings in the canopy which provide conditions for regeneration from the seed of retained trees. The regeneration cut is normally the first or second cut under the shelterwood silvicultural system.

**REGION or REGIONAL**

In this manual an administrative geographical unit of the Ministry of Natural Resources.

**REGISTERED PROFESSIONAL FORESTER (R.P.F.)**

A person licensed to practice professional forestry in Ontario, under *The Professional Foresters Association Act*, *2000*

**REGULAR OPERATIONS**

Harvest, renewal and tending operations conducted in accordance with the silvicultural ground rules.

**RENEWAL**

The silvicultural operations undertaken to stimulate and promote the establishment and growth of desired future forest stands, which may include the activities of site preparation and regeneration.

**RESERVE**

An operational prescription for an area of concern where operations are prohibited.

**RESOURCE STEWARDSHIP AGREEMENT**

An agreement negotiated between a licensed resource-based tourism operation as determined by the Ministry of Tourism and Recreation, and a sustainable forest licensee.

**RESPONSIBILITY ASSIGNMENT (roads)**

The party assigned responsibility for a road (and associated water crossings) (i.e., MNR, sustainable forest licensee, other user).

**RE-TREATMENT**

A specific renewal treatment (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that has been applied and usually occurs after a preliminary assessment has determined that further treatment is necessary.

**ROAD**

**Primary:** A road that provides principal access for the management unit, and is constructed, maintained and used as part of the main road system on the management unit. Primary roads are normally permanent roads.

**Branch:** A road, other than a primary road, that branches off an existing or new primary or branch road, providing access to, through or between areas of operations on a management unit.

**Operational:** A road within an operational road boundary, other than a primary or branch road, that provides short-term access for harvest, renewal and tending operations. Operational roads are normally not maintained after they are no longer required for forest management purposes, and are often site prepared and regenerated.

**ROAD NETWORK**

A system of new or existing roads that provide access to a distinct geographic area. (Adapted FRWCI)

**SALVAGE HARVEST**

The harvesting of timber that has been killed or damaged by natural causes, such as fire, wind, flood, insects and disease. (Modified FOSM)

**SCARIFICATION**

Mechanical loosening of the topsoil of open areas, or breaking up the forest floor, in preparation for regeneration by natural seeding. (Adapted URN 5134)

**SEEDING**

A form of artificial regeneration which involves the scattering of seed, more or less evenly, over an area.

**SEED ORCHARD**

A relatively small area, established with superior stock derived from selected parent material, and intensively managed to provide a sustained supply of genetically improved seed for use in an artificial regeneration program.

**SELECTION SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

An uneven-aged silvicultural system which involves periodic partial harvests, controlled by basal area, using vigour and risk characteristics to determine individual tree selection. (MNR 1998)

**SHELTERWOOD SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

An even-aged silvicultural system where mature trees are harvested in a series of two or more cuts (preparatory, regeneration, removal, final) for the purpose of obtaining natural regeneration under shelter of the residual trees, whether by cutting uniformly over the entire stand area or in narrow strips. Regeneration is natural or artificial.

Regeneration interval determines the degree of even-aged uniformity. (Adapted MFM)

also see Silvicultural System

**Group Shelterwood System:** Patches of advanced regeneration arising from thinnings or from natural disturbances, commonly developed in even-aged stands. Where this condition is prominent, shelterwood cuttings can be made specifically in relation to the requirements of each group of advanced regeneration. These clumps of regeneration are enlarged by the removal of all or most of the trees above them and starting preparatory or seeding cuttings around them. The holes created in the canopy are gradually enlarged to keep pace with the establishment of reproduction.

**Irregular Shelterwood System:** Harvest cutting in which opening of the canopy is irregular and gradual; generally in groups, with the final cutting often in strips; regeneration natural; regeneration interval long, often up to half the rotation, and the resultant crop considerably uneven-aged and irregular.

**Strip Shelterwood System:** A shelterwood system in which regeneration cuttings are carried out on fairly wide strips, generally against the prevailing wind, and progress rapidly; regeneration is mainly natural, regeneration interval short, and resultant crop fairly even-aged and regular.

**Uniform Shelterwood System:** A shelterwood system in which the canopy is opened fairly evenly throughout the regeneration area; regeneration is mainly natural, though it may be supplemented artificially; regeneration interval fairly short and resultant crop more or less even-aged and regular. (STC)

**SILVICULTURAL GROUND RULES**

Specifications, standards, and other instructions, that direct silvicultural activities on a management unit during the period of the forest management plan.

**SILVICULTURAL SYSTEM**

A process that applies silvicultural practices, including tending (thinning, pruning, etc.), harvesting, and renewal, to a stand in order to produce a crop of timber and other forest products. Systems are classified according to the method of harvesting of mature forest stands with a view to regeneration establishment, (i.e., clearcut, shelterwood, selection). (Modified MNR 1996)

**SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT**

The method of harvest, renewal or tending, as identified in the silvicultural ground rules, through which a forest operations prescription will be met.

**SILVICULTURAL TREATMENT PACKAGE**

A grouping of acceptable silvicultural treatments for the appropriate forest unit and ecosite combination which can be undertaken over time to achieve the desired future forest and benefits. (Modified MNR 1997)

**SILVICULTURE**

Generally, the science and art of cultivating forest crops, based on a knowledge of silvics (URN 5384). More particularly, the theory and practice of controlling the establishment composition, constitution, and growth of forests (URN 5385).

**SITE PREPARATION**

Disturbance of the forest floor and the topsoil, by mechanical or chemical means, or by prescribed burning, to create suitable conditions for natural or artificial regeneration. (Modified MFM)

**SPATIAL**

Dependent on, or associated with, a specific geographic location.
Normally refers to information stored in a form or format that is directly usable by geographic information systems.

**SPECIAL CONCERN SPECIES (formerly vulnerable)**

A native species with characteristics that make it particularly sensitive to human activities or natural events.

**SPECIES**

A singular or plural term for a population, or series of populations, of organisms that are capable of interbreeding freely with each other but not with members of other species. (Aird)

**SPECIES AT RISK**

Any plant or animal, which is classified as at risk under the Endangered Species Act.

**STAGE OF MANAGEMENT**

One in a series of harvest cuts performed over the life of a forest stand. The type and number of harvest cuts depends on the silvicultural system used.

**STANDARD**

A component of a guide that provides mandatory direction. (MNR 2009)

**STAND IMPROVEMENT**

The removal of trees to improve the composition and quality of a forest stand, generally used in the selection silvicultural system.

**STRATEGIC SILVICULTURAL OPTIONS**

Broad groupings of silvicultural treatments that apply to the same initial forest conditions, achieve the same future forest conditions, require similar silvicultural

expenditures and use the same growth projections and/or yield curves. Strategic silvicultural options are used to represent silvicultural treatments during strategic analysis.

**SUCCESSION**

Changes in species composition in an ecosystem over time, often in a predictable order. (Aird)

**SUPPLEMENTAL TREATMENT**

Regeneration treatments (i.e., plant, seed or scarify) that are applied to assist natural regeneration to attain the regeneration standards.

**SUPPLEMENTARY DOCUMENTATION**

The part of the forest management plan that contains the information that supports the decisions in the plan and summarizes the information used in the preparation of the plan. The format for the supplementary documentation includes text, tables and maps.

**SUSTAINABILITY**

Long term Crown forest health. (CFSA)

**SUSTAINABLE FOREST LICENCE**

A licence granted under Part III, section 26 of the *Crown Forest Sustainability Act, 1994.*

**SUSTAINABLE FOREST MANAGEMENT**

The management of forest ecosystems to maintain a healthy forest ecosystem which provides a continuous, predictable flow of benefits. Indicators of forest sustainability criteria are incorporated into strategic decision-making and into the periodic assessments of both forest and socioeconomic conditions. Forest operations are conducted in a manner that conserves forest health and minimizes undesirable effects on the physical and social environments.

**TENDING**

Forest operations which are carried out to improve the growth or quality of a forest. Tending may involve cleaning (i.e., the removal of undesirable or competing vegetation through the use of herbicides or manual treatments), thinning, stand improvement or pruning.

**TERM**

A five-year timeframe for operations in a forest management plan.

**THINNING**

A cutting made in an immature crop or forest stand primarily to accelerate diameter increment but also, by suitable selection, to improve the average form of the trees that remain. The removal of trees may be from the dominant and codominant crown classes to favour the best trees of those same crown classes (known as crown

thinning), or the removal of trees may be to control stand spacing and favour desired trees using a combination of thinning criteria without regard to crown position (know as free thinning).

**Commercial Thinning:** A thinning in which the harvested trees are removed from the site and used for commercial purposes.

**Pre-Commercial Thinning:** A thinning that does not yield trees of commercial value, and is usually designed to improve crop spacing. (Modified STC) In Ontario, the term pre-commercial thinning is generally used in relation to even-aged management only. Pre-commercial thinning in uneven-aged management is referred to as "improvement cutting" or stand improvement.

**THREATENED SPECIES**

A native species that is likely to become endangered through all or a portion of its Ontario range if the limiting factors are not reversed.

**TIMBER**

A wood material yielded by trees.

**TREE IMPROVEMENT**

The control of parentage, combined with specific silvicultural treatments (e.g., tending) to improve the overall yield and quality of timber from forest stands.

**USE MANAGEMENT STRATEGY (road)**

A statement outlining the purpose and description, and defining the roles and responsibilities related to use, maintenance, use control, abandonment and monitoring of roads on Crown land. (ARM)

**VALUE (values maps)**

A term used to describe known natural resource features, land uses or values which may be affected by forest management activities.

**VOLUME**

The amount of wood in a tree, forest stand, or other specified area, recorded by a unit of measure.

**WETLAND**

Land that is seasonally or permanently covered by shallow water, as well as land where the water table is close to or at the surface. In either case, the presence of abundant water has caused the formation of hydric soils and has favoured the dominance of either hydrophytic or water-tolerant plants. The four major types of wetlands are swamps, marshes, bogs and fens. (*Wetlands Policy*)

**WHITEFEATHER FOREST**

The area of Crown land, on which forest management activities may be conducted in accordance with the requirements of EA Dec Order MNR 74 in Ontario. A forest management plan is prepared for this management unit.

The Whitefeather Forest is depicted in Appendix I of this manual.

**WILDLIFE**

Normally includes all wild mammals, birds, reptiles and amphibians.

**YIELD**

The actual or estimated amount of product from a tree or a forest stand, or other specified area.

1